

Edwa T 918.97.580



HARVARD UNIVERSITY

LIBRARY OF THE

Department of Education

COLLECTION OF TEXT-BOOKS

Contributed by the Publishers

TRANSFERRED

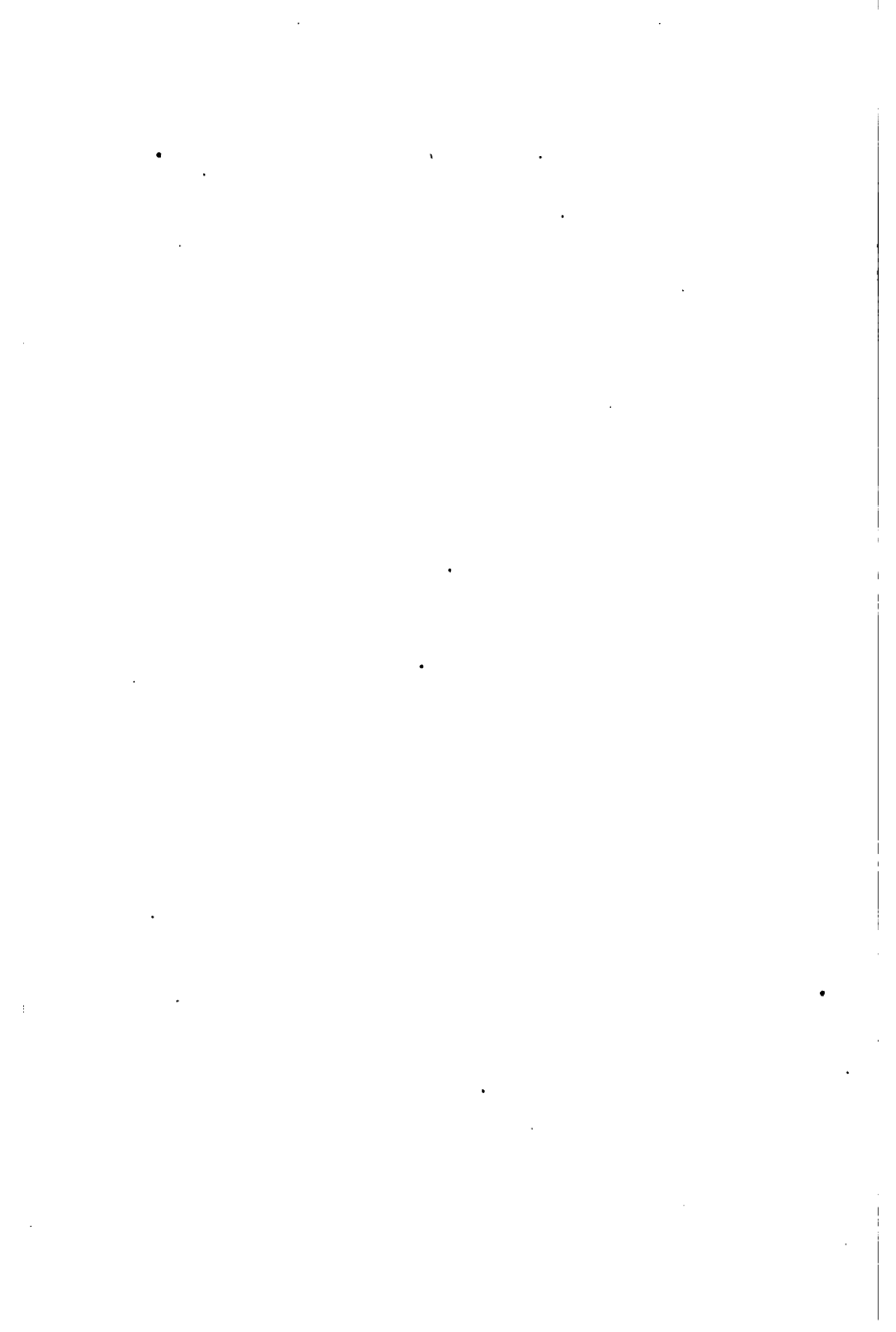
TO

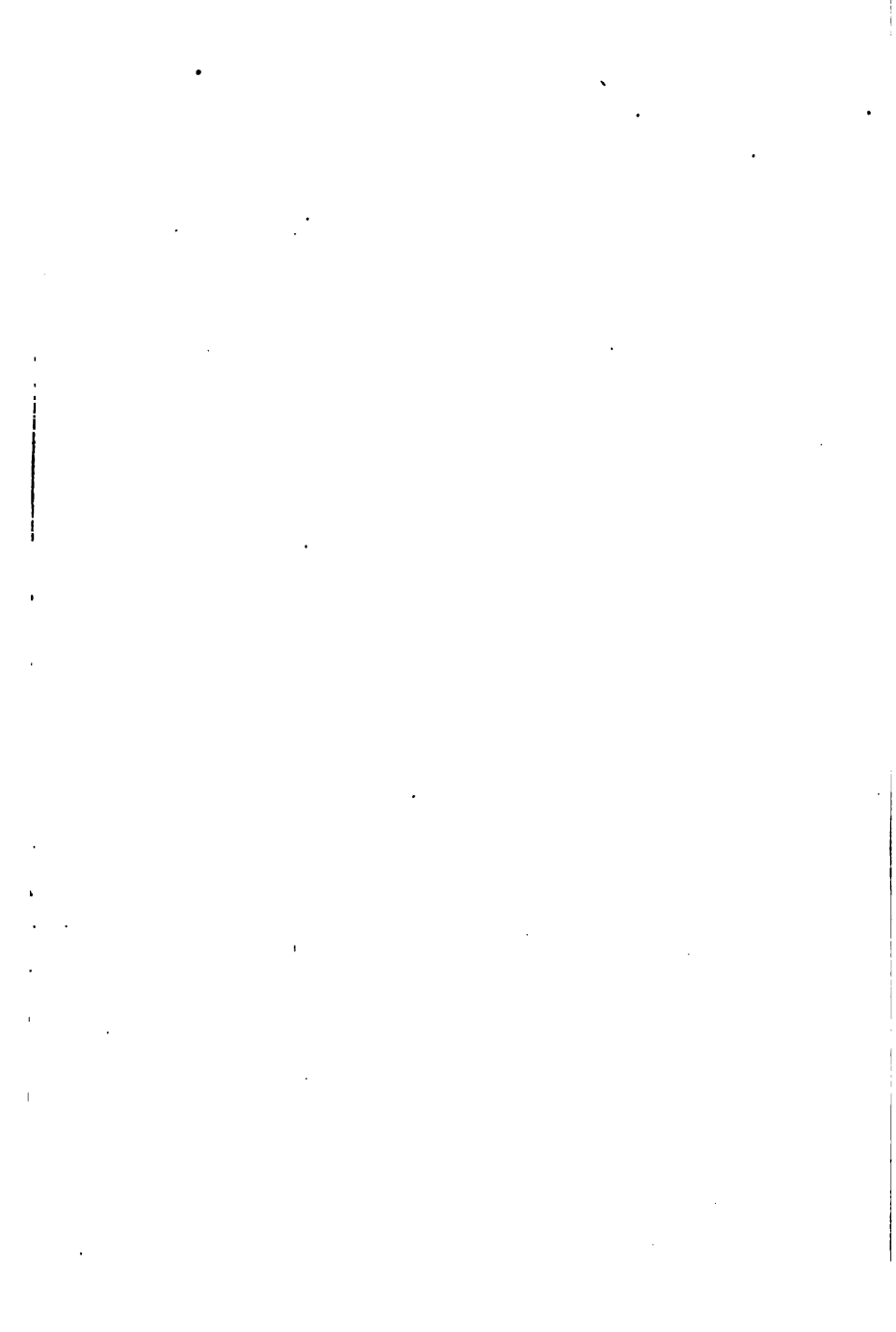
HARVARD COLLEGE

LIBRARY



3 2044 097 078 240





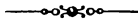
1924

A BRIEF
LATIN GRAMMAR

BY

W. D. MOONEY; A.M.

BATTLE GROUND ACADEMY, FRANKLIN, TENN.



NEW YORK ·· CINCINNATI ·· CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

~~119-6670~~

Edue T 918.97.580

✓

**Harvard University,
Dept. of Education Library**
TRANSFERRED TO
HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
JUN 13 1921

COPYRIGHT, 1897, BY
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY.

MOONEY. BRIEF LAT. GRAM.
E-P 1

PREFACE

THE author of this book feels that there is an imperative need for such a brief manual of Latin Grammar as the French, and, more particularly, the Germans, have had for years. Such a manual, intended primarily for use in secondary schools, can be made brief by omitting exceptional usages and by reducing the usual array of quotations to a minimum. It can be simplified by stating the leading facts of the language clearly and concisely. The present work, designed to cover the ground mentioned, is largely the outgrowth of practical experience in the class-room. Everywhere the effort has been made to state material points only, and to give these in the simplest and most direct way. The work has been further condensed and simplified by the use of typographical devices in the form of summaries and tables. The examples given are few, and are taken from the classics usually read first by the student. It is assumed that a single example which clearly illustrates the principle stated is worth more to the student than a number of sentences on no one of which his attention is concentrated. The Index of Grammatical References (p. 239) is intended to facilitate the use of this manual in connection with texts referring to the standard Latin Grammars.

In quantity, Lindsay's Latin Language has been taken as a standard in doubtful cases. The sources consulted

are many, and embrace the standard grammars of our own country, England, Germany, and France. The author would make especial mention of the Ellendt-Seyffert Grammar, from which, by the kind permission of Doctor Seyffert, he has drawn much of his best material. His object has been to cover at least as much ground as is embraced in that admirable manual, intended for use in the German *gymnasium*. Doctor Seyffert's consent to allow a liberal use of his matter was so freely given that it deserves more than passing mention.

Chancellor James H. Kirkland, of Vanderbilt University, Vice-Chancellor B. L. Wiggins, of the University of the South, Mr. C. W. Bain, of the Sewanee Grammar School, Professor James H. Dillard, of Tulane University, and Professor G. F. Nicolassen, of the Southwestern Presbyterian University, have all read the book in manuscript form, and all have made helpful suggestions. Professor Dillard and Professor Nicolassen have read the proof of the entire work, and their watchful care and critical scholarship have given the book a large measure of whatever merit it may possess. The author returns his sincerest thanks to all of these friends for the aid so generously given, and to the editorial force for their uniform consideration.

W. D. MOONEY.

FRANKLIN, TENN.,

Jan. 1, 1897.

CONTENTS

	PAGE		PAGE
LETTERS, SOUNDS, ACCENT		VERBS	
The Alphabet	1	Voice	53
Roman Pronunciation	1	Conjugation	53
Classification of Consonants	2	Verb-Stems	54
Vowel Changes	3	Personal Endings	55
Consonant Changes	4	The Four Conjugations	55
Use of Capitals	6	Conjugation of Sum	56
Syllables	6	First Conjugation	60
Accent	7	Second Conjugation	60
Quantity of Vowels	7	Third Conjugation	61
Quantity of Syllables	8	Fourth Conjugation	61
INFLECTION		Deponent Verbs	70
NOUNS		The Periphrastic Conjugations	71
Gender	11	Verbs in -iō of the Third Conjugation	71
Number and Case	12	Peculiar Forms	72
Stem	13	Ancient and Poetical Forms	73
The Declensions	13	Formation of Stems	73
First Declension	14	List of Most Important Verbs with Stem-Forms	76
Second Declension	15	Irregular Verbs	93
Third Declension	17	Defective Verbs	98
Fourth Declension	29	Impersonal Verbs	100
Fifth Declension	30	Abundant Verbs	101
Defective Nouns	30	Inceptive Verbs	101
ADJECTIVES		PARTICLES	
Adjectives of the First and Second Declension	34	Adverbs	102
Irregular Adjectives	35	Prepositions	106
Adjectives of the Third Declension	36	Conjunctions	106
Comparison of Adjectives	39	Interjections	106
Numerals	42	FORMATION OF WORDS	
PRONOUNS		DERIVATION	
Personal Pronouns	46	Verbs	107
Possessive Pronouns	47	Nouns	108
The Reflexive Pronoun	47	Adjectives	111
Demonstrative Pronouns	48	COMPOSITION	
The Intensive Pronoun	49	Verbs	113
The Relative Pronoun	50	Nouns	114
Interrogative Pronouns	50	Adjectives	114
Indefinite Pronouns	51	SYNTAX	
Correlatives	52	Subject and Predicate	115
Pronominal Adjectives	53	Adjectives	119

	PAGE		PAGE
Apposition	119	SPECIAL USES OF NOUNS	209
Agreement of Pronouns	120	SUBSTITUTES FOR PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES	210
THE CASES			
The Accusative	121	ADJECTIVES	
The Dative	128	Adjectives as Nouns	210
The Genitive	133	Equivalents for the Adjective	211
The Ablative	141	Peculiarities of the Adjective	212
The Nominative	151	Comparison of Adjectives	212
The Vocative	152	THE VERB	213
Cases with Prepositions	152	PRONOUNS	
THE VERB			
The Infinitive	154	Personal Pronouns	213
The Participle	160	Possessive Pronouns	214
Gerund	164	The Reflexive Pronoun	214
Gerundive	165	Reciprocal Pronouns	215
The Supine	167	Demonstrative Pronouns	215
TENSES			
Tenses of the Indicative	168	Relative Pronouns	218
Tenses of the Subjunctive	172	Incorporation of the Antecedent,	218
Sequence of Tenses	172	Indefinite Pronouns	219
Representations of the Future in the Subjunctive Mood	174	CONJUNCTIONS	
MOODS			
IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES			
The Indicative	175	Coördinating Conjunctions	221
The Imperative	176	Subordinating Conjunctions	223
The Subjunctive	176	ORDER OF WORDS	223
IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES			
Purpose Clauses	179	DEVICES TO SECURE EMPHASIS,	224
Substantive Clauses of Purpose	180	GRAMMATICAL FIGURES	
Result Clauses	182	Figures of Etymology	225
Substantive Clauses of Result	183	Figures of Syntax	226
Temporal Clauses	184	Figures of Rhetoric	227
Causal Clauses	188	THE ROMAN CALENDAR	228
Conditional Sentences	189	PRAENOMINA	231
Concessive Clauses	195	VERSIFICATION	
Relative Clauses	196	Principal Feet	231
QUESTIONS			
Direct Questions	198	Figures of Prosody	232
Indirect Questions	200	Dactylic Hexameter	233
INDIRECT DISCOURSE			
Moods in Indirect Discourse	202	Scanning	233
Tenses in Indirect Discourse	204	Elegiac Distich	234
General Rules for Changing to Indirect Discourse	205	ROMAN MEASURES	
Informal Indirect Discourse	205	Money	234
Conditions in Indirect Discourse,	207	Length	235
Subjunctive by Attraction	209	Capacity	235
		ABBREVIATIONS	235
		CATALOGUE OF VERBS	236

LETTERS, SOUNDS, ACCENT

THE ALPHABET

1. The Latin Alphabet differs from the English only in having no **w**.

2. **Vowels.** — The Vowels are **a, e, i, o, u,** and **y**. **I** and **u** have also a consonant use, but only before a vowel; consonant **i** may be written **j**, but is ordinarily not distinguished from vowel **i**; consonant **u** is usually written **v**.

3. **Diphthongs.** — The union of two vowels into one sound forms Double Vowels or Diphthongs. The ordinary diphthongs are **ae, oe, au**; the occasional, **ei, eu, ui**.

4. **Consonants.** — The remaining sounds are Consonants. The Double Consonants are **x** (= **gs** or **cs**) and **z** (= **ds**).

NOTE. — **Y** and **z** occur only in foreign words; **K** is found only in **Kaesō, Kalendae**: **KA** [= **capitālis**], **KK** [= **castrōrum**], **Kar** [= **Karthāgō**], and a few other abbreviations.

ROMAN PRONUNCIATION

5. Vowels.

ā = *a* in *father*

ē = *a* in *say* (without glide)

ī = *ee* in *seen* (without glide)

ō = *o* in *go* (without glide)

ū = *oo* in *boot* (without glide)

ǣ = *a* in *wash*

ĕ = *e* in *set*

ĭ = *i* in *sin*

ŏ = *o* in *for*

ŭ = *oo* in *foot*

y = German *ü*, but inclining to *ɨ*

NOTE. — Some of the sounds have no exact English equivalents, but those given above are approximately close.

6. Diphthongs.—To pronounce diphthongs, the constituent vowels should be uttered as rapidly as possible. This will give approximately:—

au = ou in *our* ae = ai in *aisle* ei = ei in *feint* (drawled)
 eu = eu in *feud* oe = oi in *oil* ui = *we*

7. Consonants.—**C** and **g** are hard, as in *cat* and *go*; consonant **i** (**j**) = *y*; **v** = *w* in *win*; **r** is trilled; **s** is sharp, as in *hiss*; **t** is hard, as in *tin*; **x** is always hard, as in *tax*. Final **m** before a word beginning with a vowel is slurred; **n** before **c**, **g**, **q** has the sound of *ng* in *sing*; **bs** and **bt** have the sounds of **ps** and **pt**; **ch**, **ph**, **th** are sounded as **c**, **p**, **t**, followed by an aspirate: compare *inkhorn*, *loophole*, *courthouse*. The remaining letters are pronounced as in English.

Latin Words	English Sounds	Latin Words	English Sounds
cernō, crēvi	<i>kerr-no, kray-we</i>	iaciunt	<i>yah-ki-oont</i>
cīvitātēs	<i>kee-wi-tah-tace</i>	Iovis	<i>Yo-wis</i>
exercitui	<i>eks-err-ki-too-ee</i>	nātiō	<i>nah-ti-o</i>
fāgis	<i>fah-geese</i>	obscurior	<i>op-skoo-ri-or</i>
feri	<i>fi-eh-ree</i>	paucae	<i>pow-kih</i>
fūmāre	<i>foo-mah-reh</i>	vēni	<i>way-nee</i>

8. CLASSIFICATION OF CONSONANTS

	VOICELESS; <i>i.e.</i> without vibration of vocal chords	VOICED	ASPIRATES							
P-mutes	p	b	ph	f	Labials, or Lip-Sounds					
						T-mutes	d	th	s	Dentals, or Tooth-Sounds
Liquids		l, m, n, r m, n								
Nasals										
Spirants	f, s, h									
Semivowels		cons. i, v								
Sibilant	s									

VOWEL CHANGES

9. 1. In compounds *ǣ* becomes *ǣ* before two consonants or a final consonant: *rapiō*, *corruptus*; *pariō*, *compertus*; *faciō*, *effectus*; *canō*, *cornicen*.

ǣ becomes *ī* before *ng*: *frangere*, *perfringere*.

ǣ becomes *ī* before a single consonant, but not before *r*: *rapiō*, *abripīō*.

ǣ becomes *u* before labials or before *l* with another consonant: *capiō*, *occupō*; *calcō*, *inulcō*.

ǣ as the final vowel of the stem becomes *ī* before suffixes that begin with a consonant: *doma-*, *domitor*.

ae usually becomes *ī*, and *au* sometimes becomes *ū* or *ō*: *exquirō* for *exquaerō*; *disclūdō* for *disclaudō*.

2. *ǣ* is often found in early Latin, where *ī* is found in later: *semul* for *simul*.

In suffixes, before suffixes, before a single consonant, and in the final syllable of a word, it becomes *ī*: *ille*, *illic*; *cādō*, *cecīdī*; *decem*, *ūndecim*.

ǣ before *r* is often omitted: *frāter*, *frātrēm*.

3. *ī* final may become *ǣ*: *mare* for *marī*.

4. *ǣ*, in syllables not accented, regularly becomes *u*, except in primitive Latin: *servos* = *servus*; *dōnom* = *dōnum*; *vīvont* = *vīvunt*. Note, also, *quom* for *cum*.

5. *u*, prior to Caesar's period, was found in suffixes commencing with labials. It then became *ī*, which is most usual: *māxumus* became *māximus*.

10. 1. **Contraction.** — Successive vowels may contract. The first regularly predominates and is always long: *cōgō* for *coagō*; *nīl* for *nihil*; *iūnior* for *iuvenior*.

2. **Parasitic Vowels.** — In lingual noun-stems a parasitic *u* is often developed, and the form thus made takes the

place of the ancient form, save in poetry and colloquially: *gubernāculum* for *gubernāclum*; *ōrāculum* for *ōrāclum*.

3. **Syncope.**— Sometimes a vowel coming between two consonants is omitted. The most common case is the dropping of a short vowel, particularly *i*, after an accented syllable: *audācter* for *audāciter*; *caldus* for *calidus*.

CONSONANT CHANGES — ASSIMILATION

11. 1. A consonant tends to assimilate to a following sound: *puella* (for *puerla*); *cessi* (for *cedsi*); *corruptus* (for *conruptus*).

2. *g* and *b* before *t* or *s* often become *c* and *p*: *āgtus* = *āctus*, *scribtus* = *scriptus*, *scribsi* = *scripsi*.

3. After *l* or *r*, *t* in the suffixes *-tor*, *-tus*, *-tum* becomes *s*: *curtum* = *cursum*.

4. A *t*-mute before *s* is dropped; *dt* or *tt* become *s* or *ss*: *cad-tum* becomes *cāsum*; *mit-tum* becomes *missum*; *virtūt-s* becomes *virtūs*.

5. Final consonants are sometimes omitted: *lāc* for *lāct*.

6. *m* before a dental or a guttural becomes *n*: *quem-dam* becomes *quendam*; *prīmceps* becomes *prīnceps*.

7. A guttural with *s* becomes *x*: *lēgs* = *lēx*.

8. **Rhotacism.**— An *s* of the stem becomes *r* between two vowels: *corpus*, Gen. *corporis*.

12. **Changes in Prepositions.**— When the nature of the two consonants will admit, the final consonant of the preposition is assimilated to the initial consonant of the verb. The most important changes in the prepositions are as follows:—

1. *ab* before vowels, consonant *i*, *b*, *d*, *h*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*.

abs before *c* and *t*: *abscēdō*, *abstineō*.

as before p (the b being dropped): asportō.

ā before f in āfui, and before m and v: āmandō, āvertō.

au before f in auferō, aufugiō.

2. ad before vowels, consonant i, b, d, f, h, m, n, q, v;
before n, ad may become an: annuere.

ao before o: accipiō.

ag and ad before g: aggredior (adg-).

a and ad before gn, so, sp, st: āgnōscō (adgn- or adn-),
ascribō (adsc-), aspīrō (adsp-), astringō (adst-).

ad and al before l: adligō (all-).

ap and sometimes ad before p: appōnō (adp-).

ad and ar before r: adripiō (arr-).

ad and as before s: adsentior (ass-).

at and ad before t: attinēre (adt-).

3. com before b, m, p; occasionally con: combūrō, com-
memorō, comparō.

con before c, d, f, g, consonant i, n, q, s, t, v: concēdō,
condūcō, cōnfirmō, congerō, coniungō, conquīrō, cōnscribō,
contegō, convincō.

con and col before l: conligō (coll-).

cor and con before r: corrigō (conr-).

co before vowels and h: coerceō, cohaereō, but comedō
and comitor.

cō before gn, and before n where a loss of g has taken
place before the n: cōgnōscō.

4. ex before vowels, c, h, p, q, s, t.

ē before b, d, g, consonant i, l, m, n, r, v: ēbulliō, ēdoceō,
ēgerō, ēiectus, ēlocō, ēmoveō, ēnītor, ērumpō, ēvocō.

ef (sometimes ec) before f: efferō (better than eferō).

5. in before vowels, h, o, d, f, g (not gn), consonant i,
n, q, s, t, v.

in and il before l: inlūcēscō (ill-).

in and ir before r: inrēpō (irr-).

im and **in** before **b, m, p** : **imbibō** (**inb-**), **immergō** (**inm-**), **impetrō** (**inp-**).

i before **gn** : **ignōrō**.

6. **ob** before **m** : **obmōlior**.

oc before **c**, **of** before **f**, **og** before **g**, and **op** before **p** : **occurrō**, **offundō**, **ogganniō**, **oppleō**.

op is often found before **s** and **t**; elsewhere **ob** occurs.

7. **per** may become **pel** before **l** : **perlūceō** (**pell-**).

8. **sub** becomes **suc** before **c**, **suf** before **f**, **sug** before **g**, **sub** and **sum** before **m**, **sup** before **p**; **sub** and **sur** before **r**; elsewhere **sub** occurs : **succēdō**, **sufferō**, **suggerō**, **submoveō** (**summ-**), **suppetō**, **subruō** (**surr-**).

9. **trāns** before vowels, **b, c, f, g, p, r, t, v**.

trān before **sc** and usually before **s**; **trānscedō**, **trānsultō**.

trāns and (less often) **trā** before consonant **i, d, l, m, n**, and **i**.

As a rule, unassimilated forms have the preference.

USE OF CAPITALS

13. With capitals begin :—

The first word of each sentence.

Proper names and words formed therefrom : **Rōma**, *Rome*; **populus Rōmānus**, *the Roman people*.

Adjectival epithets : **Alexander Māgnus**, *Alexander the Great*.

SYLLABLES

14. A word contains as many syllables as it has separate vowels or diphthongs.

1. A consonant between two vowels belongs to the latter; **a-mō**, *I love*.

2. Successive consonants between two vowels belong to the latter, if they can begin a syllable; otherwise they are divided: **mā-gnus**, *great*; **mēn-sa**, *table*.

3. Compounds are divided as their components: **dis-trahō**, *I divide*.

NOTE. — If one of two like consonants has been omitted, the one remaining belongs to the syllable that follows: **trān-scribō**, *I copy*.

ACCENT

15. 1. Words of two syllables accent the Penult (next to the last syllable): **mēn-sa**.

2. Words of more than two syllables accent the Penult, if it is long: **do-lā-bra**, *a mattock*; otherwise they accent the Antepenult (the syllable before the Penult): **dō-mi-nus**, *master*.

3. The syllable preceding the enclitics **-ce**, **-que**, **-ne**, **-ve** takes the accent: **itāque**, *and so*; **Mūsāque**, *and the Muse*. But a particle does not throw the accent on the preceding syllable unless it is a true enclitic: **itaque**, *therefore*.

4. The final **e** of **-ne** and **-ce** may be dropped without disturbing the accent: **istūc**, **vidēn** (= **vidēsne**).

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

16. 1. The quantity of a vowel depends upon the time required to pronounce it, a *long* vowel requiring twice as much time as a short vowel. Thus **ā** = **āā**.

2. A vowel is short before another vowel or **h**, **nd**, and **nt**: **dēus**, *god*; **nīhil**, *nothing*; **amāndus**, *to be loved*; **amānt**, *they love*.

3. A vowel before consonant **i** is long, but is short in the compounds of **iugum**; **māior**, **biugum**.

4. A vowel is long before **gm, gn, nf, ns**, and before **-so** in inceptive verbs : **frāgmentum, fragment** ; **benīgnus, kind** ; **Infra, below** ; **mēnsa, table** ; **quiēscō, to be quiet**.

5. *Common* vowels are long or short.

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

17. 1. A syllable is long or short according to the time required to pronounce it.

2. A syllable is short if it contains a short vowel followed by a vowel or by a single consonant : **familia, domina**.

3. A syllable that ends in a short vowel followed by a mute with **l** or **r** is common, though it is regularly short in prose. In poetry it may be long or short : **patrēs**.

4. A syllable is long by *nature* when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong : **mēnsae**. Contractions are long : **nī** (= **nihil**).

5. A syllable is long by *position* when its short vowel precedes two consonants, or a double consonant : **est, dux**. But the union of a mute with a following liquid does not make position (see 3. above).

18. **Monosyllables**.—1. Monosyllables ending in a vowel are long : **mē, tē, sē, sī**.

EXCEPTIONS.—Enclitics are short (**-quē, -nē, -tē, -vē, -cē, -psē, -ptē**) ; also **rē** in compounds.

2. Monosyllables ending in a consonant are short : **āt, sēd, pēr**.

EXCEPTIONS.—**bōs, cūr, dīc, dūc, ēn, fūr, hīc, hūc, lāc, lār, mōs, nōn, ōs, pār, pēs, plūs, quīn, sāl, sīc, sīn, sōl, vēr** ; also verb-forms in **s** ; but **ēs, thou art**.

19. Final Syllables.—Final **a** and **e** are usually short; **i**, **o**, and **u** are usually long. The following are the chief exceptions:—

1. Final **a** is long
In the Ablative of the First Declension: **viā**.
In the Imperative of the First Conjugation: **amā**.
In indeclinable words: **trīgintā**.
2. Final **e** is long
In the Ablative of the Fifth Declension: **diē**.
In the Imperative of the Second Conjugation: **tenē**.
In adverbs from adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, except **benē**, **malē**, **saepē**.
3. Final **i** is short
In **nisi**, **quasi**, **cui** (when dissyllabic), and sometimes in **mihi**, **tibi**, **sibi**, **ibi**, **ubi**.
4. Final **o** is short
In **egō**, **duō**, **modō** (adv.).

20. A final syllable ending in any consonant save **s** is short.

Final **as**, **es**, **os** are long; **is**, **us**, **ys** are short. The following are the chief exceptions:—

1. Final **es** is short in the Nominative and Vocative singular of the Third Declension when the Genitive ends in **ētis**, **itis**, **īdis**: **segēs**, **mīlēs**, **obsēs**. But note **abiēs**, **ariēs**, **pariēs**, and compounds of **pēs**.

2. Final **is** is long in plural cases; in Nominatives that have the Genitive in **itis**, **inis**: as **Samnis**, **Salamis**; in the second person singular Present Indicative of the Fourth Conjugation; in **velis**, **mālis**, **nōlis**, and compounds of **sis**.

3. Final **os** is short in **compōs**, **impōs**, **ōs**, and as the Nominative of the Second Declension.

4. Final **us** is long in the Nominative singular of the Third Declension, where the **-u** belongs to the stem, as **palūs**; in the Genitive singular, and in the plural of the Fourth Declension: as **fructūs**.

21. Increment of Nouns. — Any increase in the number of syllables found in the Nominative singular is called an Increment. In the increment of nouns, *a* and *o* are long; other vowels are short.

EXCEPTIONS. — 1. *a* is short in masculines in *al* and *ar*, and also in nouns in *s* preceded by a consonant: *Caesāris*; *dāpis*.

2. *o* is short in words in *s* preceded by a consonant, and in neuters of the Third Declension: *inōpis*, *tempōris*.

3. *e* is long after a vowel in the Fifth Declension: *diēi*.

4. *i* is long in words in *ix*: *fēlicis*.

5. *u* is long in nouns in *ūs* with Genitive in *ūris*, *ūtis*, *ūdis*; *iūris*, *salūtis*, *incūdis*.

22. Increment of Verbs. — 1. A verb increases when, in any form, it has more syllables than in the second singular Present Indicative Active. In verbal increments *a*, *e*, *o* are long, *i*, *u* are short; but *e* is short before the endings *-ram*, *-rim*, *-ro*: *amāvērat*.

2. *e* is short in the first increment of the Present Indicative Passive and Imperfect Subjunctive Active of the Third Conjugation; also in the Future ending *-beris*, *-bere*: *volvēris*, *volvērem*, *amāberis*, *amābere*.

23. 1. Adjectives in *-ilis* have short penults, if derived from verbs; long, if from nouns: *horribilis*, *puerilis*.

2. Adjectives in *-inus* have long penults, unless they refer to time: *vīcīnus*, *neighboring*; but *pristīnus*, *former*.

3. Verbs with perfects in *-uī* and verbs in *-iō* of the Third Conjugation have a short stem-vowel: *acuō*, *to sharpen*; *faciō*, *to make*.

INFLECTION

24. PARTS OF SPEECH

1. Noun	} declined	} Inflected	5. Adverb, compared	} Not inflected
2. Adjective			6. Preposition	
3. Pronoun			7. Conjunction	
4. Verb	conjugated		8. Interjection	

NOUNS

25. 1. **Classes.** — A proper noun is the proper name of an *individual* person or place: **Cicerō**, *Cicero*; **Ītalia**, *Italy*. A common noun is the common name of a *class*: **homō**, *man*; **animal**, *animal*.

2. A common noun may be concrete, denoting a person, place, or thing; or abstract, denoting a quality or property: **puer**, *boy*; **oppidum**, *town*; **aqua**, *water*; **timor**, *fear*.

3. A noun denoting a collection of objects is called a collective noun: **exercitus**, *army*.

GENDER

26. Gender is a classification of words corresponding originally to the natural distinctions of sex (natural gender), and later extended to inanimate objects (grammatical gender). Gender has to do only with *words*; sex refers to the *living being*. There are three genders, — Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

27. 1. **Names of Living Beings.** — Names of persons follow the natural gender: names of males are masculine; names of females are feminine: **pater**, *father*; **māter**, *mother*.

2. Nouns having the same form for the masculine and feminine are said to be of common gender: **parēns**, *parent*; **civis**, *citizen*; **canis**, *dog*; **bōs**, *cow*, *ox*.

3. Some nouns have different forms for the masculine and feminine: **rēx**, *king*, **rēgīna**, *queen*; **dominus**, *master*, **domina**, *mistress*; **gallus**, *cock*, **gallīna**, *hen*.

28. 1. **Names of Things.** — Names of winds, months, mountains (usually), and rivers are masculine.

NOTE.—These rivers are feminine: **Allia**, **Lēthē**, **Matrona**, and **Styx**.

2. The names of towns and countries in **-us** are feminine, while other towns and countries follow the grammatical gender indicated by their endings.

NOTE.—**Pontus** and **Hellēspontus** are masculine.

3. Indeclinable nouns, words and expressions used as nouns, are neuter: **nihil**, *nothing*; **ūltimum valē**, *a last farewell*.

NUMBER AND CASE

29. 1. There are two numbers: the Singular, denoting one; and the Plural, denoting more than one.

2. There are six Cases:—

Nominative (case of subject), answering the question, *who? what?* before a verb.

Genitive (case of complement), answering the question, *whose? whereof?*

Dative (case of indirect object, or of personal interest), answering the question, *to or for whom?*

Accusative (case of direct object), answering the question, *whom? what?* after a verb.

Vocative (case of address).

Ablative (case of adverbial relation), answering the question, *by, through, with what? how? when? whence?*

The **Locative**, denoting Place Where, is confined chiefly to names of towns and small islands. It has the form of the **Genitive** in singular nouns of the **First** and **Second** Declensions, and of the **Ablative** in other nouns: **Rōmae**, at *Rome*; **Corinthī**, at *Corinth*; **Athēnīs**, at *Athens*.

NOTE.—All but the **Nominative** and **Vocative** are called oblique cases.

THE STEM

30. The **Stem**, or fundamental part of a noun, is usually found by dropping the ending of the **Genitive plural**: **mēnsārum**, stem **mēnsā**; **servōrum**, stem **servō**; **cīvium**, stem **cīvī**.

THE DECLENSIONS

31. There are five **Declensions**, distinguished from each other by the final letter of the stem, and by the ending of the **Genitive singular**.

	Final Letter of Stem	Ending of Gen. Sing.
First Declension	ā	-ae
Second “	ō	-ī
Third “	ī or a consonant	-īs
Fourth “	ū	-ūs
Fifth “	ē	-ēī, eī

CASES THAT ARE ALIKE

32. The **Nominative** and **Vocative**, except in nouns of the **Second Declension** with the **Nominative** in **us**.

The **Nominative**, **Accusative**, and **Vocative** neuter.

The **Dative** and **Ablative** plural.

The **Nominative** and **Accusative** plural in the **Third**, **Fourth**, and **Fifth** Declensions, generally.

FIRST DECLENSION

ā-Stems

33. Nouns of the First Declension, except nouns denoting male beings, are of the feminine gender, and the Nominative ends in *ā*.

		Mēnsa, table; stem mēnsā-		Endings	
		SINGULAR	PLURAL	SING.	PLUR.
N.	mēnsa, a table (as subject)		mēnsae, tables (as subject)	-ā	-ae
G.	mēnsae, of a table, a table's		mēnsārum, of tables, tables'	-ae	-ārum
D.	mēnsae, to or for a table		mēnsis, to or for tables	-ae	-is
Ac.	mēnsam, a table (as object)		mēnsās, tables (as object)	-am	-ās
V.	mēnsa, O table!		mēnsae, O tables!	-ā	-ae
Ab.	mēnsā, in, with, from, by a table		mēnsis, in, with, from, by tables	-ā	-is

NOTES.—1. *-ās* is an old form of Genitive: *pater familiās*, father of a family. *-āi* is sometimes found in poetry.

2. The Dative and Ablative plural of *fīlia*, daughter, and *dea*, goddess, usually end in *abus*, to distinguish them from the Dative and Ablative plural of *fīlius*, son, and *deus*, god.

3. The Genitive plural sometimes has *-um* for *-ārum*, chiefly in Greek words.

GREEK NOUNS

34. Proper names of Greek origin in *-ās*, *-ēs*, and *-ē* (feminine) are declined in the plural like *mēnsa*; in the singular, as follows:—

Aenēās, Aenēae, Aenēae, Aenēam (Aenēān), Aenēā, Aenēā.
 Tŷdidēs, Tŷdidae, Tŷdidae, Tŷdidēn, Tŷdidē(-ā), Tŷdidā.
 epitomē, epitomēs, epitomae, epitomēn, epitomē, epitomē.

NOTE.—Many Greek proper names of the First Declension, with Nominative in *-ēs*, are in Latin put in the Third Declension.

SECOND DECLENSION

ō-Stems

35. Masculines end in **-us**, **-er**, **-ir**; neuters, in **-um**; **-us** and **-um** being modifications of **-os** and **-om**, respectively.

ENDINGS OF SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS

Nouns in -us .		Nouns in -er and -ir .		Nouns in -um .	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i> -us	-ī	—	-ī	-um	-a
<i>G.</i> -ī	-ōrum	-ī	-ōrum	-ī	-ōrum
<i>D.</i> -ō	-īs	-ō	-īs	-ō	-īs
<i>Ac.</i> -um	-ōs	-um	-ōs	-um	-a
<i>V.</i> -e	-ī	—	-ī	-um	-a
<i>Ab.</i> -ō	-īs	-ō	-īs	-ō	-īs

Servus, m., *slave*; stem **servō-**.

	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i>	servus	servī
<i>G.</i>	servī	servōrum
<i>D.</i>	servō	servīs
<i>Ac.</i>	servum	servōs
<i>V.</i>	serve	servī
<i>Ab.</i>	servō	servīs

Bellum, n., *war*; stem **bellō-**.

	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i>	bellum	bella
<i>Ac.</i>		
<i>V.</i>	bellō	bellīs
<i>G.</i>		
<i>D.</i>		
<i>Ab.</i>		

Puer, m., *boy*; stem **puerō-**.

	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i>	puer	puerī
<i>G.</i>	puerī	puerōrum
<i>D.</i>	puerō	puerīs
<i>Ac.</i>	puerum	puerōs
<i>V.</i>	puer	puerī
<i>Ab.</i>	puerō	puerīs

Ager, m., *field*; stem **agrō-**.

	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i>	ager	agrī
<i>G.</i>	agrī	agrōrum
<i>D.</i>	agrō	agrīs
<i>Ac.</i>	agrum	agrōs
<i>V.</i>	ager	agrī
<i>Ab.</i>	agrō	agrīs

Vir, m., *man*; stem **virō-**.

	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i>	vir	virī
<i>G.</i>	virī	virōrum
<i>D.</i>	virō	virīs
<i>Ac.</i>	virum	virōs
<i>V.</i>	vir	virī
<i>Ab.</i>	virō	virīs

NOTES. — 1. Stems in **vo-** and **quo-** originally had **os** and **om** in the Nominative and Accusative. These forms are found especially in older Latin.

2. Words in **-er** and **-ir** have lost the case-ending in the Nominative and Vocative singular. In most of these words the **e** does not belong to the stem, and is lacking in the other cases: **liber**, *book*; **G. librī**.

3. **Puer**, *boy*; **gener**, *son-in-law*; **adulter**, *adulterer*; **Liber**, *Bacchus*; **liberī**, *children*; **socer**, *father-in-law*; **vesper**, *evening*; and compounds of **-fer** and **-ger**, as **signifer**, *standard bearer*, **armiger**, *armor-bearer*, have the **e**.

PECULIARITIES

36. 1. Proper names in **-ius** have the Genitive singular in **-ī** for **-īi**, and accent the penult whether it is long or short: **Vergīi**.

2. All nouns in **-ius** and **-ium**, until about 31 B.C., formed the Genitive singular in **-ī**, instead of **-īi**; as **cōnsiliī** from **cōnsilium**, and **filī** from **filium**.

3. Proper names in **-ius**, **-āius**, and **-ēius**, with **filius**, *son*, have **-ī** in the Vocative singular, accenting the penult; **meus**, *my*, has **mī**.

4. **Deus**, *God*, has no Vocative singular; in the Nominative and Vocative plural it has **deī**, **diī**, **dī**, and in the Dative and Ablative plural **deīs**, **diīs**, **dīs**.

5. Greek proper names in **-eus** have **-eu** in the Vocative: as **Orpheus**, **V. Orpheu**.

6. The following have **-ūm** for **-ōrum** in the Genitive plural:—

Words denoting value and measure: as **nummūm**, *of coins*; **talentūm**, *of talents*. A few other words: as **duūm-virūm**, *of the duumvirs*; **deūm**, *of the gods*; **liberūm**, *of children*; **sociūm**, *of allies*; **fabrūm**, *of workmen*. The regular form in **-ōrum** is also found in these words.

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER

37. 1. *Pelagus*, sea; *vīrus*, poison; *vulgus*, crowd, are neuter.

2. *Alvus*, belly; *carbasus*, flax; *colus*, distaff; *humus*, ground; *vannus*, winnowing fan, are feminine.

GREEK NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

38. Masculine and feminine end in *-ōs*, *-ōs*, *-ūs*, *-ūs*, and neuters in *-on*, *-um*.

<i>N.</i>	<i>Dēlos</i> (-us)	<i>Panthūs</i>	<i>Rhododendron</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>Dēlī</i>	<i>Panthī</i>	<i>Rhododendrī</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>Dēlō</i>	<i>Panthō</i>	<i>Rhododendrō</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>Dēlon</i> (-um)	<i>Panthūn</i>	<i>Rhododendron</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>Dēle</i>	<i>Panthū</i>	<i>Rhododendron</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>Dēlō</i>	<i>Panthō</i>	<i>Rhododendrō</i>

THIRD DECLENSION

39. The stem ends in a consonant, or in *-i*, *-u*, or a diphthong.

Consonant stems are imparisyllabic; *i*-stems are parisyllabic, that is, have the same number of syllables in the Genitive as in the Nominative.

TABLE OF ENDINGS

Consonant Stems (*Imparisyllabic*)

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.		Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
<i>N., V.</i>	-s or none	none	<i>N., V.</i>	-ēs	-a
<i>G.</i>	-is	-is	<i>G.</i>	-um	-um
<i>D.</i>	-ī	-ī	<i>D.</i>	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Ac.</i>	-em	none	<i>Ac.</i>	-ēs	-a
<i>Ab.</i>	-e	-e	<i>Ab.</i>	-ibus	-ibus

i-Stems (*Parisyllabic*)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.		Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
<i>N., V.</i>	-s, -ēs, or -is	-e or none	<i>N., V.</i>	-ēs	-ia
<i>G.</i>	-is	-is	<i>G.</i>	-ium	-ium
<i>D.</i>	-ī	-ī	<i>D.</i>	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Ac.</i>	-em (rarely -im)	-e or none	<i>Ac.</i>	-ēs or -is	-ia
<i>Ab.</i>	-e (rarely -i)	-i	<i>Ab.</i>	-ibus	-ibus

40. Divisions of Consonant Stems. — Consonant stems are divided into Mutes, Liquids, Nasals, and Fricatives (Spirants), according to the ending of the stem. In the oblique cases the stem appears without change.

MUTE STEMS

41. 1. Mute stems may end: —

In a labial (**b** or **p**): as **trab-s**, **princep-s**.

In a dental (**d** or **t**): as **laus** (**laud-s**), **mīles** (**mīlet-s**).

In a guttural (**g** or **c**): as **rēx** (**rēg-s**), **iūdex** (**iūdec-s**).

2. Masculines and feminines have **s** in the Nominative. Before **s** a **p**-mute is retained, a **t**-mute is dropped, and a **k**-mute unites with it to form **x**.

3. Most polysyllabic mute stems change their final vowel **i** into **e** in the nominative.

42. LABIAL AND DENTAL STEMS

	Trabs , f., <i>beam</i> ; stem trab- .			Princeps , m., <i>chief</i> ; stem princip- .	
	SING.	PLUR.		SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i>	trabs	trabēs	<i>N.</i>	princeps	principēs
<i>G.</i>	trabis	trabum	<i>G.</i>	principis	principum
<i>D.</i>	trabī	trabibus	<i>D.</i>	principī	principibus
<i>Ac.</i>	trabem	trabēs	<i>Ac.</i>	principem	principēs
<i>V.</i>	trabs	trabēs	<i>V.</i>	princeps	principēs
<i>Ab.</i>	trabe	trabibus	<i>Ab.</i>	principe	principibus

Laus, f., praise; stem laud- .		Miles, m., soldier; stem milit- .	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i> laus	laudēs	<i>N.</i> miles	militēs
<i>G.</i> laudis	laudum (-ium once)	<i>G.</i> militis	militum
<i>D.</i> laudī	laudibus	<i>D.</i> militī	militibus
<i>Ac.</i> laudem	laudēs	<i>Ac.</i> militem	militēs
<i>V.</i> laus	laudēs	<i>V.</i> miles	militēs
<i>Ab.</i> laude	laudibus	<i>Ab.</i> milite	militibus

43. GUTTURAL STEMS

Rēx, m., king; stem rēg- .		Iūdex, m., judge; stem iūdic- .	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i> rēx	rēgēs	<i>N.</i> iūdex	iūdicēs
<i>G.</i> rēgis	rēgum	<i>G.</i> iūdicis	iūdicum
<i>D.</i> rēgī	rēgibus	<i>D.</i> iūdicī	iūdicibus
<i>Ac.</i> rēgem	rēgēs	<i>Ac.</i> iūdicem	iūdicēs
<i>V.</i> rēx	rēgēs	<i>V.</i> iūdex	iūdicēs
<i>Ab.</i> rēge	rēgibus	<i>Ab.</i> iūdice	iūdicibus

LIQUID STEMS

44. These end in *l*, *r*.

Liquid stems in *l* and *r* form the Nominative without *s*.

Cōnsul, m., consul; stem cōnsul- .		Vīctor, m., victor; stem vīctor- .		Aequor, n., sea; stem aequor- .	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i> cōnsul	cōnsulēs	vīctor	vīctōrēs	aequor	aequora
<i>G.</i> cōnsulis	cōnsulum	vīctōris	vīctōrum	aequoris	aequorum
<i>D.</i> cōnsulī	cōnsulibus	vīctōrī	vīctōribus	aequorī	aequoribus
<i>Ac.</i> cōnsulem	cōnsulēs	vīctōrem	vīctōrēs	aequor	aequora
<i>V.</i> cōnsul	cōnsulēs	vīctor	vīctōrēs	aequor	aequora
<i>Ab.</i> cōnsule	cōnsulibus	vīctōre	vīctōribus	aequore	aequoribus

NASAL STEMS

45. These end in **n**, *hiems*, *winter*, being the only one in **m**.

Most masculines and feminines form the Nominative by dropping the stem-characteristic and changing a preceding vowel to **o**, while some masculines and most neuters retain the stem-characteristic and change a preceding **i** to **e**.

Virgō , f., <i>virgin</i> ; stem virgin-		Leō , m., <i>lion</i> ; stem leōn-		Flūmen , n., <i>river</i> ; stem flūmin-	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i> virgō	virginēs	leō	leōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
<i>G.</i> virginis	virginum	leōnis	leōnum	flūminis	flūminum
<i>D.</i> virginī	virginibus	leōnī	leōnibus	flūminī	flūminibus
<i>Ac.</i> virginem	virginēs	leōnem	leōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
<i>V.</i> virgō	virginēs	leō	leōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
<i>Ab.</i> virgine	virginibus	leōne	leōnibus	flūmine	flūminibus

FRICATIVES (SPIRANTS)

s-Stems

46. The Nominative has no additional **s**, and changes **e** to **i** in masculines before **s**, and in neuters **e** or **o** to **u**. In the oblique cases the **s** of the stem usually becomes **r** between two vowels, and in a few words this **r** has crept into the Nominative (cf. 11. 8).

Genus , n., <i>race</i> ; stem genes-		Corpus , n., <i>body</i> ; stem corpos-		Mōs , m., <i>custom</i> ; stem mōs-	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i> genus	genera	corpus	corpora	mōs	mōrēs
<i>G.</i> generis	generum	corporis	corporum	mōris	mōrum
<i>D.</i> generī	generibus	corporī	corporibus	mōrī	mōribus
<i>Ac.</i> genus	genera	corpus	corpora	mōrem	mōrēs
<i>V.</i> genus	genera	corpus	corpora	mōs	mōrēs
<i>Ab.</i> genere	generibus	corpore	corporibus	mōre	mōribus

VOWEL STEMS

47.

i-Stems

Nūbēs, f., cloud; stem nūbi- .		Hostis, c., enemy; stem hosti- .		Animal, n., animal; stem animāli- .	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i> nūbēs	nūbēs	hostis	hostēs	animal	animālia
<i>G.</i> nūbis	nūbium	hostis	hostium	animālis	animālium
<i>D.</i> nūbī	nūbibus	hostī	hostibus	animālī	animālibus
<i>Ac.</i> nūbem	nūbis(-ēs)	hostem	hostis(-ēs)	animal	animālia
<i>V.</i> nūbēs	nūbēs	hostis	hostēs	animal	animālia
<i>Ab.</i> nūbe	nūbibus	hoste	hostibus	animālī	animālibus

1. Some genuine consonant-stems have the Nominative in *-is*; as *canis, dog*.

2. Some *-i*-stems have, in the Nominative, the form of consonant-stems; as *mors, death*, for *mortis*.

Vowel Stems in *ū*, *ī*, and in Diphthongs

Sūs, c., swine; stem sū- .		Bōs, c., ox, cow; stem bou- .		Vīs, f., force; stem vī- .	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i> sūs	suēs	bōs	bovēs	vīs	virēs
<i>G.</i> suis	suum	bovis	{ bovum boum	vīs (rare)	virium
<i>D.</i> suī	{ suibus subus	bovī	{ bōbus būbus	vī	viribus
<i>Ac.</i> suēm	suēs	bovem	bovēs	vim	virēs
<i>V.</i> sūs	suēs	bōs	bovēs		virēs
<i>Ab.</i> sue	{ suibus subus	bove	{ bōbus būbus	vī	viribus

Add to the above *Iuppiter* (*G. Iovis, D. Iovī, Ac. Iovem, V. Iuppiter, Ab. Iove*) for *Iou-pater*.

48. IRREGULAR NOUNS

	Senex, m., <i>old man.</i>		Carō, f., <i>flesh.</i>		Os, n., <i>bone.</i>	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	senex	senēs	carō	carnēs	os	ossa
G.	senis	senum	carnis	carnium	ossis	ossium
D.	senī	senibus	carnī	carnibus	ossi	ossibus
Ac.	senem	senēs	carnem	carnēs	os	ossa
V.	senex	senēs	carō	carnēs	os	ossa
Ab.	sene	senibus	carne	carnibus	osse	ossibus

PECULIARITIES OF CASE-FORMS

49. 1. The following regularly have the Accusative singular in **-im**: *amussis, rule*; *būris, plowbeam*; *sitis, thirst*; *tussis, cough*; *vis, force*, and names of towns and rivers in **-is**.

2. These usually have **-im** in the Accusative singular: *febris, fever*; *puppis, stern*; *pelvis, basin*; *restis, rope*; *secūris, ax*; *turris, tower*.

3. These sometimes have **-im** in the Accusative singular: *bipennis, battle ax*; *clāvis, key*; *cutis, skin*; *crātis, hurdle*; *messis, harvest*; *neptis, granddaughter*; *nāvis, ship*; *praesēpis, stall*; *sēmentis, sowing*.

4. The following nouns have **-ī** in the Ablative singular:—

Those that have the Accusative in **-im**.

Neuter vowel stems with Nominatives in **-e, -al, -ar**.

Names of months in **-is**, and adjective vowel stems of the Third Declension.

Often *amnis, river*; *avis, bird*; *civis, citizen*; *imber, rain*; *nāvis, ship*; and *Ignis* in the phrases *ferrō Ignique, with fire and sword*; *aquā et Ignī interdicere, to cut off from fire and water*.

NOTE.—Names of towns, and adjectives used as proper names, have *e*; also *iūvenis* and *aedilis*.

5. Neuters in *-e*, *-al*, and *-ar* have *-ia* in the Nominative plural.

6. The following nouns have *-ium* in the Genitive plural:—

Neuters in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*.

Parisyllables in *-ēs*, *-er*, *-is*, except *ambāgēs*, *circumlocution*; *canis*, *dog*; *iūvenis*, *young man*; *senex*, *old man*; *pater*, *father*; *māter*, *mother*; *frāter*, *brother*; *accipiter*, *hawk*.

Monosyllables in *-s* or *-x* preceded by a consonant, except *ops*, *lynx*, *pēs*.

Nix, *snow*; *nox*, *night*; *os*, *bone*.

Polysyllables in *-ns* and *-rs*.

Folk names in *-ās* (G. *-ātis*) and *-is* (G. *itis*).

Also *nostrātium*, *of our countrymen*; *vestrātium*, *of your countrymen*; *optimātium*, *of the aristocrats*; *penātium*, *of the Penates*.

GENDER OF THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS

50. 1. **Masculine**.—Nouns in *-ō*, *-or*, *-ōs*, *-er*, and imparisyllables in *-ēs*, *-es*.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. *carō*, *flesh*; nouns in *-dō*, *-gō*; abstracts and collectives in *-iō*, fem. But the following are masculine: *cardō*, *hinge*; *ōrdō*, *row*; *ligō*, *hoe*.

2. *arbor*, *tree*; *cor*, *heart*; *ador*, *grain*; *marmor*, *marble*; *aequor*, *sea*, neut.

3. *cōs*, *whetstone*; *dōs*, *dowry*, fem.; *ōs*, *mouth*, neut.

4. *linter*, *skiff*, fem.; *cadāver*, *corpse*; *iter*, *way*; *tūber*, *tumor*; *ūber*, *udder*; *vēr*, *spring*; *verber*, *lash*, and botanical names in *-er*, neut.

5. *compēs*, *fetter*; *quiēs*, *rest*; *mercēs*, *pay*; *merges*, *sheaf*; *seges*, *crop*; *teges*, *mat*, fem.

2. **Feminine.** — Nouns in **-ās, -as, -is, -ūs, -us, -aus, -x, -s** after a consonant, and parissyllables in **-ēs**.

EXCEPTIONS. — 1. **ās** (a copper coin); **vās, surety, masc.**; **vās, vessel, neut.**

2. Nouns in **-nis** and **-guis**; **axis, axle**; **collis, hill**; **canālis, canal**; **caulis, stalk**; **cucumis, cucumber**; **ōnsis, sword**; **fascis, fagot**; **fūstis, cudgel**; **lapis, stone**; **mēnsis, month**; **piscis, fish**; **postis, post**; **pulvis, dust**; **orbis, circle**; **sentis, brier**; **torris, firebrand**; **vectis, lever, masc.**

3. **mūs, mouse**, and **sūs, pig**, are common; other monosyllables in **-ūs** are neuter.

4. Nouns in **-ex** (G. **-icis**); as **iūdex, judge**; **grex, flock**; **calix, cup**; **fornix, vault, masc.**

5. **dēns, tooth**; **fōns, fountain**; **mōns, mountain**; **pōns, bridge**; **cliēns, client**; **rūdēns, rope, masc.**

3. **Neuter.** — Nouns in **-a, -e, -c, -l, -n, -ar, -ur, -ut, and -us** (G. **-eris, -oris, -uris**).

EXCEPTIONS. — **sāl, salt**; **sōl, sun**, and stems in **-l**; **turtur, turtle dove**, and **vultur, vulture**; **pecten, comb**; **lepus, hare, masc.**; nouns in **-us**, with Genitive in **-ūtis**, and **-ūdis, fem.**

51. TYPICAL NOMINATIVES AND GENITIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

NOMINATIVE ENDING	GENITIVE ENDING	LATIN WORD	MEANING
-al	-ālis	animal	<i>animal</i>
	-ālis	Hasdrubal	<i>Hasdrubal</i>
-āl	-ālis	sāl	<i>salt</i>
-el	-ellis	fel	<i>gall</i>
-il	-ilis	vigil	<i>sentry</i>
	-ilis	Tanaquil	<i>Tanaquil</i>
-ōl	-ōlis	sōl	<i>sun</i>

TYPICAL NOMINATIVES AND GENITIVES OF THE THIRD
DECLENSION — *Continued*

NOMINATIVE ENDING	GENITIVE ENDING	LATIN WORD	MEANING
-ul	-ulis	exsul	<i>exile</i>
-en	-inis	flāmen	<i>priest</i>
-ar	-āris	calcar	<i>spur</i>
	-aris	iubar	<i>light</i>
-ār	-arris	fār	<i>grain</i>
-er	-eris	later	<i>tile</i>
	-ris	frāter	<i>brother</i>
	-ineris	iter	<i>way</i>
-ēr	-ēris	vēr	<i>spring</i>
-or	-ōris	āctor	<i>agent</i>
	-oris	marmor	<i>marble</i>
	-ordis	cor	<i>heart</i>
-ur	-uris	vultur	<i>vulture</i>
	-oris	rōbur	<i>oak</i>
-ūr	-ūris	fūr	<i>thief</i>
-āc	-actis	lāc	<i>milk</i>
-ēc	-ēcis	allēc	<i>pickle</i>
-ut	-itis	caput	<i>head</i>
-e	-is	mare	<i>sea</i>
-ō	-ōnis	Saxō	<i>Saxon</i>
-ō	-ōnis	pāvō	<i>peacock</i>
	-inis	homō	<i>man</i>
	-nis	carō	<i>flesh</i>
-ās	-āsis	vās	<i>dish</i>
	-aris	mās	<i>male</i>
	-ssis	ās	<i>a copper coin</i>
	-ātis	civitās	<i>state</i>
-as	-adis	vas	<i>surety</i>
	-atis	anas	<i>duck</i>
-aes	-aedis	praes	<i>surety</i>
	-ris	aes	<i>brass</i>
-aus	-audis	laus	<i>praise</i>

TYPICAL NOMINATIVES AND GENITIVES OF THE THIRD
DECLENSION — *Continued*

NOMINATIVE ENDING	GENITIVE ENDING	LATIN WORD	MEANING
-ēs	-is	caedēs	<i>slaughter</i>
	-edis	pēs	<i>foot</i>
	-eris	Cerēs	<i>Ceres</i>
	-etis	ariēs	<i>ram</i>
	-ētis	quiēs	<i>rest</i>
-es	-etis	seges	<i>crop</i>
	-idis	obses	<i>hostage</i>
	-itis	comes	<i>companion</i>
-is	-is	collis	<i>hill</i>
	-idis	lapis	<i>stone</i>
	-inis	sanguis	<i>blood</i>
	-eris	pulvis	<i>dust</i>
	-itis	lis	<i>lawsuit</i>
-īs	-iris	glis	<i>dormouse</i>
	-ōdis	cūstōs	<i>keeper</i>
	-ōris	flōs	<i>flower</i>
	-ōtis	dōs	<i>dowry</i>
-ovis	-ovis	bōs	<i>ox, cow</i>
	-ssis	os	<i>bone</i>
	-udis	pecus	<i>cattle</i>
-us	-uris	Ligus	<i>a Ligurian</i>
	-oris	litus	<i>shore</i>
	-eris	onus	<i>burden</i>
	-ūs	grūs	<i>crane</i>
	-ūdis	incūs	<i>anvil</i>
-ūris	-ūris	tellūs	<i>earth</i>
	-ūtis	virtūs	<i>virtue</i>
	-ltis	puls	<i>porridge</i>
	-m(p)s	hiems	<i>winter</i>
-ns	-adis	glāns	<i>acorn</i>
	-ntis	mōns	<i>mountain</i>
-rs	-rdis	vēcors	<i>silly</i>

TYPICAL NOMINATIVES AND GENITIVES OF THE THIRD
DECLENSION — *Continued*

NOMINATIVE ENDING	GENITIVE ENDING	LATIN WORD	MEANING
	-rtis	ars	<i>art</i>
-bs	-bis	urbs	<i>city</i>
-ps	-pis	daps	<i>feast</i>
-eps	-ipis	princeps	<i>chief</i>
	-upis	auceps	<i>fowler</i>
-āx	-ācis	pāx	<i>peace</i>
-ax	-acis	fax	<i>torch</i>
-aex	-aecis	faex	<i>dregs</i>
-aux	-aucis	(faux)	<i>throat</i>
-ex	-ecis	nex	<i>death</i>
	-icis	iūdex	<i>judge</i>
	-egis	grex	<i>flock</i>
	-igis	rēmex	<i>rower</i>
-ēx	-ēcis	vervēx	<i>wether</i>
	-icis	vibēx	<i>weal</i>
	-ēgis	lēx	<i>law</i>
-lex	-lectilis	supellex	<i>furniture</i>
-ix	-icis	cervix	<i>neck</i>
-ix	-icis	fornix	<i>cellar</i>
	-igis	strix	<i>screech owl</i>
	-ivis	nix	<i>snow</i>
-ōx	-ōcis	vōx	<i>voice</i>
-ox	-ocis	praecox	<i>premature</i>
	-ogis	Allobrox	<i>Allobrogian</i>
	-octis	nox	<i>night</i>
-ux	-cis	crux	<i>cross</i>
	-ugis	coniūx	<i>husband, wife</i>
-ūx	-ūcis	lūx	<i>light</i>
	-ūgis	frūx	<i>fruit</i>
-lx	-lcis	falx	<i>sickle</i>
-nx	-ncis	lynx	<i>lynx</i>
-rx	-rcis	arx	<i>citadel</i>

GREEK NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

52. 1. Nominative singular: —

$\omega\nu$, in names of men, usually becomes $-\delta$: **Platō**.

2. Accusative singular: —

$\alpha\epsilon\rho$, **aethēr**, and names of places end in $-\acute{\alpha}$: **āera**, **aethera**, **Babylōna**.

Parisyllables in $-\iota\varsigma$ end in $-\iota\mu$: **basim**, **pedestal**.

3. Genitive singular: —

Parisyllabic proper names in $-\epsilon\varsigma$ often have $-\iota$ in the Genitive: **Aristīdī**, of *Aristides*.

Feminine proper names in $-\delta$ have the Genitive in $-\tau\iota\varsigma$ and the other cases like the Nominative, or they may be declined as Latin nouns: **Dīdō**, **Dīdūs**, **Dīdō**, **Dīdō**, **Dīdō**, **Dīdō**; or **Dīdō**, **Dīdōnis**, etc.

4. Vocative singular: —

Proper names in $-\acute{\alpha}\varsigma$ (G. $-\acute{\alpha}\tau\iota\varsigma$), $-\iota\varsigma$, and $-\upsilon\varsigma$ drop $-\varsigma$: **Atlā**, **Charybdī**, **Coty**.

Proper names in $-\epsilon\upsilon\varsigma$ usually drop $-\varsigma$: **Orpheu**. In prose such nouns usually follow the Second Declension, save in the Vocative.

5. Ablative singular: —

Parisyllables in $-\iota\varsigma$ have $-\iota$: **basī**.

6. Nominative plural, $-\epsilon\varsigma$: **Hērōēs**.

7. Genitive plural: —

$-\delta\eta$ ($\omega\nu$) is retained in the titles of books: **Metamorphōseōn**. $-\mu$ usually takes the place of $\omega\nu$, and $-\iota\mu$ of $\epsilon\omega\nu$: **Gigantum**, **Sardium**.

8. Dative and Ablative plural: —

Words in $-\mu\alpha$ have $-\iota\varsigma$ for $-\iota\beta\upsilon\varsigma$: **poēmatīs**, in *poems*.

9. Accusative plural: —

Folk-names have the Greek form $-\acute{\alpha}\varsigma$, as well as $-\epsilon\varsigma$: **Cyclōpās** and **Cyclōpēs**.

FOURTH DECLENSION (*u*-DECLENSION)

53. The Nominative ends in **-us** for masculines, and **-ū** for neuters.

CASE ENDINGS

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masc.	Neut.	Masc.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	-us	-ū	-ūs	-uā
<i>G.</i>	-ūs	-ūs	-uum	-uum
<i>D.</i>	-uī (-ū)	-ū	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Ac.</i>	-um	-ū	-ūs	-ua
<i>V.</i>	-us	-ū	-ūs	-ua
<i>Ab.</i>	-ū	-ū	-ibus	-ibus

MASCULINES (IN **-uā**)

Exercitus, m., *army*; stem **exercitu-**.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>N.</i>	exercitus	exercitūs
<i>G.</i>	exercitūs	exercituum
<i>D.</i>	exercituī (-ū)	exercitibus
<i>Ac.</i>	exercitum	exercitūs
<i>V.</i>	exercitus	exercitūs
<i>Ab.</i>	exercitū	exercitibus

NEUTERS (IN **-ū**)

Cornū, n., *horn*; stem **cornu-**.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>N.</i>	cornū	cornua
<i>G.</i>	cornūs	cornuum
<i>D.</i>	cornū	cornibus
<i>Ac.</i>	cornū	cornua
<i>V.</i>	cornū	cornua
<i>Ab.</i>	cornū	cornibus

NOTE.— The endings are those of the Third Declension, the **-u** of the stem usually absorbing the vowel of the ending. The **-u** is lost before **-ibus** in the Dative and Ablative plural.

PECULIARITIES

54. 1. These usually have **-ubus** in the Dative and Ablative plural: **artūs** (plur.), *limbs*; **partus**, *birth*; **portus**, *harbor*; **tribus**, *tribe*; **verū**, *spit*, and dissyllables in **-cus**.

2. **Domus** has also the following forms of the Second Declension:—

domī (Locative), *at home*
domō, *from home*

domum, *homewards*
domōs (plur.), *homewards*

3. The following are feminine: *acus*, *needle*; *domus*, *house*; *Idūs* (plur.), *Ides*; *manus*, *hand*; *porticus*, *porch*; *tribus*, *tribe*.

4. In early Latin, nouns in *-us* often have the Genitive singular in *-i*: *senāti*, *of the senate*.

FIFTH DECLENSION

55. The stem ends in *-ē*; Nominative in *-s*.

Diēs, m., <i>day</i> ; stem diē-		Rēs, f., <i>thing</i> ; stem rē-		CASE ENDINGS	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. diēs	diēs	N. rēs	rēs	N. -ēs	-ēs
G. diēī	diērum	G. reī	rērum	G. -ēī	-ērum
D. diēī	diēbus	D. reī	rēbus	D. -ēī	-ēbus
Ac. diem	diēs	Ac. rem	rēs	Ac. -em	-ēs
V. diēs	diēs	V. rēs	rēs	V. -ēs	-ēs
Ab. diē	diēbus	Ab. rē	rēbus	Ab. -ē	-ēbus

1. Nouns of the Fifth Declension are feminine, except *meridiēs*, *midday*, masculine, and *diēs*, masculine or feminine in the singular, masculine in the plural.

2. Only *diēs* and *rēs* are declined throughout.

3. The Genitive and Dative singular have *-ē* after a vowel, *-ēī* after a consonant.

4. The Genitive and Dative singular sometimes end in *-ē* instead of *-ēī*.

5. Note the Genitive form *plēbī* (as if from Nominative *plēbēs*), which is occasionally found.

DEFECTIVE NOUNS

56. 1. Certain classes of nouns are usually found only in the singular. These are proper names, abstract nouns, names of materials: *Caesar*, *Caesar*; *iūstitia*, *justice*;

aurum, *gold*. But Caesarēs, *the Caesars*; iustitiae, *instances of justice*; aera, *bronzes*.

2. In the plural only are:—

Island groups, mountains, cities, feasts: Baliārēs, *the Balearic Islands*; Alpēs, *the Alps*; Syracūsae, *Syracuse*; Sāturnālia, *the Saturnalia*.

3. MOST IMPORTANT WORDS USED IN PLURAL ONLY

angustiae, <i>narrow pass</i>	māiōrēs, <i>ancestors</i>
arma, <i>weapons</i>	Mānēs, <i>ghost</i>
bīgae, <i>pair</i> (used in singular, though rare)	minae, <i>threats</i>
brācae, <i>breeches</i>	moenia, <i>walls</i>
cassēs, <i>net</i>	nārēs, <i>nose</i>
dēliciae, <i>delight</i>	Nōnae, <i>the Nones</i>
dīvitiae, <i>riches</i>	nūptiae, <i>marriage</i>
epulae, <i>feast</i>	posterī, <i>descendants</i>
exsequiae, <i>obsequies</i>	praecordia, <i>diaphragm</i>
fastī, <i>calendar</i>	quadrīgae, <i>a team of four</i>
faucēs, <i>throat</i>	reliquiae, <i>remainder</i>
Idūs, <i>the Ides</i>	scālae, <i>ladder</i>
indūtiae, <i>treaty</i>	tenebrae, <i>darkness</i>
insidiae, <i>ambush</i>	valvae, <i>door leaves</i>
	vīscera, <i>entrails</i>

Kalendae, the Kalends

57. WORDS WITH DIFFERENT MEANINGS IN SINGULAR AND PLURAL

aedēs, <i>temple</i>	aedēs, <i>house</i>
aqua, <i>water</i>	aquae, <i>springs</i>
auxilium, <i>aid</i>	auxilia, <i>auxiliaries</i>
balneum, (<i>private</i>) <i>bath</i>	balneae, <i>public baths</i>
bonum, <i>good</i>	bona, <i>property</i>
carcer, <i>prison</i>	carcerēs, <i>barriers of racecourse</i>
castrum, <i>fort</i>	castra, <i>camp</i>
comitium, <i>place of assembly</i>	comitia, <i>election</i>
cōpia, <i>plenty</i>	cōpiae, <i>forces</i>
finis, <i>end</i>	finēs, <i>boundaries</i>

fortūna, *fortune*
grātia, *favor*
hortus, *garden*
impedimentum, *obstacle*
littera, *letter of alphabet*
opera, *work*
(ops) opis (Gen.), *aid*
pars, *part*
sāl, *salt*
tabula, *board, picture*
vis, *force*

fortūnae, *riches*
grātia, *thanks, the Graces*
horti, *pleasure grounds*
impedimenta, *baggage*
litterae, *letter (epistle)*
operae, *workmen*
opēs, *resources*
partēs, *party, part*
salēs, *witticisms*
tabulae, *writing tablets*
virēs, *strength*

58. **Heteroclitēs** have forms of two declensions.

1. The following have singular forms of one declension, and plural forms of another:—

SING.

balneum, *bath*, 2d
dēlicium, *delight*, 2d
epulum, *banquet*, 2d
iūgerum, *acre*, 2d
vās, *vessel*, 3d

PLUR.

bae, 1st
dēliciae, 1st
epulae, *feast*, 1st
iūgera, 3d
vāsa, 2d

2. Some nouns of the First Declension have also forms of the Fifth Declension in the Nominative and Accusative:—

lūxuria and **lūxuriēs**, *luxury* **māteria** and **māteriēs**, *timber*
lūxuriam and **lūxuriem** **māteriam** and **māteriem**

3. **Requiēs**, *rest*, has no plural in use; in the singular, it is of the Third and Fifth Declensions: Nom., Voc. **requiēs**, Gen. **requiētis**, Dat. —, Acc. **requiētem** or **requiem**, Abl. **requiēte** or **requiēs**.

4. **Plēbs** (Gen. **plēbis**), *commons*, has also **plēbēs**, Gen. **plēbei** and **plēbi** in the expression **tribūnus plēbi**.

5. **Vesper**, *evening*, has Gen. **vesperi** or **vesperis**, Acc. **vesperum**, Abl. **vesperō** or **vespere**.

6. **Famēs**, *hunger*, of the Third Declension, has Abl. **famē** of the Fifth.

59. **Heterogeneous** nouns have different genders in the singular and the plural. The most common are:—

SING.	PLUR.
balneum, n., <i>bath</i>	balneae, f.
carbasus, f., <i>flax</i>	carbasa, n., <i>sails</i>
dēlicium, n.	dēliciae, f.
epulum, n., <i>banquet</i>	epulae, f., <i>feast</i>
frēnum, n., <i>bridle</i>	frēnī, m., and frēna, n.
iocus, m., <i>jest</i>	iocī, m., and ioca, n.
locus, m., <i>place</i>	locī, topics, m., and loca, n., <i>localities</i>
rāstrum, n., <i>rake</i>	rāstrī, m., and rāstra, n.
Tartarus, m., <i>Tartarus</i>	Tartara, n.
Thūrium, n., <i>Thurium</i>	Thūriī, m.

60. **Indeclinable** nouns are neuter, and are used only in the Nominative and Accusative singular.

fās, <i>right</i>	nefās, <i>impiety</i>
īnstar, <i>likeness</i>	nihil, <i>nothing</i>
māne, <i>morning</i>	secus, <i>sex</i>

61. 1. Some nouns are found only in the Ablative singular: **concessū**, *with the permission*; **īussū**, *by the command*; **nātū**, *by birth*.

2. These are used in two cases only: **fors**, *chance*, **forte** (Nominative and Ablative singular); **spontis**, *free will*, **sponte** (Genitive and Ablative singular).

3. **Nēmō**, *no one*, is regularly used only in the Nominative, Dative, and Accusative singular, **nēmīnī**, **nēmīnem**. The Genitive and Ablative singular, **nūllus** and **nūllō**, and the whole plural are borrowed from **nūllus**.

4. **Opis**, **dapis**, **frūgis** (Gen.) have no Nominative singular.

5. **Impetus**, *onset*, of the Fourth Declension, and many monosyllables have no Genitive plural: as **lūx**, **sōl**, and **ōs**.

6. **Vĕnum**, *sale*, is usually found only in the Accusative, in such phrases as **vĕnum dare**, *to sell*.

7. **Precĭ**, **precem**, **prece**, *prayer*, is not used in the Nominative and Genitive singular.

8. **Vicis**, **vicem**, **vices**, *turn*, lacks the Nominative and Dative singular and the Genitive plural.

ADJECTIVES

62. Adjectives denote quality. They take the forms (a) of the First and Second Declensions; (b) of the Third Declension.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION

63. 1. These form their feminine like nouns of the First Declension, and their masculine and neuter like nouns of the Second Declension.

2. ENDINGS OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION

-us, -a, -um: as **bonus**, **bona**, **bonum**

-er, -ra, -rum: as **pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum**

-ur, -a, -um: as **satur**, **satura**, **saturum**

3.

Bonus, *good*.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum	boni	bonae	bona
<i>G.</i>	boni	bonae	boni	bonorum	bonarum	bonorum
<i>D.</i>	bono	bonae	bono	bonis	bonis	bonis
<i>Ac.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonos	bonas	bona
<i>V.</i>	bone	bona	bonum	boni	bonae	bona
<i>Ab.</i>	bono	bona	bono	bonis	bonis	bonis

4.

Liber, free.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>G.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī	liberōrum	liberarum	liberōrum
<i>D.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Ac.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>V.</i>	liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Ab.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

5. **Asper**, rough; **lacer**, torn; **miser**, wretched; **prōsper**, prosperous; **tener**, tender; compounds of **-fer** and **-ger**, and sometimes **dexter**, right, are declined like **liber**. In other adjectives, the **e** does not belong to the stem: thus, **niger**, **nigra**, **nigrum**; **pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum**.

6. The Genitive singular masculine and neuter of adjectives in **-tus** ends in **-i**, while the Vocative ends in **-ie**: Nom. **agrārius**; Gen. **agrāriī**; Voc. **agrārie**.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

64. 1. There are nine irregular adjectives: **ūllus**, any; **nūllus**, none; **ūnus**, one; **sōlus**, alone; **alius**, another; **tōtus**, whole; **alter**, the other; **uter**, which of two? and **neuter**, neither.

All except **sōlus** lack the Vocative, and are regular in the plural.

2. **Ūllus**, **nūllus**, **tōtus**, **sōlus**, **ūnus** are declined alike:—

<i>N.</i>	nūllus	nūlla	nūllum
<i>G.</i>	nūllus	nūllus	nūllus
<i>D.</i>	nūllī	nūllī	nūllī
<i>Ac.</i>	nūllum	nūllam	nūllum
<i>Ab.</i>	nūllō	nūllā	nūllō

3. **Uter** and **neuter** are declined alike:—

<i>N.</i>	<i>uter</i>	<i>utra</i>	<i>utrum</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>utrius</i>	<i>utrius</i>	<i>utrius</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>utri</i>	<i>utri</i>	<i>utri</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>utrum</i>	<i>utram</i>	<i>utrum</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>utrō</i>	<i>utrā</i>	<i>utrō</i>

4. **Alter, altera, alterum** has **-ius** in the Genitive and **-i** in the Dative, but sometimes Dative feminine **-ae**.

5. **Alius, alia, aliud**, has **-ius** in the Genitive and **-i** in the Dative, but generally uses the Genitive of **alter**, instead of its own; or **aliēnus** may be used.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

65. These adjectives are declined like nouns of the Third Declension, and in the Nominative have three terminations, two terminations, or one termination.

1. THREE TERMINATIONS

	<i>Ācer, sharp.</i>				PLUR.
	SING.				
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>ācri</i>	<i>ācri</i>	<i>ācri</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs (-is)</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>ācri</i>	<i>ācri</i>	<i>ācri</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

2. TWO TERMINATIONS

	<i>Facilis, easy.</i>			PLUR.
	SING.			
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	<i>facilis</i>	<i>facile</i>	<i>facilēs</i>	<i>facilia</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>facilis</i>	<i>facilis</i>	<i>facilitum</i>	<i>facilitum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>facili</i>	<i>facili</i>	<i>facilibus</i>	<i>facilibus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>facilem</i>	<i>facile</i>	<i>facilēs (-is)</i>	<i>facilia</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>facilis</i>	<i>facile</i>	<i>facilēs</i>	<i>facilia</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>facili</i>	<i>facili</i>	<i>facilibus</i>	<i>facilibus</i>

3. ONE TERMINATION

Fēlix, *happy*.

	SING.		PLUR.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	fēlix	fēlix	fēlicēs	fēlicia
<i>G.</i>	fēlicis	fēlicis	fēlicium	fēlicium
<i>D.</i>	fēlicī	fēlicī	fēlicibus	fēlicibus
<i>Ac.</i>	fēlicem	fēlix	fēlicēs (-is)	fēlicia
<i>V.</i>	fēlix	fēlix	fēlicēs	fēlicia
<i>Ab.</i>	fēlicī	fēlicī	fēlicibus	fēlicibus

4. **Particeps**, *sharing*.

	SING.		PLUR.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	particeps	particeps	participēs	participa
<i>G.</i>	participis	participis	participum	participum
<i>D.</i>	participī	participī	participibus	participibus
<i>Ac.</i>	participem	particeps	participēs	participa
<i>V.</i>	particeps	particeps	participēs	participa
<i>Ab.</i>	participē	participē	participibus	participibus

In the same way are declined **compos**, *master of*; **pauper**, *poor*; **princeps**, *chief*; **sōspes**, *safe*; **superstes**, *surviving*; and **vetus**, Gen. **veteris**, *old*. So also **dīves**, *rich*, but its neuter plural is **dītia**.

5. PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

Monēns, *warning*.

	SING.		PLUR.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	monēns	monēns	monentēs	monentia
<i>G.</i>	monentis	monentis	monentium	monentium
<i>D.</i>	monentī	monentī	monentibus	monentibus
<i>Ac.</i>	monentem	monēns	monentēs (-is)	monentia
<i>V.</i>	monēns	monēns	monentēs	monentia
<i>Ab.</i>	monentī (-e)	monentī (e)	monentibus	monentibus

6. DECLENSION OF A COMPARATIVE

		Altior, higher.			
		SING.		PLUR.	
		Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
<i>N., V.</i>	altior		altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
<i>G.</i>	altiōris		altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
<i>D.</i>	altiōrī		altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
<i>Ac.</i>	altiōrem		altius	altiōres	altiōra
<i>Ab.</i>	altiōre (-ī)		altiōre (-ī)	altiōribus	altiōribus

7. **Plūs, more.**

		SING.		PLUR.	
		Neut.		Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	plūs			plūrēs	plūra
<i>G.</i>	plūris			plūrium	plūrium
<i>D.</i>	—			plūribus	plūribus
<i>Ac.</i>	plūs			plūrēs (-īs)	plūra
<i>V.</i>	—			—	—
<i>Ab.</i>	plūre			plūribus	plūribus

NOTE. — In the singular, **plūs** is a neuter substantive.

66. Adjectives of the Third Declension have **-ī** in the Ablative singular; **-ia** in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative plural, neuter; **-is** and **-ēs** in the Accusative plural, masculine and feminine, and **-ium** in the Genitive plural.

EXCEPTIONS. — 1. Comparatives have **-e** in the Ablative singular, **-a** in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative plural, neuter, and **-um** in the Genitive plural; **plūrēs** and **complūrēs** have **-a** (and **-ia**) and **-ium**.

2. **Inops**, *needy*, and **memor**, *mindful*, have **-ī** in the Ablative singular, but **-um** in the Genitive plural.

3. Participial adjectives in **-āns** and **-ēns**, when used as nouns or participles, have **-e** in the Ablative singular; otherwise, **-ī**. Thus, **Caesare praesente**, *while Caesar was present*; but **in praesentī periculō**, *during the present danger*.

4. Many adjectives of one termination have, in accordance with their meaning, no neuter endings: for example, **pauper**, *poor*; **dives**, *rich*.

5. **Frūgī**, *frugal*, and **nēquam**, *worthless*, are indeclinable.

6. The nouns **ultor**, **ultrix**, *avenger*, and **victor**, **victrix**, *conqueror*, are used as adjectives also, and in poetry have a neuter plural: **victoria arma**, Verg. Aen. III. 54, *victorious arms*.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

67. There are three degrees of comparison, to denote different degrees of quality:—

1. The Positive, which simply attaches quality to an object without comparing it with any other object: as **puer bonus**, *a good boy*.

2. The Comparative, which implies comparison between two objects: as **puer melior**, *the better boy*.

3. The Superlative, which compares an object with at least two other objects: as **puer optimus**, *the best boy*.

COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE

68. To form the Comparative, **-ior** (neuter **-ius**) is added to the stem of the Positive. Vowel stems drop their characteristic vowel before adding the endings. Thus **altus**, *high*, on the stem **alto-** forms the Comparative **altior** (neuter **altius**).

69. The Superlative is formed by adding **-issimus**, **-a**, **-um** to the stem of the Positive. Vowel stems drop their characteristic vowel before adding these endings. Thus **altus**, *high*, has **altissimus**, **-a**, **-um** for the Superlative.

1. Adjectives in **-er** add **-rimus** to the Nom. sing. masc.: as **pulcher**, *beautiful*; Superlative **pulcherrimus**, *most beautiful*.

2. **Vetus**, *old*, has **veterrimus**, *oldest*, and **mātūrus** has **mātūrissimus** and **mātūrrimus**, *most mature*.

3. Six adjectives form their Superlative by adding **-limus** :—

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
facilis , <i>easy</i>	facilior	facillimus
difficilis , <i>difficult</i>	difficillior	difficillimus
similis , <i>like</i>	similior	simillimus
dissimilis , <i>unlike</i>	dissimilior	dissimillimus
gracilis , <i>slender</i>	gracilior	gracillimus
humilis , <i>low</i>	humilior	humillimus

4. Adjectives in **-dicus**, **-ficus**, **-volus** have **-entior** in the Comparative and **-entissimus** in the Superlative: **benevolus**, *benevolent*, **benevolentior**, **benevolentissimus**.

NOTE. — **Egēnus**, *needy*, and **prōvidus**, *provident*, also have **-entior** and **-entissimus**, but these forms are really from the corresponding present participles of **egēre**, *to be in need*, and **prōvidēre**, *to provide*.

5. **Nēquam** has **nēquior**, **nēquissimus**; **frūgī** has **frūgālior**, **frūgāliissimus**; **dīves** has **dīvitior** and **dītior**, **dīvitissimus** and **dītissimus**.

6. These adjectives are compared with change of stem :—

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus , <i>good</i>	melior	optimus
malus , <i>bad</i>	pēior	pessimus
māgnus , <i>great</i>	māior	māximus
parvus , <i>small</i>	minor	minimus
multus , <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimus

ADJECTIVES WITHOUT TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON

70. 1. Most adjectives in **-us** preceded by a vowel, except adjectives in **-quus** : **idōneus**, *favorable*; **pīus**, *filial*.

2. Many adjectives in *-ālis, -ilis, -ilis, -bilis*.

3. Many adjectives denoting material, duration, color, or indicating connection with some living thing: *ferreus, iron; sempiternus, everlasting; flavus, yellow; equinus, of a horse*.

Such adjectives are compared by prefixing *magis, more*, and *māximē, most*: as *magis idōneus, māximē idōneus*.

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON

71. 1. Positive lacking, but Comparative and Superlative suggested by a preposition:—

Preposition	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
<i>citrā, on this side</i>	—	<i>citerior, nearer</i>	<i>citimus</i>
<i>dē, down</i>	—	<i>dēterior, worse</i>	<i>dēterrimus</i>
<i>extrā, outside</i>	—	<i>exterior, outer</i>	{ <i>extrēmus</i> <i>extimus</i>
<i>intrā, within</i>	—	<i>interior, inner</i>	<i>intimus</i>
<i>prae, before</i>	—	<i>prior, former</i>	<i>primus</i>
<i>post, after</i>	—	<i>posterior, later</i>	{ <i>postrēmus, last</i> <i>postumus, late-born</i>
<i>prope, near</i>	—	<i>propior, nearer</i>	<i>proximus</i>
<i>ūltrā, beyond</i>	—	<i>ūltior, farther</i>	<i>ūltimus</i>

Also, from the archaic *potis, possible, potior, preferable, potissimus*.

2. Comparative lacking, or supplied from other adjectives:—

<i>falsus, false</i>	—	<i>falsissimus</i>
<i>fidus, faithful</i>	—	<i>fidissimus</i>
<i>novus, new</i>	<i>recentior</i>	{ <i>novissimus, last</i> <i>recentissimus, newest</i>
<i>sacer, sacred</i>	—	<i>sacerrimus</i>
<i>vetus, old</i>	<i>vetustior</i>	<i>veterrimus</i>

3. Superlative lacking, or supplied from other adjectives:—

iuvenis , <i>young</i>	iūnior	minimus nātū
ingēns , <i>immense</i>	ingentior	—
longinquus , <i>afar</i>	longinquior	—
propinquus , <i>near</i>	propinquior	—
senex , <i>old</i>	senior	māximus nātū
alacer , <i>brisk</i>	alacrior	—
salūtāris , <i>wholesome</i>	salūtārior	—

4. Positive expressed by a preposition or an adjective:—

Preposition	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Infra , <i>below</i>	Inferus , <i>lower</i>	Inferior , <i>lower</i>	{ īnfimus īmus
supra , <i>above</i>	superus , <i>upper</i>	superior ,	{ suprēmus summus

72.

NUMERALS

ADJECTIVES: Cardinal, answering the question, *How many?* *One, two, etc.*
Ordinal, answering the question, *What rank?* *First, second, etc.*
Distributive, *One each, two each, etc.*

ADVERBS: *Once, twice, etc.*

I. CARDINALS

1. I.	ūnus, -a, -um
2. II.	duo, -ae, -o
3. III.	trēs, tria
4. IV.	quattuor
5. V.	quīque
6. VI.	sex
7. VII.	septem
8. VIII.	octō
9. IX.	novem
10. X.	decem
11. XI.	ūndecim
12. XII.	duodecim
13. XIII.	tredecim
14. XIV.	quattuordecim

II. ORDINALS

primus
secundus
tertius
quartus
quīntus
sextus
septimus
octāvus
nōnus
decimus
ūndecimus
duodecimus
tertius decimus
quartus decimus

15. XV.	quīndecim	quintus decimus
16. XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17. XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus
18. XVIII.	duodēviginti	duodēvicēsimum
19. XIX.	ūndēviginti	ūndēvicēsimum
20. XX.	viginti	vicēsimum (vigēsimum)
21. XXI.	ūnus et viginti or vīginti ūnus	ūnus et vicēsimum or vicēsimum primus.
28. XXVIII.	duodētrigintā	duodētricēsimum (vicēsimum octāvus)
29. XXIX.	ūndētrigintā	ūndētricēsimum
30. XXX.	trigintā	tricēsimum (trigēsimum)
40. XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimum
50. L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimum
60. LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimum
70. LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimum
80. LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsimum
90. XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimum
99. IC.	ūndēcentum, or nōnāgintā novem, or novem et nōnāgintā.	ūndēcentēsimum
100. C.	centum	centēsimum
101. CI.	centum et ūnus, or centum ūnus	centēsimum primus, or centēsimum et primus
200. CC.	ducenti	ducentēsimum
400. CD.	quadringenti	quadringentēsimum
500. D or IO.	quingenti	quingentēsimum
600. DC or IOC.	sēscenti	sēscentēsimum
1000. M or CIO.	mille	millēsimum
2000. MM or IIM.	duo milia	bis millēsimum
5000. IOO.	quinque milia	quīnquies millēsimum
100,000. CCCIOOO.	centum milia	centiēs millēsimum.
1,000,000. CCCCIOOOO:	{ decies centēna milia	decies centiēs millēsimum

NOTE 1.— Adding O on the right of I multiplies by 10. Putting C before as often as O stands after multiplies by 2.

2. The ending **-ensimus** often takes the place of **-esimus**: thus **vicēnsimus = vicēsimus**.

III. DISTRIBUTIVES

1. singulī, -ae, -a
2. binī, -ae, -a
3. ternī (trīni)
4. quaternī
5. quīni
6. sēni
7. septēni
8. octōni
9. novēni
10. dēni
11. ūndēni
12. duodēni
13. ternī dēni
14. quaternī dēni
15. quīni dēni
16. sēni dēni
17. septēni dēni
18. octōni dēni or duodēvicēni
19. novēni dēni or ūndēvicēni
20. vicēni
21. vicēni singuli
28. duodētricēni
29. ūndētricēni
30. tricēni
40. quadrāgēni
50. quīnquāgēni
60. sexāgēni
70. septuāgēni
80. octōgēni
90. nōnāgēni
99. ūndēcentēni
100. centēni
101. centēni singuli
200. ducēni
400. quadrīngēni
500. quīngēni
600. sēscentēni

IV. ADVERBS

- semel
bis
ter
quater
quīnquiēs
sexiēs
septiēs
octiēs
noviēs
deciēs
ūndeciēs
duodeciēs
ter deciēs
quater deciēs
quīndeciēs, quīnquiēs deciēs
sēdeciēs, sexiēs deciēs
septiēs deciēs
octiēs deciēs or duodēviciēs
noviēs deciēs or ūndēviciēs
viciēs
semel et viciēs, or viciēs semel
(viciēs et semel)
- duodētriciēs
ūndētriciēs
triciēs
quadrāgiēs
quīnquāgiēs
sexāgiēs
septuāgiēs
octōgiēs
nōnāgiēs
ūndēcentiēs
centiēs
centiēs semel
ducentiēs
quadrīngentiēs
quīngentiēs
sēscentiēs

1000.	singula milia	miliēs
2000.	bīna milia	bis miliēs
5000.	quīna milia	quīnquiēs miliēs
100,000.	centēna milia	centiēs miliēs
1,000,000.	decīēs centēna milia	decīēs centiēs miliēs.

NOTE.—The ending *-iēns* often takes the place of *-iēs*: thus, *quīnquiēns* = *quīnquiēs*.

73. Of the cardinals, only *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, and the hundreds, from *ducenti* to *mille*, are declined. The ordinals are declined like adjectives of the First and Second Declension.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	<i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūni</i>	<i>ūnae</i>	<i>ūna</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>ūniūs</i>	<i>ūniūs</i>	<i>ūniūs</i>	<i>ūnōrum</i>	<i>ūnārum</i>	<i>ūnōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>ūni</i>	<i>ūni</i>	<i>ūni</i>	<i>ūniis</i>	<i>ūniis</i>	<i>ūniis</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnam</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnōs</i>	<i>ūnās</i>	<i>ūna</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>ūne</i> (rare)	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	—	—	—
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnā</i>	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūniis</i>	<i>ūniis</i>	<i>ūniis</i>
				Masc. and Fem.		Neut.
<i>N.</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i>		<i>tria</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>trium</i>		<i>trium</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>		<i>tribus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>duōs</i> (duo)	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i>		<i>tria</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>		<i>tribus</i>

	Neut. Plur.	
<i>N.</i>	<i>milia</i>	
<i>G.</i>	<i>miliūm</i>	
<i>D.</i>	<i>milibus</i>	
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>milia</i>	
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>milibus</i>	
		<i>ambō</i> , like <i>duo</i>
		<i>ducenti</i> , like the plural of <i>bonus</i> (but Gen. plur. <i>ducentum</i>)

74. 1. *ūnus* has a plural: —

With nouns that have no singular: *ūnae nūptiae*, *one marriage*.

With nouns plural in form, but singular in sense: *ūna vestimenta*, *one suit of clothes*.

Meaning *also, only, alone*: **Ubi, qui ūni lēgātōs miserant, ōrābant**, Caes. B. G. IV. 16, *The Ubi, who alone had sent ambassadors, begged.*

2. **mille** is an indeclinable adjective in the singular; in the plural it is a noun, and declined as above.

3. Compounds of *eight* and *nine* are usually formed by subtraction: **ūndētrīgintā**, 29. From 20 to 100, the smaller number, followed by **et**, precedes; or the larger number precedes, and **et** is omitted: **ūnus et vīginti**, or **vīginti ūnus**, 21. Above 100, the larger number precedes: **centum ūnus**, or **centum et ūnus**, 101. Of three or more numerals, the larger always precedes the smaller: **duo milia quadringenti septuāgintā**, 2470.

PRONOUNS

75. A Pronoun is a word that stands in place of a noun. Often, however, a pronoun is used *with* a noun, and then is really an adjective.

76. **Classes of Pronouns.** — 1. Personal. 2. Possessive. 3. Reflexive. 4. Demonstrative. 5. Intensive. 6. Relative. 7. Interrogative. 8. Indefinite.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

77. There is no Personal Pronoun of the third person, its place being supplied by the Demonstrative **is**.

First Person, ego, I.			Second Person, tū, thou, you.		
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	
<i>N.</i>	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	
<i>G.</i>	mei	nostrum (nostri)	tui	vestrum (vestri)	
<i>D.</i>	mihi	nōbis	tibi	vōbis	
<i>Ac.</i>	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	
<i>V.</i>	—	—	tū	vōs	
<i>Ab.</i>	mē	nōbis	tē	vōbis	

1. **Nostrum** and **vestrum** are Partitive Genitives.
2. The suffix **-met** sometimes strengthens the Personal Pronouns: **egomet**, **nōsmet**.
3. **Tū** is sometimes strengthened by **-te**: **tūte**.
4. With the Ablative of the Personal Pronoun, the preposition **cum** is enclitic: **mēcum**, **vōbiscum**.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS (ADJECTIVES)

78. The Possessive Adjectives of the first and second persons are **meus**, **-a**, **-um**, *my, mine*; **noster**, **-tra**, **-trum**, *our, ours*; **tuus**, **-a**, **-um**, *thy, thine*; **vester**, **-tra**, **-trum**, *your, yours*. They are derived from the Personal Pronouns. The Possessive Adjective of the third person, derived from the Reflexive (**79**), is **suus**, **-a**, **-um**, *his, her, its, their (own)*.

NOTES.—1. When reference is not made to the subject of the clause, use **ēius** for *his, her, its*, **eōrum** or **eārum** for *their*.

But the Possessives are commonly omitted, unless they are needed for emphasis or clearness.

2. **Meus** has Vocative sing. masc. **mī**.

3. The enclitic **-pte** is sometimes found with the Ablative of the Possessives, especially with **suō**, **suā**.

THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

79. The Reflexive refers to the subject. The Reflexive Pronouns of the first and second persons are supplied by the oblique cases of the Personal Pronouns: **mihi**, *to myself*; **vōs**, *yourselves*. The third person has a special reflexive form, alike for all genders, singular and plural.

<i>G.</i>	suī , <i>of himself, herself, itself, themselves, etc.</i>
<i>D.</i>	sibi
<i>Ac.</i>	sē (sēsē)
<i>Ab.</i>	sē (sēsē)

NOTE.—With the Ablative, **cum** is postpositive.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

80. The Demonstratives are used both as pronouns and adjectives. They point out an object as in some place, or as previously mentioned. They are: **hic**, *this* (at, or near the speaker); **iste**, *that* (at, or near the person addressed); **ille**, *that* (remote from the speaker); **is**, *that* (weaker and more general than *ille*); **idem**, *the same*. **Is** is also used to supply the place of the lacking personal pronoun of the third person.

Hic, *this*.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	hic	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
<i>G.</i>	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>D.</i>	huic	huic	huic	his	his	his
<i>Ac.</i>	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Ab.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	his	his	his

Iste, *that*.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
<i>G.</i>	istius	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>D.</i>	istī	istī	istī	istis	istis	istis
<i>Ac.</i>	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
<i>Ab.</i>	istō	istā	istō	istis	istis	istis

Ille, *that*.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
<i>G.</i>	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>D.</i>	illī	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
<i>Ac.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Ab.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

Is, this, that, he.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	is	ea	id	eī (ii, i)	eae	ea
<i>G.</i>	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>D.</i>	eī	eī	eī	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
<i>Ac.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Ab.</i>	eō	eā	eō	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)

Īdem, the same.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	īdem	eadem	idem	{ eīdem iīdem idem }	eaedem	eadem
<i>G.</i>	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>D.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	{ eīsdem iīsdem isdem }	eīsdem iīsdem isdem	eīsdem iīsdem isdem
<i>Ac.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Ab.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{ eīsdem iīsdem isdem }	eīsdem iīsdem isdem	eīsdem iīsdem isdem

NOTE. — The forms of **hīc** that end in **s** may be strengthened by the addition of **-ce**: **hīusce**, **hīsce**, **hōsce**. This same ending is used with forms of **iste** and **ille**: thus **istīc** = **istud**, and **illīc** = **illud**.

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

81. **Ipse, myself, yourself, himself.**

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>G.</i>	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>D.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Ac.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Ab.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

82. The Relative Pronoun is **quī**, *who, which, what, that*.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>G.</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>D.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Ac.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Ab.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

1. An Ablative, **quī**, is found in **quīcum**. **Quis** is occasionally found for **quibus**.

2. **Quīcumque** (**quaecumque**, **quodcumque**), *whoever*, has a generalizing force: **quodcumque hōc rēgnī**, Verg. Aen. I. 78, *All this realm*.

3. **quisquis**, **quicquid**, and (adj.) **quodquod**, *whoever, whatever*, is rare, except in the masculine singular Nominative and Ablative, and the neuter Nominative, Accusative, and Ablative. Both parts of the compound are declined.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

83. Substantive **quis?** *who? what?* has no plural. The adjective form **quī?** *what kind of?* is declined like the Relative, both in the singular and the plural.

	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	quis	quid
<i>G.</i>	cūius	cūius
<i>D.</i>	cui	cui
<i>Ac.</i>	quem	quid
<i>Ab.</i>	quō	quō

1. The Ablative **quī** is sometimes found: **quī fit?** *how does it happen?*

2. **Quis** has also an adjectival use: **quis rēx?** *what king?*

3. **Quis** and **quī** may be intensified by **-nam**: **quisnam?** *who, pray?*

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

84. Only the pronominal part is declined.

SUBSTANTIVE		ADJECTIVE		
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
1. quis	quid	quī	quae (qua)	quod
		<i>Neut. Pl. quae and qua</i>		

Meaning: *any one, anything.* Use: generally after **sī, nisi, nē, num, ec,** and in relative sentences.

nē quid rēs pūblica dētrimentī caperet, Cic. Cat. I. 4. 2, *that the state should suffer no harm.*

2. aliquis	aliquid	aliquī	aliqua	aliquid
		<i>Neut. Pl. aliqua</i>		

The substantive and adjective forms are occasionally interchanged.

Meaning: *some one, something.* Use: in affirmative sentences.

aliquis adest, *some one is present*; **ire in aliquās terrās,** Cic. Cat. I. 20. 18, *to go into some (other) lands.*

3. quispiam	quidpiam	quispiam	quaequam	quodpiam
-------------	----------	----------	----------	----------

Meaning: *any one, anything.* Use: in affirmative sentences.

quaequam cohors, Caes. B. G. V. 35, *any cohort.*

4. quisquam	quicquam	—	—	—
	(quidquam)			

The Ablative singular and all of the plural are supplied by **illus.**

Meaning: *any.* Use: in negative sentences and in sweeping conditions.

sī quisquam, ille sapiēns fuit, Cic. Lael. 2. 9, *he was wise, if any one (was).*

SUBSTANTIVE			ADJECTIVE		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
5. { quivis	quaevs	quidvis	quīvis	quaevs	quodvis
{ quilibet	quaelibet	quidlibet	quīlibet	quaelibet	quodlibet

Meaning: *any one you wish, any one at all.*

ad quamvis vim et contumēliam perferendam, Caes. B. G. III. 13, *for enduring whatever violence and force you wish.*

6. quidam quaedam quiddam quīdam quaedam quoddam

In declension, the **m** becomes **n** before **-dam**: **quendam hominem dēlēgit**, Caes. B. G. III. 18, *he chose a certain man.*

Meaning: *a certain one.*

quīdam ex his, Caes. B. G. II. 17, *some of these.*

7. quisque quidque quisque quaeque quodque

Meaning: *each one.*

quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit, Caes. B. G. II. 21, *into whatever part each one came by chance from the work.*

85.

CORRELATIVES

Demonstrative	Interrogative and Relative	General Relatives	Indefinite
tālis, <i>such</i>	quālis, <i>what kind of; as</i>	quālisicumque, <i>of whatever kind</i>	
tantus, <i>so great; so much</i>	quantus, <i>how great; as great; how much; as much</i>	quantuscumque, <i>however great</i> quantumcumque, <i>however much</i>	aliquantus, <i>some what great;</i> <i>some considerable amount</i>
tot, <i>so many</i>	quot, <i>how many; as many</i>	quotquot (quotcumque), <i>however many</i>	aliquot, <i>some</i>
(totus, -a, -um, <i>such; so great</i>)	quotus, -a, -um, <i>which; what? (in order)</i>		

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

86. 1. The following adjectives and their compounds frequently have a pronominal force: —

ūnus, one; ūllus, any one; uter? which of the two? alter, the other of two; neuter, neither of the two; nūllus, no one.

2. *alter uter* is declined in two ways; either both parts, or only the second part: *alter uter, altera utra, alterum utrum, etc.*; or, *alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum.*

VERBS

VOICE

87. 1. Verbs have two voices, Active and Passive. The Active Voice denotes that the action proceeds from the subject: *deus mundum regit, God rules the world.* The Passive Voice denotes that the subject receives the action of the verb: *mundus a deō regitur, the world is ruled by God.*

2. Verbs are Transitive when their action passes over to an object: *amō deum, I love God.* They are Intransitive when their action is confined to the subject: *puer currit, the boy runs.*

Some verbs have both a transitive and an intransitive use.

CONJUGATION

88. Verbs are inflected in two forms, corresponding to the two voices, called the Active and the Passive.

1. **Mood.**—Verbs have three moods: Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative, and the following verbal forms: Infinitive, Gerund, Supine (verbal nouns); Participle, and Gerundive (verbal adjectives).

2. **Tense.**—The Indicative has six tenses: Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect. The Subjunctive has four: Present, Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect. The Imperative has two: Present and Future.

3. **Person and Number.**—There are three persons: First, Second, and Third; and two numbers: Singular and Plural.

89. **Deponent Verbs.**—Verbs with Passive form and Active meaning are called Deponent: *hortor, I encourage.*

1. Verbs deponent only in the Perfect Participle and tenses from it are called Semi-Deponents, or Neuter Passives:—

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, to dare.

fidēō, fidere, fīsus sum, to trust.

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, to rejoice.

soleō, solēre, solītus sum, to be accustomed.

2. The Perfect Passive Participles of *adolēscō, to grow up*; *cēnō, to dine*; *pōtō, to drink*; *prandēō, to breakfast*, have an active force; *iūrātus*, from *iūrō, to swear*, is active or passive.

VERB-STEMS

90. The Stems of a verb are those forms which are made from the root of the verb by adding a vowel or a combination of a vowel and a consonant.

1. Tenses formed on the Present Stem:—

Active and Passive	}	Present: Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, Infinitive, Participle, Gerund, Gerundive.
		Imperfect: Indicative, Subjunctive. Future: Indicative, Imperative.

2. Tenses formed on the Perfect Stem:—

Active	{	Perfect: Indicative, Subjunctive, Infinitive.
		Pluperfect: Indicative, Subjunctive.
		Future Perfect: Indicative.

3. Tenses formed on the Participial Stem:—

Perfect Passive: Indicative, Subjunctive, Infinitive, Participle.

Pluperfect Passive: Indicative, Subjunctive.

Future Perfect Passive: Indicative, Infinitive.

Future Infinitive: Active and Passive.

Future Active Participle, Supine.

PERSONAL ENDINGS OF THE VERB

91. Indicative and Subjunctive

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
1st Pers., -m., -ō (Pf. Ind. -ī)	-mus	1st Pers., -r	-mur
2d " -s (Pf. Ind. -stī)	-tis (Pf. Ind. -stis)	2d " -ris (-re)	-mini
3d " -t	-nt (Pf. Ind. -runt, -re)	3d " -tur	-ntur

Imperative

Present

SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
2d Pers., (none)	2d Pers., -te	2d Pers., -re	2d Pers., -mini

Future

2d Pers., -tō	2d Pers., -tōte	2d Pers., -tor	2d Pers., (lacking)
3d " -tō	3d " -ntō	3d " -tor	3d " -ntor

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

92. 1. There are four Conjugations, which are distinguished by the vowel of the ending of the Present Infinitive. In the Active voice, the Present Infinitive ends:

In the First Conjugation in **-āre** (A-Conjugation).

In the Second Conjugation in **-ēre** (E-Conjugation).

In the Third Conjugation in *-ĕre* (Consonant Conjugation).
In the Fourth Conjugation in *-ĭre* (I-Conjugation).

NOTE. — Stems ending in *u-* belong to the Third Conjugation; as *minuere*.

2. The Present Indicative Active of the First Conjugation ends in *-ō*; of the Second in *-ēs*; of the Third in *-ō* (or *-īō*); of the Fourth in *-īō*.

3. **Principal Parts.** — The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Perfect Passive Participle (if the verb has one, otherwise the Supine or the Future Participle), are called the Principal Parts of a Verb, as they embrace the various stems on which the verb is built.

93. THE AUXILIARY VERB *sum, esse, fui, to be*

Indicative Mood

PRESENT

SINGULAR

su-m, I am
e-s, thou art
es-t, he is

PLURAL

su-mus, we are
es-tis, you are
su-nt, they are

IMPERFECT

eram, I was
erās, thou wast
erat, he was

erāmus, we were
erātis, you were
erant, they were

FUTURE

erō, I shall be
eris, thou wilt be
erit, he will be

erimus, we shall be
eritis, you will be
erunt, they will be

PERFECT

fui, I have been, I was
fuiſti, thou hast been, thou wast
fuit, he has been, he was

fui-mus, we have been, we were
fuiſtis, you have been, you were
fuērunt (fuĕre), they have been,
they were

PLUPERFECT

SINGULAR

fueram, I had been
fueraŕs, thou hadst been
fueraŕat, he had been

PLURAL

fueraŕamus, we had been
fueraŕatis, you had been
fueraŕant, they had been

FUTURE PERFECT

fuero, I shall have been
fueroŕis, you will have been
fueroŕit, he will have been

fueroŕimus, we shall have been
fueroŕitis, you will have been
fueroŕint, they will have been

Subjunctive Mood¹

PRESENT

ŕim, I may be
ŕis, thou mayst be, mayst thou be
ŕit, he may be, let him be

ŕimus, we may be, let us be
ŕitis, you may be, be ye
ŕint, they may be, let them be

IMPERFECT

essem, I might be
essēs, thou mightst be
esset, he might be

essēmus, we might be
essētis, you might be
essent, they might be

NOTE. — *forem, forēs, foret, forent*, are occasionally used.

PERFECT

fueroŕim, I may have been
fueroŕis, thou mayst have been
fueroŕit, he may have been

fueroŕimus, we may have been
fueroŕitis, you may have been
fueroŕint, they may have been

PLUPERFECT

fuiŕsem, I should have been
fuiŕsēs, thou wouldst have been
fuiŕŕet, he would have been

fuiŕŕēmus, we should have been
fuiŕŕētis, you would have been
fuiŕŕent, they would have been

¹ Note that, while a translation of the various tenses of the Subjunctive and Infinitive is given, there are many cases where the translation is to be determined by the context. This is true of verbs of all the conjugations.

Imperative Mood

SINGULAR

PRES.	2. es, <i>be thou</i>
FUT.	2. estō, <i>thou shalt be</i>
	3. estō, <i>he shall be</i>

PLURAL

2. este, <i>be ye</i>
2. estōte, <i>ye shall be</i>
3. suntō, <i>they shall be</i>

Infinitive

esse, *to be*
 fuisse, *to have been*

futūrus esse or fore, *to be about to be*

Participle

PRES. *lacking*
 FUT. futūrus, *about to be*

In like manner the compounds: **absum**, *to be absent*; **adsum**, *to be present*; **dēsum**, *to be lacking*; **insum**, *to be in*; **intersum**, *to be between*; **obsum**, *to be against*; **praesum**, *to be over*; **prōsum**, *to be of advantage* (infinitive **prōdesse**, the **-d** being dropped before a consonant, as in **prōsunt**); **subsum**, *to be under*, and **supersum**, *to be over*. **Absum** and **praesum** have a Present Participle, **absēns** and **praesēns**.

94. SYNOPSIS OF THE CONJUGATIONS

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	PARTICIPLE	INFINITIVE
Present	A. $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{am} \\ \text{mone} \\ \text{reg} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \delta$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{ame} \\ \text{monea} \\ \text{rega} \\ \text{audia} \end{array} \right\} \text{in}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{monē} \\ \text{rege} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{monē} \\ \text{regē} \\ \text{audiē} \end{array} \right\} \text{ns}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{monē} \\ \text{rege} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \text{re}$
	P. $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{am} \\ \text{mone} \\ \text{reg} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \text{or}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{ame} \\ \text{monea} \\ \text{rega} \\ \text{audia} \end{array} \right\} \text{r}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{monē} \\ \text{rege} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \text{re}$		$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amār} \\ \text{monēr} \\ \text{reg} \\ \text{audir} \end{array} \right\} \text{i}$
Imperfect	A. $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{monē} \\ \text{regē} \\ \text{audiē} \end{array} \right\} \text{bam}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{monē} \\ \text{rege} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \text{rem}$			
	P. $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{monē} \\ \text{regē} \\ \text{audiē} \end{array} \right\} \text{bar}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{monē} \\ \text{rege} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \text{rer}$			

SYNOPSIS OF THE CONJUGATIONS:— *Continued*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	PARTICIPLE	INFINITIVE
A. Future	amā } bō monē } reg } am audi }		amā } monē } tō regi } audi }	amā } moni } tūrus rēc } audi }	amā } moni } tūrus rēc } audi } esse
	amā } bor monē } reg } ar audi }		amā } monē } tor regi } audi }		amā } moni } tum rēc } audi } iri
A. Perfect	amāv } monu } i rēc } audi }	amāv } monu } erim rēc } audi }			amāv } monu } isse rēc } audi }
	amā } moni } tus rēc } sum audi }	amā } moni } tus rēc } sim audi }		amā } moni } tus rēc } audi }	amā } moni } tus rēc } audi } esse
A. Pluperf.	amāv } monu } eram rēc } audi }	amāv } monu } issem rēc } audi }			
	amā } moni } tus rēc } eram audi }	amā } moni } tus rēc } essem audi }			
A. Fut. Perf.	amāv } monu } erō rēc } audi }				
	amā } moni } tus rēc } erō audi }				amā } moni } tum rēc } audi } fore
		amā } mone } rege } audie }	ndus	SUPINE	amā } moni } rēc } audi } tum, tū

95.

ACTIVE VOICE

FIRST CONJUGATION

SECOND CONJUGATION

Amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus

Moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE		INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT				PRESENT			
<i>I love</i>		<i>I may love</i>		<i>I advise</i>		<i>I may advise</i>	
S.	am-ō		amem	S.	monē-ō		moneam
	amā-s		amēs		monē-s		monēās
	ama-t		amet		monē-t		moneat
P.	amā-mus		amēmus	P.	monē-mus		monēāmus
	amā-tis		amētis		monē-tis		monēātis
	ama-nt		ament		monē-nt		moneannt
IMPERFECT				IMPERFECT			
<i>I was loving</i>		<i>I might love</i>		<i>I was advising</i>		<i>I might advise</i>	
S.	amābam		amārem	S.	monēbam		monērem
	amābās		amārēs		monēbās		monērēs
	amābat		amāret		monēbat		monēret
P.	amābāmus		amārēmus	P.	monēbāmus		monērēmus
	amābātis		amārētis		monēbātis		monērētis
	amābant		amārent		monēbant		monērent
FUTURE				FUTURE			
<i>I shall love</i>				<i>I shall advise</i>			
S.	amābō			S.	monēbō		
	amābis				monēbis		
	amābit				monēbit		
P.	amābimus			P.	monēbimus		
	amābitis				monēbitis		
	amābunt				monēbunt		
PERFECT				PERFECT			
<i>I (have) loved</i>		<i>I may have loved</i>		<i>I (have) advised</i>		<i>I may have advised</i>	
S.	amāvī		amāverim	S.	monuī		monuerim
	amāvistī		amāveris		monuistī		monueris
	amāvit		amāverit		monuit		monuerit
P.	amāvimus		amāverimus	P.	monuimus		monuerimus
	amāvistis		amāveritis		monuistis		monueritis
	amāvērunt		amāverint		monuērunt		monuerint
	(-ēre)				(-ēre)		

ACTIVE VOICE

THIRD CONJUGATION

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Regō, regere, rēxi, rēctus

Audiō, audire, audivī, auditus

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE		INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT				PRESENT			
<i>I rule</i>		<i>I may rule</i>		<i>I hear</i>		<i>I may hear</i>	
S.	reg-ō		regam	S.	audi-ō		audiam
	regi-s		regās		audi-s		audiās
	regi-t		regat		audi-t		audiat
P.	regi-mus		regāmus	P.	audi-mus		audiāmus
	regi-tis		regātis		audi-tis		audiātis
	regu-nt		regant		audiu-nt		audiant
IMPERFECT				IMPERFECT			
<i>I was ruling</i>		<i>I might rule</i>		<i>I was hearing</i>		<i>I might hear</i>	
S.	regēbam		regerem	S.	audiēbam		audirem
	regēbās		regerēs		audiēbās		audirēs
	regēbat		regeret		audiēbat		audiret
P.	regēbāmus		regerēmus	P.	audiēbāmus		audirēmus
	regēbātis		regerētis		audiēbātis		audirētis
	regēbant		regerent		audiēbant		audirent
FUTURE				FUTURE			
<i>I shall rule</i>				<i>I shall hear</i>			
S.	regam			S.	audiam		
	regēs				audiēs		
	reget				audiet		
P.	regēmus			P.	audiēmus		
	regētis				audiētis		
	regent				audient		
PERFECT				PERFECT			
<i>I (have) ruled</i>		<i>I may have ruled</i>		<i>I (have) heard</i>		<i>I may have heard</i>	
S.	rēxi		rēxerim	S.	audivī		audiverim
	rēxisti		rēxeris		audivisti		audiveris
	rēxit		rēxerit		audivit		audiverit
P.	rēximus		rēxerimus	P.	audivimus		audiverimus
	rēxistis		rēxeritis		audivistis		audiveritis
	rēxerunt		rēxerint		audiverunt		audiverint
	(-ēre)				(-ēre)		

ACTIVE VOICE

FIRST CONJUGATION

SECOND CONJUGATION

Amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus

Moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE		INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PLUPERFECT				PLUPERFECT			
<i>I had loved</i>		<i>I might have loved</i>		<i>I had advised</i>		<i>I might have advised</i>	
S.	amāveram	amāvissē	amāvissēm	S.	monueram	monuissē	monuissēm
	amāverās	amāvissēs	amāvissēm		monuerās	monuissēs	monuissēm
	amāverat	amāvisset	amāvissēt		monuerat	monuisset	monuisset
P.	amāverāmus	amāvissēmus	amāvissēm	P.	monuerāmus	monuissēmus	monuissēm
	amāverātis	amāvissētis	amāvissēm		monuerātis	monuissētis	monuissēm
	amāverant	amāvissent	amāvissēt		monuerant	monuissent	monuissent
FUTURE PERFECT				FUTURE PERFECT			
<i>I shall have loved</i>				<i>I shall have advised</i>			
S.	amāverō			S.	monuerō		
	amāveris				monueris		
	amāverit				monuerit		
P.	amāverimus			P.	monuerimus		
	amāveritis				monueritis		
	amāverint				monuerint		
IMPERATIVE				IMPERATIVE			
PRESENT				PRESENT			
S. 2.	amā, love thou			S. 2.	monē, advise thou		
P. 2.	amā-te, love ye			P. 2.	monē-te, advise ye		
FUTURE				FUTURE			
S. 2.	amā-tō, thou shalt love			S. 2.	monē-tō, thou shalt advise		
	3. amā-tō, he shall love				3. monē-tō, he shall advise		
P. 2.	amā-tōte, you shall love			P. 2.	monē-tōte, you shall advise		
	3. ama-ntō, they shall love				3. mone-ntō, they shall advise		
SUPINES				SUPINES			
1. Ac.	amātum, to love			1. Ac.	monitum, to advise		
2. Ab.	amātū, to love, be loved			2. Ab.	monitū, to advise, be advised		

ACTIVE VOICE

THIRD CONJUGATION

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus

Audiō, audire, audīvī, audītus

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE		INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PLUPERFECT				PLUPERFECT			
<i>I had ruled</i>		<i>I might have ruled</i>		<i>I had heard</i>		<i>I might have heard</i>	
S.	rēxeram	rēxissem		S.	audiveram	audivissem	
	rēxerās	rēxissēs			audiverās	audivissēs	
	rēxerat	rēxisset			audiverat	audivisset	
P.	rēxerāmus	rēxissēmus		P.	audiverāmus	audivissēmus	
	rēxerātis	rēxissētis			audiverātis	audivissētis	
	rēxerant	rēxissent			audiverant	audivissent	
FUTURE PERFECT				FUTURE PERFECT			
<i>I shall have ruled</i>				<i>I shall have heard</i>			
S.	rēxerō			S.	audiverō		
	rēxeris				audiveris		
	rēxerit				audiverit		
P.	rēxerimus			P.	audiverimus		
	rēxeritis				audiveritis		
	rēxerint				audiverint		
IMPERATIVE				IMPERATIVE			
PRESENT				PRESENT			
S. 2.	rege, rule thou			S. 2.	audi, hear thou		
P. 2.	regi-te, rule ye			P. 2.	audi-te, hear ye		
FUTURE				FUTURE			
S. 2.	regi-tō, thou shalt rule			S. 2.	audi-tō, thou shalt hear		
3.	regi-tō, he shall rule			3.	audi-tō, he shall hear		
P. 2.	regi-tōte, you shall rule			P. 2.	audi-tōte, you shall hear		
3.	regu-ntō, they shall rule			3.	audiu-ntō, they shall hear		
SUPINES				SUPINES			
1. Ac.	rēctum, to rule			1. Ac.	audītum, to hear		
2. Ab.	rēctū, to rule, be ruled			2. Ab.	audītū, to hear, be heard		

ACTIVE VOICE

FIRST CONJUGATION

SECOND CONJUGATION

Amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus

Moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus

INFINITIVE		INFINITIVE	
PRES.	amāre, to love	PRES.	monēre, to advise
PERF.	amāvisse, to have loved	PERF.	monuisse, to have advised
FUT.	amātūrus esse, to be about to love	FUT.	monitūrus esse, to be about to advise
GERUND		GERUND	
N.	(amāre, loving)	N.	(monēre, advising)
G.	amandī, of loving	G.	monendī, of advising
D.	amandō, for loving	D.	monendō, for advising
Ac.	amandūm, loving	Ac.	monendūm, advising
Ab.	amandō, by loving	Ab.	monendō, by advising
PARTICIPLES		PARTICIPLES	
PRES.	amāns, loving	PRES.	monēns, advising
FUT.	amātūrus, about to love	FUT.	monitūrus, about to advise

96.

PASSIVE VOICE

FIRST CONJUGATION

SECOND CONJUGATION

Amor, amārī, amātus sum

Moneor, monērī, monitus sum

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE		INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT				PRESENT			
<i>I am loved</i>		<i>I may be loved</i>		<i>I am advised</i>		<i>I may be advised</i>	
S.	am-or		amer	S.	mone-or		monear
	amā-ris (-re)		amēris (-re)		monē-ris (-re)		moneāris (-re)
	amā-tur		amētur		monē-tur		moneātur
P.	amā-mur		amēmur	P.	monē-mur		moneāmur
	amā-mini		amēmini		monē-mini		moneāmini
	ama-ntur		amentur		mone-ntur		moneantur

ACTIVE VOICE

THIRD CONJUGATION

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Regō, regere, rēxi, rēctus

Audiō, audire, audivī, auditus

INFINITIVE		INFINITIVE	
PRES.	regere, <i>to rule</i>	PRES.	audire, <i>to hear</i>
PERF.	rēxisse, <i>to have ruled</i>	PERF.	audivisse, <i>to have heard</i>
FUT.	rēctūrus esse, <i>to be about to rule</i>	FUT.	auditūrus esse, <i>to be about to hear</i>
GERUND		GERUND	
N.	(regere, <i>ruling</i>)	N.	(audire, <i>hearing</i>)
G.	regendī, <i>of ruling</i>	G.	audiendī, <i>of hearing</i>
D.	regendō, <i>for ruling</i>	D.	audiendō, <i>for hearing</i>
Ac.	regendum, <i>ruling</i>	Ac.	audiendum, <i>hearing</i>
Ab.	regendō, <i>by ruling</i>	Ab.	audiendō, <i>by hearing</i>
PARTICIPLES		PARTICIPLES	
PRES.	regēns, <i>ruling</i>	PRES.	audiēns, <i>hearing</i>
FUT.	rēctūrus, <i>about to rule</i>	FUT.	auditūrus, <i>about to hear</i>

PASSIVE VOICE

THIRD CONJUGATION

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Regor, regi, rēctus sum

Audior, audiri, auditus sum

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE		INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT		PRESENT		PRESENT		PRESENT	
<i>I am ruled</i>		<i>I may be ruled</i>		<i>I am heard</i>		<i>I may be heard</i>	
S.	reg-or		regar	S.	audi-or		audiar
	rege-ris (-re)		regāris (-re)		audi-ris (-re)		audiāris (-re)
	regi-tur		regātur		audi-tur		audiātur
P.	regi-mur		regāmur	P.	audi-mur		audiāmur
	regi-mini		regāmini		audi-mini		audiāmini
	regu-ntur		regantur		audi-untur		audiantur

PASSIVE VOICE

FIRST CONJUGATION

SECOND CONJUGATION

Amor, amāri, amātus sum

Moneor, monēri, monitus sum

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE		INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
IMPERFECT				IMPERFECT			
<i>I was loved</i>		<i>I might be loved</i>		<i>I was advised</i>		<i>I might be advised</i>	
S. amābar		amārer		S. monēbar		monērer	
amābāris (-re)		amārēris (-re)		monēbāris (-re)		monērēris (-re)	
amābātur		amārētur		monēbātur		monērētur	
P. amābāmur		amārēmur		P. monēbāmur		monērēmur	
amābāmini		amārēmini		monēbāmini		monērēmini	
amābantur		amārentur		monēbantur		monērentur	
FUTURE				FUTURE			
<i>I shall be loved</i>				<i>I shall be advised</i>			
S. amābor				S. monēbor			
amāberis (-re)				monēberis (-re)			
amābitur				monēbitur			
P. amābimur				P. monēbimur			
amābimini				monēbimini			
amābuntur				monēbuntur			
PERFECT				PERFECT			
<i>I have been loved,</i> <i>I was loved</i>		<i>I may have been</i> <i>loved</i>		<i>I have been advised,</i> <i>I was advised</i>		<i>I may have been</i> <i>advised</i>	
S. amātus sum		amātus sim		S. monitus sum		monitus sim	
(-a, -um) es		(-a, -um) sīs		(-a, -um) es		(-a, -um) sīs	
est		sit		est		sit	
P. amāti sumus		amāti sīmus		P. moniti sumus		moniti sīmus	
(-ae, -a) estis		(-ae, -a) sītis		(-ae, -a) estis		(-ae, -a) sītis	
sunt		sint		sunt		sint	
PLUPERFECT				PLUPERFECT			
<i>I had been loved</i>		<i>I might (should)</i> <i>have been loved</i>		<i>I had been advised</i>		<i>I might (should)</i> <i>have been advised</i>	
S. amātus eram		amātus essem		S. monitus eram		monitus essem	
(-a, -um) erās		(-a, -um) essēs		(-a, -um) erās		(-a, -um) essēs	
erat		esset		erat		esset	
P. amāti erāmus		amāti essēmus		P. moniti erāmus		moniti essēmus	
(-ae, -a) erātis		(-ae, -a) essētis		(-ae, -a) erātis		(-ae, -a) essētis	
erant		essent		erant		essent	

PASSIVE VOICE

THIRD CONJUGATION

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Regor, regī, rēctus sum

Audior, audīri, audītus sum

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE		INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
IMPERFECT				IMPERFECT			
<i>I was ruled</i>		<i>I might be ruled</i>		<i>I was heard</i>		<i>I might be heard</i>	
S. regēbar		regerer		S. audiēbar		audīrer	
regēbāris (-re)		regerēris (-re)		audiēbāris (-re)		audīrēris (-re)	
regēbātur		regerētur		audiēbātur		audīrētur	
P. regēbāmur		regerēmur		P. audiēbāmur		audīrēmur	
regēbāmini		regerēmini		audiēbāmini		audīrēmini	
regēbantur		regerentur		audiēbantur		audīrentur	
FUTURE				FUTURE			
<i>I shall be ruled</i>				<i>I shall be heard</i>			
S. regar				S. audiar			
regēris (-re)				audiēris (-re)			
regētur				audiētur			
P. regēmur				P. audiēmur			
regēmini				audiēmini			
regentur				audientur			
PERFECT				PERFECT			
<i>I have been ruled,</i>		<i>I may have been ruled</i>		<i>I have been heard,</i>		<i>I may have been heard</i>	
<i>I was ruled</i>		<i>ruled</i>		<i>I was heard</i>		<i>heard</i>	
S. rēctus sum		rēctus sim		S. audītus sum		audītus sim	
(-a, -um) es		(-a, -um) sis		(-a, -um) es		(-a, -um) sis	
est		sit		est		sit	
P. rēcti sumus		rēcti simus		P. audītī sumus		audītī simus	
(-ae, -a) estis		(-ae, -a) sitis		(-ae, -a) estis		(-ae, -a) sitis	
sunt		sint		sunt		sint	
PLUPERFECT				PLUPERFECT			
<i>I had been ruled</i>		<i>I might (should) have been ruled</i>		<i>I had been heard</i>		<i>I might (should) have been heard</i>	
S. rēctus eram		rēctus essem		S. audītuseram		audītus essem	
(-a, -um) erās		(-a, -um) essēs		(-a, -um) erās		(-a, -um) essēs	
erat		esset		erat		esset	
P. rēcti erāmus		rēcti essēmus		P. audītī erāmus		audītī essēmus	
(-ae, -a) erātis		(-ae, -a) essētis		(-ae, -a) erātis		(-ae, -a) essētis	
erant		essent		erant		essent	

DEPONENT VERBS

97. Deponent Verbs have five forms of the Active Voice: Fut. Infin., Pres. Partic., Fut. Partic., Gerund, and Supine. The Gerundive is always Passive in sense.

Indicative Mood

	FIRST CONJUGATION	SECOND CONJUGATION	THIRD CONJUGATION	FOURTH CONJUGATION
	<i>I admire</i>	<i>I fear</i>	<i>I perform</i>	<i>I divide</i>
<i>Present</i>	hortor	vereor	fungor	partior
<i>Imperf.</i>	hortābar	verēbar	fungēbar	partiēbar
<i>Future</i>	hortābor	verēbor	fungar	partiar
<i>Perfect</i>	hortātus sum	veritus sum	fūctus sum	partītus sum
<i>Pluperf.</i>	hortātus eram	veritus eram	fūctus eram	partītus eram
<i>Fut. Pf.</i>	hortātus erō	veritus erō	fūctus erō	partītus erō

Subjunctive Mood

<i>Present</i>	horter	verear	fungar	partiar
<i>Imperf.</i>	hortārer	verērer	fungerer	partīrer
<i>Perfect</i>	hortātus sim	veritus sim	fūctus sim	partītus sim
<i>Pluperf.</i>	hortātus essem	veritus essem	fūctus essem	partītus essem

Imperative Mood

<i>Present</i>	hortāre	verēre	fungere	partīre
<i>Future</i>	hortātor	verētor	fungitor	partītor

Infinitives

<i>Present</i>	hortāri	verēri	fungi	partiri
<i>Perfect</i>	hortātus esse	veritus esse	fūctus esse	partītus esse
<i>Future</i>	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	fūctūrus esse	partītūrus esse
<i>Fut. Pf.</i>	hortātum fore	veritum fore	fūctum fore	partītum fore

Participles

<i>Present</i>	hortāns	verēns	fungēns	partiēns
<i>Future</i>	hortātūrus	veritūrus	fūctūrus	partītūrus
<i>Perfect</i>	hortātus	veritus	fūctus	partītus

Gerund

hortandī	verendi	fungendi	partiendi
----------	---------	----------	-----------

Gerundive

hortandus	verendus	fungendus	partiendus
-----------	----------	-----------	------------

Supine

hortātum, -tū	veritum, -tū	fūctum, -tū	partitum, -tū
---------------	--------------	-------------	---------------

THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

98. 1. The First, or Active Periphrastic Conjugation, is formed by uniting the Future Active Participle with some tense of **esse**.

Pres. **amātūrus sum**, *I am about to love*; Subj. **amātūrus sim**; Impf. **amātūrus eram**, *I was about to love*; Subj. **amātūrus essem**; Fut. **amātūrus erō**; Pf. **amātūrus fui**.

NOTE. — The Future Active Participle with the Subjunctive of **esse** is often used for the missing Future of the Subjunctive.

2. The Second, or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, is formed by uniting the Gerundive with some tense of **esse**.

Pres. **amandus sum**, *I must be, ought to be, should be, loved*; Subj. **amandus sim**; Impf. **amandus eram**; Subj. **amandus essem**; Fut. **amandus erō**; Pf. **amandus fui**.

VERBS IN **-iō** OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

99. The following verbs of the Third Conjugation strengthen the stem in the Present by inserting an **-i-**: **capiō**, *to take*; **cupiō**, *to desire*; **faciō**, *to make*; **fugiō**, *to flee*; **fodiō**, *to dig*; **gradior**, *to walk*; **iaciō**, *to throw*; **laciō**, *to lure* (in its compounds); **morior**, *to die*; **patior**, *to suffer*; **pariō**, *to bear*; **quatiō**, *to shake*; **rapiō**, *to seize*; **sapiō**, *to taste of*; and **speciō**, *to see* (in its compounds).

This *i* is dropped before *ē* and *i*, except before *-et*, *-ent*, and *-end*. Thus, *capiō*, *capis*, *capit*, *capimus*, *capitis*, *capunt*; *capiar*; *capīsbam*; *capīēns*; *capīendus*; but *caperem*; *caperer*.

PECULIAR FORMS

100. 1. Perfects in *-āvī* and *-āvī* may drop *v* between two vowels before *s* or *r* and contract; those in *-ivī* drop *v* before *r* or *s*, but contract only before *s*; thus *amāvistī* becomes *amāstī*; *dēlēvissem*, *dēlēsssem*; *amāveram*, *amāram*; *dēlēveram*, *dēlēram*; *quaesivisse*, *quaesisse*; but *audīveram*, *audieram*.

2. In *petere*, *dēsinere*, and compounds of *ire*, in the Perfects, *v* is dropped in the first and third persons singular, and in the first person plural, but no contraction occurs: *rediī*, *rediit*, *rediimus*.

3. The third plural Perfect Indicative, uncontracted form, often ends in *-ēre* for *-ērunt*: as *amāvēre* for *amāvērunt*.

4. The second singular Passive often has *-re* for *-ris*, but rarely in the Present Indicative, except in Deponents: *abūtēre* for *abūtēris*.

5. The Future Active Participle is usually formed on the Participial Stem. The following Future Participles are exceptions:—

Verb	Participial Stem	Future Participle
<i>fruo</i> , to enjoy	<i>frūct-</i>	<i>fruitūrus</i>
<i>iuvō</i> , to aid	<i>iūt-</i>	<i>iuvātūrus</i> (<i>but adiūtūrus</i>)
<i>lavō</i> , to bathe	<i>laut- or lōt-</i>	<i>lavātūrus</i>
<i>morio</i> , to die	<i>mortu-</i>	<i>moritūrus</i>
<i>orior</i> , to rise	<i>ort-</i>	<i>oritūrus</i>
<i>pariō</i> , to bear	<i>part-</i>	<i>paritūrus</i>
<i>ruō</i> , to rush	<i>rut-</i>	<i>ruitūrus</i>
<i>secō</i> , to cut	<i>sect-</i>	<i>secātūrus</i>
<i>sonō</i> , to sound	<i>sonit-</i>	<i>sonātūrus</i>

6. **dīcere, dūcere, facere, and ferre** have the Imperatives **dīc, dūc, fac, fer**. In prepositional compounds of **faciō**, and with **re-**, the **a** becomes **i**: as **cōnficere, reficere**. Here the Imperative ends in **-fice**: as **cōnfice**. Compounds of **dīcere** and **dūcere** accent the ultima: as **ēdic, ēdūc**.

ANCIENT AND POETICAL FORMS (OCCASIONALLY FOUND)

101. 1. The Present Subjunctive Active ends in **-im** instead of **-am, -em**: thus **perduim** for **perdam**; **duim** for **dem**.

2. In verbs of the Fourth Conjugation the **e** of the Imperfect Indicative is dropped: as **lēnībam = lēniōbam**.

3. The Perfect Subjunctive and Future Perfect Indicative Active in the First Conjugation have **-assim** and **-assō** for **-āverim** and **-āverō** (**levassō = levāverō, imperassim = imperāverim**); in the Second, **-essim** and **-essō** for **-uerim** and **-uerō** (**habessim = habuerim, habessō = habuerō**); in the Third, **-sim** and **-sō** for **-erim** and **-erō** (**faxim = fācerim, faxō = fācerō**).

4. In the Perfect of the Third Conjugation, **-is** is dropped after **s** and **x**: as **dīxtī = dīxistī**.

5. The Present Infinitive Passive adds **-er**: **dīcier = dīcī**.

6. The Gerundives of the Third and Fourth Conjugations have **-undus** for **-endus**: **faciundus = faciendus, potiundus = potiendus**.

FORMATION OF STEMS

Present Stem

102. 1. In the Vowel Conjugations the Present Stem is usually the same as the Verb-Stem: thus **amā-, dēlī-, audī-**.

2. But many verbs of the Vowel Conjugations have a consonant Verb-Stem:—

	Verb Stem	Present Stem
iuvāre	iuv-	iuvā(-)
vidēre	vid-	vidē(-)
venīre	ven-	venī(-)

103. In the Consonant (Third) Conjugation the Present Stem is rarely the same as the Verb-Stem; usually, to form the Present Stem, the Verb-Stem is strengthened:

1. By adding *i*: as *cap-i-ō* (Verb-Stem *cap-*).
2. By inserting *m* or *n*: as *cum-b-ō*, *vin-c-ō* (Verb-Stems *cub-*, *vic-*).
3. By adding *n*, *t*, *sc*: as *cer-n-ō*, *flec-t-ō*, *nō-sc-ō* (Verb-Stems *cer-*, *flec-*, *nō-*).
4. By Reduplication, repeating the initial consonant of the stem with *i*: *gī-gn-ō* (*gi-gen-ō*, Verb-Stem *gen-*); *si-st-ō* (Verb-Stem *sta-*).

Perfect Stem

104. The Perfect Stem is formed from the Verb-Stem:

1. By lengthening a short stem-vowel: *emere*, Pf. *ēmī*; *legere*, Pf. *lēgī*; *ā* becomes *ē*: *agere*, *ēgī*.
2. By adding *s* (usually only with a long stem-syllable): *dīcere*, Pf. *dīxi*. But stems in *-nd* and reduplicated Perfects (*cecīdī*) take *-i*.
3. By adding *v* in vowel-stems: *amāre*, Pf. *amāvī*; *dālāre*, Pf. *dālāvī*.

NOTE.—Those stems in *a* and *e* which lose their vowels, and a few others, change *v* to *u*: *domāre*, Pf. *domuī*; *docēre*, Pf. *docuī*.

4. By Reduplication; that is, placing the initial consonant and the following vowel (or *e*) before the Verb-Stem: *poscere*, Pf. *poposci*; *cadere*, Pf. *cecidī*.

NOTES. — 1. **Spondēre, stāre, sistere** reduplicate with both initial consonants, but lose the **s** of the Verb-Stem: **spo-pondī, ste-tī, sti-tī**.

2. As a rule, compounds do not reduplicate, except the compounds of **dare, stāre, sistere, discere, poscere**: thus **circumdedī, ad-stiti, addidicī, dēposcī**.

The compounds of **currō** vary: thus **dēcucurrī** or **dēcurrī**

Participial Stem

105. This stem is found in the Perfect Passive Participle, the Future Active Participle, and the Supine.

The Participial Stem is formed from the Verb-Stem: —

1. By adding **-tu-**: **amā-tu-s, dēlē-tū-rus, audī-tu-m**.

NOTE. — Stems in **a** and **e** that lose their vowel insert **i**: **domāre, domitus**; **monēre, monitus**. But **docēre, doctus**; **secāre, sectus**.

2. By adding **-su-**: **pellere, pul-su-s**.

EUPHONIC CHANGES IN FORMING THE PARTICIPIAL STEM

106. 1. Before **s** or **t**, **b** becomes **p**: **scribere, scriptus**.

2. Before **t**, the letters **g, h, q, v** become **c**; with **s** they form **x**: **legō, lēctus**; **trahō, tractus**; **relinquō, relictus**; **vivō, victus**; **figō, fixus**.

3. Before **s**, the letters **d** and **t** either disappear or are assimilated: **claudere, clausus**; **mittere, missus**.

4. Between **m** followed by **s** or **t**, a **p**-sound arises in the pronunciation, and this generally appears in writing: **dēmō, dēmpsi, dēmpus**.

5. When a stem ends in two consonants, the second is dropped before **s** or **t**: **mulceō, mulsus**; **torqueō, tortus**.

6. **v** preceded by a consonant becomes **ū** before **-tus**; if preceded by **a, o, u**, it becomes **au, ō, ū**: **solūtus** from **solvō**, **fautus** from **faveō**, **mōtus** from **moveō**, **iūtus** from **iuvō**.

LIST OF MOST IMPORTANT VERBS, WITH STEM-FORMS

First Conjugation (Infinitive *-āre*)

I. REDUPLICATED PERFECT

107. 1.
- dō, dare, dedī, datus, to give.*

The *a* of the stem is short except in *dās, dā*.

Compounds with monosyllabic prepositions and prefixes are of the Third Conjugation: *abdō, abdere, circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus, to put around.*

- 2.
- stō, stāre, stetī, status, to stand; Fut. Part. stātūrus.*

The compounds usually have no Past Participle.

Compounds with dissyllabic prepositions have *-stetī* in the Perfect; those with monosyllabic prepositions or *re-* have *-stitī*: thus *circumstetī, cōnstitī*.

Some have a Future Active Participle: *īnstātūrus, praestātūrus.*

distō and *extō* have neither Perfect nor Supine.

II. PERFECT IN *-ī* WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL

108. 1.
- iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, to help; Fut. Part. iuvātūrus.*

- 2.
- lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautus (lōtus), to wash; Sup. lavātum (lautum).*

III. PERFECT IN *-vī* AND *-vī*

109. 1.
- amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus, to love.*

This is the type of all regular verbs of the First Conjugation.

- 2.
- crepō, crepāre, crepuī, crepitus, to rattle.*

- 3.
- cubō, cubāre, cubuī, cubitum, to lie down.*

Compounds that insert *m* in the present stem are of the Third Conjugation: as *incumbō, 120. 5.*

4. domō, domāre, domuī, domitus, *to conquer*.
5. (From necō) ēnecō, ēnecāre, (ēnecuī), ēnectus, *to destroy*.
6. fricō, fricāre, fricuī, frictus and fricātus, *to rub*.
7. micō, micāre, micuī, —, *to glitter*; also ēmicuī; but dīmicāvī.
8. pōtō, pōtāre, pōtāvī, pōtus, *to drink*. The Participle pōtus is used both actively and passively.
9. plicō (found only in compounds) has -āvī and -uī in the Perfect and -ātus and -itus in the Participle, as in implicō.
In Cicero, explicō and applicō always have -āvī, -ātus.
10. secō, secāre, secuī, sectus, *to cut*; Fut. Part. secātūrus.
11. sonō, sonāre, sonuī, sonitus, *to sound*; Fut. Part. sonātūrus.
12. tonō, tonāre, tonuī, —, *to thunder*.
13. vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus, *to forbid*.

Second Conjugation (Infinitive -ēre)

I. REDUPLICATED PERFECT

110. (Infinitives are omitted in the list; all are in -ēre.)
 1. mordeō, momordī, morsus, *to bite*.
 2. pendeō, pependī, —, *to hang* (intrans.).
impendeō and dēpendeō lack the Perfect and Supine.
 3. spondeō, spopondī, spōnsus, *to promise*.
respondeō has Perfect respondī.
 4. tondeō, totondī, tōnsus, *to shear*.

II. PERFECT IN -ī WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL

111. 1. caveō, cāvī, cautus, *to beware*.
2. faveō, fāvī, fautūrus, *to favor*.

3. foveō, fōvī, fōtus, *to cherish.*
4. moveō, mōvī, mōtus, *to move.*
5. paveō, pāvī, —, *to fear.*
6. sedeō, sēdī, sessus, *to sit.*

Compounds with monosyllabic prepositions change *e* into *i* in present stem: *adsideō*, Pf. *adsēdī*. *Dissideō*, *praesideō*, and *resideō* have no Past Participle. For *cōnsidō*, see 121. 31.

7. videō, vīdī, vīsus, *to see.*
8. voveō, vōvī, vōtus, *to vow.*

STEM-VOWEL NOT LENGTHENED

9. ferveō, fervī (ferbuī), —, *to boil.*
10. prandeō, prandī, prānsus, *to lunch.*

III. PERFECT IN *-sī (-xī)*

112. 1. ardeō, ārsī, ārsus, *to burn* (intrans.).
2. algeō, alsī, —, *to be cold.*
3. augeō, auxī, auctus, *to increase* (generally trans.).
4. fulgeō, fulsī, —, *to shine.*
5. haereō, haesī, haesūrus, *to stick.*
6. iubeō, iussī, iūssus, *to command.*
7. indulgeō, indulsī, —, *to indulge.*
8. lūceō, lūxī, —, *to be light.*
9. lūgeō, lūxī, —, *to mourn.*
10. maneō, mānsī, mānsūrus, *to stay.*
11. mulceō, mulsī, mulsus, *to fondle*; also *permulceō*.
12. rīdeō, rīsī, rīsus, *to laugh.*
13. suādeō, suāsī, suāsus, *to advise*; also *dissuādeō*, *persuādeō*.
14. tergeō, tersī, tersus, *to wipe*; also *abstergeō*.
15. torqueō, torsī, tortus, *to twist.*
16. urgeō, ursī, —, *to urge.*

IV. PERFECT IN *-vī*

113. 1. aboleō, abolēvī, abolitus, *to destroy*.
 2. cieō, cīvī, citus, *to arouse*.
 Compounds are of the Fourth Conjugation.
 3. dēleō, dēlēvī, dēlētus, *to destroy*.
 4. fleō, flēvī, flētus, *to weep*.
 5. pleō, plēvī, plētus, *to fill*; found only in compounds.

V. PERFECT IN *-uī*

114. 1. arceō, arcuī, —, *to keep off* (trans.).
 coerceō, coercuī, coercitus, *to encompass*.
 exerceō, exercuī, exercitus, *to drill*.
 2. caleō, caluī, calitūrus, *to be warm*.
 3. careō, caruī, caritūrus, *to lack*.
 4. cēnseō, cēnsuī, cēnsus, *to be of opinion*.
 5. doceō, docuī, doctus, *to teach*.
 6. doleō, doluī, dolitūrus, *to be in pain*.
 7. habeō, habuī, habitus, *to have*.
 Compounds as adhibeō, adhibuī, adhibitus, *to bring to*.
 8. iaceō, iacuī, iacitūrus, *to lie prostrate*.
 9. mereō, meruī, meritus, *to deserve*.
 10. misceō, miscuī, mīxtus, *to mix*.
 11. moneō, monuī, monitus, *to advise*; also admoneō.
 12. noceō, nocuī, nocitūrus, *to hurt*.
 13. pāreō, pāruī, pāritūrus, *to appear, obey*.
 14. placeō, plācuī or placitus sum, placitus, *to please*.
 displiceō, displicuī, displicitus, *to displease*.
 15. taceō, tacuī, tacitus, *to be silent*.
 16. teneō, tenuī, —, *to hold*.
 Compounds as contineō, continuī, contentus, *to contain*.

17. terreō, terruī, territus, *to frighten*.
 18. torreō, torruī, tostus, *to parch*.
 19. valeō, valuī, valitūrus, *to be strong*.

WITHOUT PARTICIPIAL STEM

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 20. egeō and indigeō, <i>to want</i> . | 27. palleō, <i>to be pale</i> . |
| 21. ēmineō, <i>to stand forth</i> . | 28. pateō, <i>to lie open</i> . |
| 22. flōreō, <i>to bloom</i> . | 29. sileō, <i>to be silent</i> . |
| 23. horreō, <i>to bristle</i> . | 30. studeō, <i>to desire</i> . |
| 24. lateō, <i>to lie hid</i> . | 31. stupeō, <i>to be amazed</i> . |
| 25. niteō, <i>to gleam</i> . | 32. timeō, <i>to fear</i> . |
| 26. oleō, <i>to smell</i> . | 33. vigeō, <i>to flourish</i> . |

VI. IN THE PRESENT SYSTEM ONLY

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 115. 1. aveō, <i>to desire</i> . | 4. maereō, <i>to mourn</i> . |
| 2. frīgeō, <i>to be cold</i> . | 5. polleō, <i>to be strong</i> . |
| 3. immineō, <i>to overhang</i> . | |

Third Conjugation (Infinitive *-ere*)

I. REDUPLICATED PERFECT

116. 1. cadō, cecidī, cāsūrus, *to fall*.
 Compounds as concidō, concidī, —, *to fall*.
 The Participial Stem is found in
 occidō, occidī, occāsus, *to fall*.
 recidō, reccidī, recāsus, *to fall back*.
2. caedō, cecidī, caesus, *to cut*.
 Compounds as occidō, occidī, occīsus, *to kill*.
3. canō, cecinī (Participle supplied from cantō), *to sing*.
 Compounds have the Perfect in -uī.
4. crēdō, crēdidī, crēditus, *to trust*.
5. currō, cucurrī, cursus, *to run*.
 Compounds have -currī or -cucurrī in the Perfect.

6. discō, didicī, —, *to learn.*
7. Compounds of dō with monosyllabic prepositions and prefixes, e.g. reddō, *to give back*, as ēdō, ēdidī, ēditus, *to give out.*
perdō, perdidī, perditus, *to destroy.*
8. fallō, fefellī (falsus, only as adj.), *to deceive.*
refellō, refellī, —, *to refute.*
9. parcō, pepercī (parsī), parsus, *to spare.*
10. pellō, pepulī, pulsus, *to drive.*
11. pendō, pependī, pēnsus, *to weigh.*
12. poscō, poposcī, —, *to demand.*
Compounds as dēposcō, dēpoposcī, *to demand.*
13. pungō, pupugī, pūctus, *to prick.*
The compounds have punxī in the Perfect.
14. sistō, stitī, status, *to cause to stand.*
Compounds with monosyllabic prepositions as cōnsistō, cōnstitī, cōnstitus, *to stop* (intrans.).
circumsistō, circumstetī (stitī), —, *to stand around.*
15. tangō, tetigī, tāctus, *to touch.*
Compounds as attingō, attigī, attāctus, *to touch.*
16. tendō, tetendī, tentus or tēnsus, *to stretch.*
17. tundō, tutudī, tūnsus or tūsus, *to beat.*
18. vëndō, vëndidī, vënditus, *to sell.*

WITH LOST REDUPLICATION

19. (From cellō) percellō, perculī, percultus, *to strike down.*
20. findō, fidī, fissus, *to split.*
21. scindō, scidī, scissus, *to tear apart.*
22. tollō, sustulī, sublātus, *to remove.*
(For the Perf. of sufferō, *to undergo*, sustinuī is sometimes used.)

II. PERFECT IN *-ī* WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL

117. 1. agō, ēgī, āctus, *to drive*.
 abigō, abēgī, abāctus, *to drive away*.
 cōgō, coēgī, coāctus, *to collect*.
 dēgō, dēgī, —, *to pass time*.
 peragō, perēgī, perāctus, *to finish*.
 subigō, subēgī, subāctus, *to subdue*.
2. edō, ēdī, ēsus, *to eat*.
 comedō, comēdī, comēsus or comēstus, *to devour*.
3. emō, emī, ēmptus, *to buy*.
 coēmō, coēmī, coēmptus, *to buy up*.
 cōmō, cōmpsi, cōmptus, *to deck*.
 dēmō, dēmpsi, dēmptus, *to take off*.
 prōmō, prōmpsi, prōmptus, *to bring out*.
 sūmō, sūmpsi, sūmptus, *to take up*.
 Other compounds as
 adimō, adēmī, adēmptus, *to take away*.
4. frangō, frēgī, frāctus, *to break*.
 Compounds as cōnfringō, cōnfrēgī, cōnfrāctus, *to break*.
5. fundō, fūdī, fūsus, *to pour*.
6. legō, lēgī, lēctus, *to gather, to read*.
 Compounds as dēligō, dēlēgī, dēlēctus, *to select*.
 (But diligō, dilēxī, dilēctus, *to love*.)
 intellegō, intellēxī, intellēctus, *to understand*.
 neglegō, neglēxī, neglēctus, *to slight*.
 The *e* remains in intellegō, perlegō, and relegō.
7. linqūō, līquī, —, *to leave*.
 Compounds as relinqūō, relīquī, relīctus, *to leave*.
8. pangō, pēgī (pepigī), pāctus, *to fasten*.
 Compounds as compingō, compēgī, compāctus, *to unite*.

9. rumpō, rūpī, ruptus, *to break.*
10. vincō, vicī, vīctus, *to conquer.*

III. PERFECT IN *-sī (-xī)*

118. 1. carpō, carpsī, carptus, *to pluck.*
Compounds as dēcerpō, dēcerpsī, dēcerptus, *to pluck off.*
2. cēdō, cessī, cessus, *to yield.*
3. cingō, cinxī, cinctus, *to gird.*
4. claudō, clausī, clausus, *to shut.*
Compounds as conclūdō, conclūsī, conclūsus, *to confine.*
5. coquō, cōxī, coctus, *to cook.*
6. dīcō, dīxī, dictus, *to say.*
7. For dīligō, intellegō, neglegō, see 117. 6.
8. dīvidō, dīvisī, dīvisus, *to divide.*
9. dūcō, dūxī, ductus, *to lead.*
10. emō: see 117. 3.
11. figō, fixī, fixus, *to fix.*
12. fingō, finxī, fīctus, *to form.*
13. flectō, flēxī, flexus, *to bend.*
14. Compounds of flīgō as adflīgō, adflīxī, adflīctus, *to shatter.*
15. fluō, flūxī, fluxus, *to flow.*
16. gerō, gessī, gestus, *to carry.*
17. iungō, iūnxī, iūctus, *to join.*
18. laedō, laesī, laesus, *to hurt.*
Compounds as conlīdō, conlīsī, conlīsus, *to clash.*
19. lūdō, lūsī, lūsus, *to play.*
20. mergō, mersī, mersus, *to sink.*
21. mittō, mīsī, missus, *to send.*
22. nectō, nexuī (nexī), nexus, *to bind.*

23. nūbō, nūpsī, nūpta (fem. only), *to marry*.
24. pingō, pinxī, pīctus, *to paint*.
25. plangō, planxī, planctus, *to beat*.
26. plaudō, plausī, plausus, *to clap*.
Compounds as explōdō, explōsī, explōsus, *to hiss off*.
27. premō, pressī, pressus, *to press*.
Compounds as comprimō, compressī, compressus, *to restrain*.
28. (From pungō) compungō, compunxī, compunctus, *to sting*.
29. rādō, rāsī, rāsus, *to scrape*.
30. regō, rēxī, rēctus, *to rule* (trans.).
Compounds as corrigō, corrēxī, corrēctus, *to correct*.
pergō, perrēxī, perrēctus, *to continue*.
surgō, surrēxī, surrēctus, *to rise*.
31. rēpō, rēpsī, rēptus, *to creep*.
32. rōdō, rōsī, rōsus, *to gnaw*.
33. scalpō, scalpsī, scalptus, *to carve*.
34. scrībō, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *to write*.
35. sculpō, sculpsī, sculptus, *to carve*.
36. serpō, serpsī, serptus, *to crawl*.
37. spargō, sparsī, sparsus, *to scatter*.
Compounds as aspergō, aspersī, aspersus, *to sprinkle*.
38. (From stinguō) distinguō, distinxī, distinctus, *to distinguish*.
Also exstinguō and restinguō.
39. stringō, strinxī, strictus, *to bind*.
40. struō, strūxī, strūctus, *to heap*.
41. sūgō, sūxī, —, *to suck*.
42. tegō, tēxī, tēctus, *to cover*.
43. (From temnō) contemnō, contempsī, contemptus, *to despise*.
44. tingō, tinxī, tīctus, *to dip*.

45. trahō, trāxī, tractus, *to draw*.
46. trūdō, trūsī, trūsus, *to thrust*.
47. ung(u)ō, unxī, ūctus, *to anoint*.
48. ūrō, ussī, ūstus, *to burn (trans.)*.
49. vādō in compounds: ēvādō, ēvāsī, ēvāsus, *to go out*.
50. vehō, vēxī, vēctus, *to carry*.
51. vīvō, vīxī, vīctus, *to live*.

IV. PERFECT IN *-vī* PRECEDED BY A LONG VOWEL

119. 1. cernō, crēvī, (certus), *to distinguish*.
In the compounds, the Part. has the form crētus, as dēcernō, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus.
2. linō, lēvī, litus, *to besmear*.
Compounds as oblinō, oblēvī, oblitus, *to besmear*.
3. petō, petīvī or petīī, petītus, *to seek*.
Compounds as appetō, appetīvī, appetītus, *to long for*.
4. quaerō, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *to seek*.
Compounds as conquīrō, conquīsīvī, conquīsītus, *to seek out*.
5. serō, sēvī, satus, *to sow*.
Compounds as cōnsērō, cōnsēvī, cōnsītus, *to plant*.
6. sinō, sīvī, situs, *to permit*.
dēsīnō, desīī (rare; dēstitī is regularly used instead), dēsītus, *to cease*.
7. spernō, sprēvī, sprētus, *to despise*.
8. sternō, strāvī, strātus, *to spread*.
Compounds as prōsternō, prōstrāvī, prōstrātus, *to overthrow*.
9. terō, trīvī, trītus, *to rub*.
10. arcessō, arcessīvī, arcessītus, *to send for*.

11. *capessō, capessivī, capessitūrus, to seize.*
12. *incessō, incessivī, —, to assault.*
13. *laccessō, laccessivī, laccessitūrus, to provoke.*

VERBS IN *-scō*

14. *adolēscō, adolēvī, adultus, to grow up.*
15. *crēscō, crēvī, crētus, to grow.*
16. *nōscō, nōvī, nōtus, to know.*
āgnōscō, āgnōvī, āgnitus, to recognize.
cōgnōscō, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus, to find out.
īgnōscō, īgnōvī, īgnōtus, to pardon.
17. *obsolescō, obsolvī, obsolētus, to grow old.*
18. *pāscō, pāvī, pāstus, to feed.*
19. *quiēscō, quiēvī, quiētus, to rest.*
20. *scīscō, scīvī, scītus, to enact.*
21. *suēscō, suēvī, suētus, to become accustomed.*

V. PERFECT IN *-uī*

120. 1. *alō, aluī, alitus (altus), to nourish.*
2. *ārēscō, āruī, —, to dry up.*
3. Compounds of *canō* as
praecinō, praecinūī, —, to make music before.
4. *colō, coluī, cultus, to cultivate.*
excolō, excoluī, excultus, to perfect.
incolō, incoluī, —, to inhabit.
5. Compounds of the obsolete *cumbō*:—
accumbō, accubuī, accubitus, to lie near.
incumbō, incubuī, incubitus, to lean on.
occumbō, occubuī, occubitus, to sink.
prōcumbō, prōcubuī, prōcubitus, to bend down.
recumbō, recubuī, —, to recline.
succumbō, succubuī, —, to surrender.
6. *compēscō, compēscuī, —, to check.*

7. cōnsenēscō, cōnsenuī, —, *to grow old.*
8. cōnsulō, cōnsuluī, cōnsultum, *to consult.*
9. Compounds of serō as
cōnserō, cōnseruī, cōnserutus, *to join*; also dēserō,
disserō, īnserō, and interserō.
10. fremō, fremuī, —, *to snort.*
11. gemō, genuī, —, *to groan.*
12. gīgnō, genuī, genitus, *to produce.*
13. metō, messuī, messus, *to mow.*
14. molō, moluī, molitus, *to grind.*
15. oculō, occuluī, occultus, *to hide.*
16. pōnō, posuī, positus, *to place.*
17. strepō, strepuī, —, *to resound.*
18. texō, texuī, textus, *to join.*
19. tremō, tremuī, —, *to tremble.*
20. vomō, vomuī, vomitus, *to vomit.*

VI. PERFECT IN -ī, BUT WITH SAME STEM AS PRESENT
STEM

121. 1. abnuō, abnuī, abnuitūrus, *to refuse*; also adnuō,
adnuī, —, *to assent.*
2. acuō, acuī, acūtus, *to sharpen.*
3. arguō, arguī, argūtus, *to prove.*
4. Compounds of candeō as
accendō, accendī, accēnsus, *to kindle.*
5. congruō, congruī, *to agree.*
6. dēfendō, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, *to defend.*
7. exuō, exuī, exūtus, *to take off.*
8. excūdō, excūdī, excūsus, *to hammer.*
9. facessō, facessī, facessītus, *to accomplish.*
10. īcō, īcī, ictus, *to strike.*
11. imbuō, imbuī, imbūtus, *to steep.*
12. induō, induī, indūtus, *to put on.*

13. luō, luī, —, *to pay off*.
Compounds as dīluō, dīluī, dīlūtus, *to wash away*.
14. mandō, mandī, mānsus, *to chew*.
15. metuō, metuī, —, *to fear*.
16. minuō, minuī, minūtus, *to lessen*.
17. offendō, offendī, offēnsus, *to hit upon*.
18. pandō, pandī, passus, *to spread open*.
- 19.prehendō,prehendī,prehēnsus } , *to seize*.
 prendō,prendī,prēnsus }
20. ruō, ruī, rūtus, ruitūrus, *to tumble down*.
21. Compounds of scandō as
 ascendō, ascendī, ascēnsus, *to climb up*.
22. solvō, solvī, solūtus, *to loose*.
23. statuō, statuī, statūtus.
 Compounds as cōstituō, cōstituī, cōstitutus, *to settle*.
24. suō, suī, sūtus, *to stitch*.
25. tribuō, tribuī, tribūtus, *to allot*.
26. (From vellō) ēvellō, ēvellī, ēvulsus, *to pluck out*.
27. (From verrō) ēverrō, ēverrī, ēversus, *to sweep out*.
28. vertō, vertī, versus, *to turn*.
29. vīsō, vīsī, vīsus, *to visit*.
30. volvō, volvī, volūtus, *to roll*.

CHANGE OF *i* OF THE STEM TO *ē*

31. cōnsīdō, cōnsēdī, *to take one's seat*.
32. possīdō, possēdī, possessus, *to take possession*.

Present Stem ending in -i in the Third Conjugation

I. REDUPLICATED PERFECT

122. pariō, peperī, partus, *to bring forth*.
 Compounds are of the Fourth Conjugation.

II. PERFECT WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL

123. 1. *capiō, cēpī, captus, to take.*
 Compounds as *accipiō, accēpī, acceptus, to receive.*
2. *faciō, fēcī, factus, to make.*
 Compounds with prepositions as *adficiō, adfēcī, adfectus, to treat.*
 Other compounds as *satisfaciō, satisfēcī, satisfactus, to satisfy.*
 Compounds of *faciō* that change *a* to *i* form the passive from the same stem as the active; others use *fīō*:
adsuēfaciō, adsuēfēcī, adsuēfactus, to accustom. Passive, *adsuēfīō, adsuēfierī.*
3. *fodiō, fōdī, fossus, to dig.*
4. *fugiō, fūgī, fugitūrus, to flee.*
5. *iaciō, iēcī, iactus, to throw.*
 Compounds as *coniciō, coniecī, coniectus, to gather.*

III. PERFECT IN *-ssī, -xī*

124. 1. (From *laciō*), *adliciō, adlēcī, adlectus, to attract.*
inliciō, inlēcī, inlectus, to entice.
pelliciō, pellēcī, pellectus, to entice.
 But *ēliciō, ēlicuī, ēlicitus, to entice.*
2. *speciō* in compounds as *aspiciō, aspēcī, aspectus, to look at.*
3. Compounds of *quatiō* as
concutiō, concussī, concussus, to agitate.

IV. PERFECT IN *-vī* PRECEDED BY A LONG VOWEL

125. 1. *cupiō, cupīvī, cupītus, to desire.*
2. *sapiō, sapīvī, —, to taste of.*

V. PERFECT IN *-uī*

126. 1. (From *laciō*) *ēliciō*, *ēlicuī*, *ēlicitus*, *to draw out*.
 2. *rapiō*, *rapuī*, *raptus*, *to seize*.
 Compounds as *abripiō*, *abripuī*, *abreptus*, *to carry off*.

VI. FOUND IN PRESENT SYSTEM ONLY

127. 1. *angō*, *to throttle*.
 2. *vergō*, *to be situated*, and some others.

Fourth Conjugation (Infinitive in *-īre*)

I. PERFECT WITH LOST REDUPLICATION

128. 1. *comperiō*, *comperī*, *compertus*, *to learn*.
 2. *reperiō*, *repperī*, *repertus*, *to find*.

II. PERFECT IN *-ī* WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL

129. *veniō*, *vēnī*, *ventus*, *to come*.

III. PERFECT IN *-sī*, *-xī*

130. 1. *farcīō*, *farsī*, *fartus*, *to stuff*.
refercīō, *refersī*, *refertus*, *to stuff full*.
cōnfercīō, (*differcīō*), *effercīō*, and *īnfercīō* have 1. Perfect.
 2. *fulcīō*, *fulsī*, *fultus*, *to prop*.
 3. *haurīō*, *hausī*, *haustus*, *to drain*.
 4. *saepīō*, *saepsī*, *saeptus*, *to hedge in*.
 5. *sentiō*, *sēnsī*, *sēnsus*, *to perceive*.
 6. *sarcīō*, *sarsī*, *sartus*, *to patch*.
 7. *sanciō*, *sānxī*, *sānctus*, *to ratify*.
 8. *vincīō*, *vinxī*, *vinctus*, *to bind*.

IV. PERFECT IN *-ivī*

131. 1. audiō, audivī, audītus, *to hear*; and all regular verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.
 2. sepeliō, sepelivī, sepultus, *to bury*.

V. PERFECT IN *-uī*

132. 1. aperiō, aperuī, apertus, *to open*.
 2. operiō, operuī, opertus, *to cover*.
 3. saliō, saluī, —, *to leap*.
 Compounds as īnsiliō, īnsiluī, —, *to leap in*.

VI. FOUND IN PRESENT SYSTEM ONLY

133. 1. feriō, *to strike*.
 2. ēsuriō, *to be hungry*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

DEPONENT VERBS

First Conjugation

134. All are regular, like hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, *to encourage*.

Second Conjugation

135. Type: vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *to fear*.
 The exceptions are:—
 1. reor, rērī, ratus sum, *to think*. (Has no Pres. Act. Part.)
 2. fateor, fatērī, fassus sum, *to acknowledge*.
 Compounds as cōnfiteor, cōnfitērī, cōnfessus sum, *to confess*.

Third Conjugation

136. 1. fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, fruitūrus, *to enjoy*.
 perfruor, perfruī, perfrūctus sum, *to enjoy hugely*.
2. fungor, fungī, fūctus sum, *to perform*.
3. loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *to speak*.
4. queror, querī, questus sum, *to complain*.
5. sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *to follow*.
6. amplector, amplectī, amplexus sum, *to embrace*.
7. lābor, lābī, lapsus sum, *to slip*.
8. nītor, nītī, { nīxus sum, lit., *to lean upon*.
 nīsus sum, fig., *to strive*.
9. ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *to use*.
10. morior, morī, mortuus sum, moritūrus, *to die*.
11. gradior, gradī, gressus sum, *to step*.
 Compounds as aggredior, aggredi, aggressus sum, *to attack*.
12. patior, patī, passus sum, *to suffer*.
 perpetior, perpetī, perpressus sum, *to endure*.

VERBS IN *-scor*

13. adipīscor, adipīscī, adeptus sum, *to obtain*.
14. comminīscor, comminīscī, commentus sum, *to devise*.
15. expergīscor, expergīscī, experrēctus sum, *to awake*.
16. irāscor, irāscī, irātus sum, *to be angry*.
17. nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus or nactus sum, *to obtain*.
18. nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *to be born*.
19. oblivīscor, oblivīscī, oblītus sum, *to forget*.
20. pacīscor, pacīscī, pactus sum, *to bargain*.
21. proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *to set out*.
22. ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, *to avenge*.
23. vescor, vescī, —, *to feed upon*.
24. dēfetīscor, dēfetīscī, dēfessus sum, *to grow weary*.

Fourth Conjugation

137. Type : partior, partīri, partītus sum, *to divide*.

The exceptions are :

1. adsentior, adsentīri, adsēsus sum, *to assent*.
2. experior, experīri, expertus sum, *to try*.
opporior, opperīri, oppertus sum, *to wait*.
3. ōrdior, ōrdīri, ōrsus sum, *to begin*.
4. orior, orīri, ortus sum, *to arise*.
5. mētiior, mētīri, mēsus sum, *to measure*.

NOTE.—Orior and its compounds have Pres. Ind. oreris, oritur, orimur; Impf. Subj. orerētur, orentur; Imper. orere.

IRREGULAR VERBS

Possum, posse, potuī, to be able

138. **Possum** is compounded of **potis, able**, and **sum, I am**; thus **pot-sum** becomes **possum**, **pot-esse** becomes **posse**, and **pot-fuī, potuī**.

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
	<i>Present</i>	
possum		possim
potes		possis
potest		possit
possumus		possimus
potestis		possitis
possunt		possint
	<i>Imperfect</i>	
poteram		possem
	<i>Future</i>	
poterō		
	<i>Perfect</i>	
potuī		potuerim
	<i>Pluperfect</i>	
potueram		potuissem
	<i>Future Perfect</i>	
potuerō		

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE
<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Present</i>
posse	potuisse	potēns (used only as an adjective)

139. Edō, edere and ēsse, ēsus, to eat

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>
edō	ederem, ēssem
edis, ēs	ederēs, ēssēs
edit, ēst	ederet, ēsset
edimus	ederēmus, ēssēmus
editis, ēstis	ederētis, ēssētis
edunt	ederent, ēssent

IMPERATIVE			
<i>Present</i>		<i>Future</i>	
ede, ēs	edite, ēste	editō, ēstō	editōte, ēstōte
			eduntō

<i>Passive Forms</i>	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>
ēstur, editur	ēssētur, ederētur

Archaic Forms of the Present Subjunctive

edim, edis, edit,
edimus, editis, edint

NOTE.—The corresponding forms of **ēsse** and **esse** are distinguished only by the long vowel of **ēsse**.

140. Ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, to bear, bring

Active	INDICATIVE	Passive
	<i>Present</i>	
ferō		feror
fers		ferris
fert		fertur
ferimus		ferimur
fertis		ferimini
ferunt		feruntur

SUBJUNCTIVE			
<i>Imperfect</i>			
ferrem			ferrer
INFINITIVE			
<i>Present</i>			
ferre			ferri
IMPERATIVE			
<i>Present</i>			
fer	ferte	ferre	ferimini
<i>Future</i>			
fertō	fertōte	fertor	
fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

NOTES. — 1. The vowel *i* is dropped before *t* or *s*; *ē* is dropped before *r*.

2. The other forms are regular: Pres. Subj. **feram, ferar**; Impf. Ind. **ferēbam, ferēbar**; Fut. **feram, ferar**; Perf. Subj. **tulerim**; Pluperf. Ind. **tuleram**; Pluperf. Subj. **tulisse**; Perf. Inf. **tulisse**; Fut. **lāturus esse**; Pres. Part. **ferēns**; Perf. Part. **lātus**; Fut. Part. **lāturus**; Gerundive, **ferendus**.

3. The compounds are like **ferre**.

4. **Sustulī** and **sublātus** are parts of **tollō**.

- 141. Volō, velle, voluī, to wish, to be willing**
Nōlō (nē-volō), nōlle, nōluī, to be unwilling
Mālō (magis-volō), mālle, māluī, to prefer

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE		
<i>Present</i>					
volō	nōlō	mālō	velim	nōlim	mālim
vis	nōn vis	māvis	velis	nōlis	mālis
vult	nōn vult	māvult	velit	nōlit	mālit
volumus	nōlumus	mālumus	velimus	nōlimus	mālimus
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis	velitis	nōlitis	mālitis
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	velint	nōlint	mālint
<i>Imperfect</i>					
volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam	vellem	nōllem	māllem
<i>Future</i>					
volam	nōlam	mālam			

VERBS

Perfect

māi māierim nōierim māierim

Pluperfect

māieram volūissem nōissem māissem

Future Perfect

māierō

INFINITIVE

Perfect

māie volūisse nōisse māuisse

IMPERATIVE

Future

nōitō, nōitō nōitōte, nōluntō

PARTICIPLE

Present

nōiēns

volēns

Notes.—1. The other forms are lacking. The Pres. Part. of volō usually supplied by *capiēns*: the Pres. Part. of nōlō by *invitūs*. Instead of the form *sī vis*, we usually find *sīs*.

42. Eō, ire. **IVI** (ī), itūrus, to go

REMARK.—The Stem-Vowel **I** becomes **e** before **a, o, u**.

INDICATIVE

Present

SUBJUNCTIVE

eō, is, it
imus, itis, eunt

Imperfect

eam, eās, eat
eāmus, eātis, eant

ibam

Future

irem

ibō

Perfect

iverim

ivi, ii
ivisti, iisti
ivit, iit
ivimus, iimus
ivistis, iistis
ivērunt, iērunt

		<i>Pluperfect</i>	
iveram			ivissem
		<i>Future Perfect</i>	
iverō			
		IMPERATIVE	
<i>Present</i>			<i>Future</i>
i	ite		itō itōte
			itō euntō
		INFINITIVE	
		<i>Perfect</i>	
ire		ivisse (isse)	itūrus esse
PARTICIPLE		SUPINE	GERUND
<i>Present</i>		itum, itū	N. (ire)
iēns (Gen. euntis)			G. eundi
			D. eundō
<i>Future</i>			Ac. eundum
itūrus			Ab. eundō

NOTES.—1. Passive forms of the simple verb are found only in the third person singular: as **itur**, **ibātur**, **itum est**; but transitive compounds have the full Passive conjugation.

2. The compounds are like **ire**, but **ambire** is of the Fourth Conjugation.

3. **Queō**, *I can*, and **nequeō**, *I can not*, are conjugated like **ire**, but are usual only in the Pres. Ind. and Subj. The Impf. Ind. and Subj. are sometimes found. In the first person singular, Pres. Ind., Cicero uses **nōn queō** for **nequeō**.

143. Fīō, fierī, factus sum, used as Passive of facere, to do.

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
		<i>Present</i>		
fīō	(fīmus)		fīam	fīāmus
fīs	(fītis)		fīās	fīātis
fīt	fīunt		fīat	fīant
		<i>Imperfect</i>		
fīēbam			fīerem	
		<i>Future</i>		
fīam,	fīēs, fiet			
fīēmus,	fīētis, fient			

		<i>Perfect</i>	
factus sum			factus sim
		<i>Pluperfect</i>	
factus eram			factus essem
		<i>Future Perfect</i>	
factus erō			
IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	
fi	fite	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i> <i>Future</i>
		fierī	factus esse factum irī
		PARTICIPLE	
	<i>Perfect</i>		<i>Gerundive</i>
	factus		faciendus

DEFECTIVE VERBS

144. 1. *Āiō, I say, I affirm.*

INDICATIVE		<i>Present</i>	SUBJUNCTIVE	
āiō	—		—	—
ais	—		aiās	—
ait	aiunt		aiat	aiant
<i>Imperfect</i>			IMPERATIVE	
aiēbam	aiēbāmus		ai (rare)	
aiēbās	aiēbātis		PARTICIPLE	
aiēbat	aiēbant		aiēns (rare)	

NOTE. — The interrogative form **ais-ne** is shortened to **ain**.

2. *Inquam, I say*, used parenthetically in direct quotation.

	INDICATIVE	
<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Future</i>
inquam	inquiēbat	inquiēs
inquis		inquiet
inquit	<i>Perfect</i>	
(inquimus)	inquistī	
(inquitis)	inquit	
inquunt		

3. **Quaesō, quaesumus, I beg**, is ordinarily used either as an intensive or to soften a command.

4. **Fārī, to speak** (found only in poetry, except in compounds).

INDICATIVE			
<i>Present</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
fātur	fābor fābitur	fātus sum	fātus eram
IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE	GERUND	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
fāre	fārī	fandī fandō	fātus
PRESENT PARTICIPLE			SUPINE
<i>N.</i>	(fāns)		fātū
<i>G.</i>	fantis		
<i>D.</i>	fantī		
<i>Ac.</i>	fantem		

5. The Imperatives: (h)avē, (h)avēte, *hail!* Inf. (h)avēre. salvē, salvēte, *hail!* Inf. salvēre. Fut. salvēbis. cedo, cete, *here with it!*

6. The Perfects **meminī, I remember**; **ōdī, I hate**; **coepī, I have begun**.

INDICATIVE	<i>Perfect</i>	SUBJUNCTIVE
meminī		meminerim
ōdī		ōderim
coepī		coeperim
	<i>Pluperfect</i>	
memineram		meminissem
ōderam		ōdissem
coeperam		coepissem
<i>Future Perfect</i>		IMPERATIVE
meminerō		mementō
ōderō		mementōte
coeperō		

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Future</i>
meminisse	—	—	—
ōdisse	ōsūrus esse	ōsus	ōsūrus
coepisse	coeptūrus esse	coeptus	coeptūrus

NOTE.—**Coepus sum** is generally used with the Passive Infinitive: **urbs aedificārī coepta est**, *the city began to be built*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS

145. There are three classes of Impersonal Verbs; that is, verbs which have no definite person for a subject, and which are used only in the third person singular of a finite mood and in the Infinitive.

1. Those exclusively impersonal:—

decet, -uit, -ēre, *it becomes*.

dēdecet, -uit, -ēre, *it is unbecoming*.

libet, -uit (-itum est), -ēre, *it is pleasing*.

licet, -uit (-itum est), -ēre, *it is permitted*.

miseret, -uit, -ēre, *it causes pity*.

oportet, -uit, -ēre, *it behooves*.

paenitet, -uit, -ēre, *it repents*.

piget, -uit, -ēre, *it displeases*.

pudet, -uit (-itum est), -ēre, *it shames*.

rēfert, rētulit, rēferre, *it is of importance*.

taedet, —, -ēre, *it wearies*.

(pertaedet), -taesum est, -ēre, *it disgusts*.

2. Verbs implying operations of nature are usually impersonal:—

advesperāscit, -āvit, -ere, *evening approaches*.

fulget, fulsit, -ēre, *it lightens*.

grandinat, -āvit, -āre, *it hails*.

inlūcēscit, -lūxit, -ere, *it grows light*.

ningit, ninxit, -ere, *it snows.*
 pluit, pluit, -ere, *it rains.*
 tonat, -uit, -āre, *it thunders.*

3. Verbs used impersonally in certain meanings:—

accēdit, *it is added*; accidit, *it happens* (unexpectedly);
 appāret, *it is evident*; attinet, *it concerns*; condūcit, *it is*
profitable; cōstat, *it is agreed, it is certain*; contingit,
it happens (fortunately); convenit, *it is agreed*; dolet, *it*
pains; ēvenit, *it comes to pass*; expedit, *it is expedient*;
 fit, *the result is*; fallit, fugit, praeterit, *it escapes notice*;
 interest, *it is of importance*; iuvat, *it delights*; liquet, *it*
appears (in legal formulas); patet, *it is manifest*; placet,
it is resolved; praestat, *it is better*; stat, *it is determined*;
 sufficit, *it is enough.*

NOTES.—1. The Imperative of Impersonal Verbs is supplied by the Present Subjunctive: thus, **miserat tē pauperum**, *have pity on the poor.*

2. **Paenitet** and **puđet** have the oblique cases of the Gerund: **paenitendī causā**. **Puđet** has a Gerundive.

3. Almost any verb may be used impersonally: **pūgnātum est**, *a battle was fought.*

ABUNDANT VERBS

146. Abundant Verbs have the same meaning expressed by different forms of conjugation: thus, **lavāre** and **lavere**. Again, these verbs may be Active and Deponent of the same conjugation: thus, **adsentiō** and **adsentior**.

INCEPTIVE OR INCHOATIVE VERBS (SEE 157. 2)

147. These have **-scō** or **-scor** in the Present. They denote the beginning of an action or state. All are of the Third Conjugation. They are formed from verb-stems or from nouns and adjectives.

1. Inceptives from Verbs

calēscō, caluī, <i>to become hot.</i>	Stem Verb, caleō.
coalēscō, coaluī, <i>to unite.</i>	alō.
condolēscō, condoluī, <i>to ache.</i>	doleō.
conticēscō, conticuī, <i>to cease speaking.</i>	taceō.
convalēscō, convaluī, <i>to recover health.</i>	valeō.
flōrēscō, flōruī, <i>to bloom.</i>	flōreō.
exārdēscō, exārsī, <i>to take fire.</i>	ārdeō.
horrēscō, horruī, <i>to grow rough.</i>	horreō.
liquēscō, —, <i>to become liquid.</i>	liqueō.

2. Inceptives from Nouns and Adjectives

dītēscō, —, <i>to grow rich, from dīs, rich.</i>
ēvānēscō, ēvānuī, <i>to vanish, from vānus, empty.</i>
īgnēscō, —, <i>to take fire, from īgnis, fire.</i>
mātūrēscō, mātūruī, <i>to become ripe, from mātūrus, ripe.</i>
obdūrēscō, obdūruī, <i>to grow hard, from dūrus, hard.</i>
obmūtēscō, obmūtuī, <i>to become dumb, from mūtus, dumb.</i>

PARTICLES

ADVERBS

148. Adverbs are usually oblique cases of Adjectives or Pronouns.

I. ADVERBS FORMED FROM ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS

BY SPECIAL ENDINGS

1. Adjectives and participles in *-us* and *-er* form the adverb in *ē*: —

Adj. **doctus**, *learned*
miser, *wretched*

Adv. **doctē**, *learnedly*
miserē, *wretchedly*

NOTE.—**bene**, from **bonus**, and **male**, from **malus**, have **ē**.

2. The ending **-iter** is used with adjectives and participles of the Third Declension; but if the word ends in **-ns** or **-rs**, the adverb ends in **-ter**:—

Adj. **ūtilis**, *useful*
ācer, *sharp*
prūdēns, *wise*
 also **audāx**, *bold*

Adv. **ūtiliter**, *usefully*
ācriter, *sharply*
prūdentē, *wisely*
audācter, *boldly*

NOTE.—Some adverbs from adjectives in **-us** have the ending **-iter** as well as **-ē**: **firmus**, *firm*, **firmē** and **firmiter**, *firmly*; **largus**, *abundant*, **largē** and **largiter**, *abundantly*. **Alius** forms **aliter**; **violentus** forms **violenter**.

3. **-tim**, **-atim**, **-itim** are added to nouns, and **ī** to participles in **-us**: thus, **tribūtim**, *tribe by tribe*; **nōminātim**, *by name*; **virītim**, *man by man*.

4. **-itus** is added to some adjectives and nouns: **dīvinitus**, *divinely*.

BY CASE-FORMS

149. 1. The Neuter Accusative forms in **-um** of adjectives of the First and Second Declension, and in **-e** of the Third, are used as adverbs: **primum**, *first*; **cēterum**, *in other respects*; **facile**, *easily*.

2. The Ablative form in **ō** from adjectives and participles of the Second Declension: **crēbrō**, *frequently*; **serō**, *late*; **subitō**, *suddenly*; but **citō**, *quickly*.

NOTE.—Sometimes they have both the endings **ē** and **ō**, but with different meanings: **certō**, *certainly*, **certē**, *at least*.

3. The Ablative form in **-ā**, **-e**, **-is** of adjectives and nouns: **dextrā**, *on the right*; **forte**, *by chance*; **grātis**, *gratuitously*.

BY COMPOSITION

150. 1. Of a Preposition with its case: *antēā*, formerly; *imprimis*, especially; *dēnuō*, anew.

2. Of other words: *hodiē*, to-day; *māgnopere* (*māgnō opere*), greatly; *quotannis*, yearly.

151. II. ADVERBS FROM PRONOUNS

Adverbs of Place

Interrogative	Relative	Demonstrative	Indefinite
ubi , where?	ubi , where	ibi , there (hic, istic, illic) ibidem , in the same place	alicubi , somewhere (usquam, usquam)
unde , whence?	unde , whence	inde , thence (hinc, istinc, illinc) indidem , from the same place	alicunde , from somewhere
quō , whither?	quō , whither	eō , thither (hūc, istūc, illūc) eōdem , to the same place	aliquō , to some place (usquam)
quā , on what side?	quā , where	eā , there (hāc, istāc, illāc) eādem , on the same side	aliquā , on some side

Adverbs of Time

quandō , when?	cum , when, as	tum , tunc , at that time	aliquandō , at some time umquam , ever
quotiēns , how often?	quotiēns , (as often) as	totiēns , as often	aliquotiēns , some- times

Adverbs of Manner

quam , how much?	quam , (as much) as	tam , so much
ut , utī , how?	ut , how, as	ita (sīc), thus
quōmodo , in what way?	(sīcut , quōmodo , quemadmodum)	item , just so

COMPARISON OF THE ADVERB

152. 1. The only adverbs that can be compared are those formed by the endings **-ē, -ō, -(i)ter** from adjectives that are compared, and adverbs in **e**: as **facile**. The Comparative of the adverb ends in **-ius**, like the neuter Comparative of the adjective: as (**doctē**) **doctius**. The Superlative is formed from the Superlative of the adjective by adding **-ē** instead of the adjectival termination: as (**doctissimus**) **doctissimē**.

2. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

bene, melius, optimē, well.

diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, for a long time.

māgnopere, magis, māximē (also māximopere, māximō opere), greatly.

male, pēius, pessimē, badly.

multum, plūs, plūrimum, much.

nōn multum or parum, minus, minimē, little.

prope, propius, proximē, near.

saepe, saepius, saepissimē, frequently.

3. Without a Positive are:—

dēterius, dēterrimē, worse.

ōcius, ōcissimē, more swiftly.

potius, potissimum, preferably.

prius, primum and prīmō, sooner.

4. Without a Comparative are:—

meritō, meritissimō, deservedly; and nūper, nūperrimē, recently.

5. Without a Superlative are:—

satis, satius, enough; and secus, sētius, otherwise.

PREPOSITIONS

153. 1. Prepositions were originally adverbs which, later on, took a case with them: *contrā*, *opposite*; *contrā hostem*, *against the enemy*. They define more closely the local ideas of the cases. The Accusative and the Ablative are the only cases that are used with prepositions. (For lists, see 258.)

2. The so-called Inseparable Prepositions are obsolete adverbs, found only in composition:—

amb-, *am-*, *around*: *ambiō*, *I go around*; *amplector*, *I embrace*.

dis-, *dī-*, *apart*: *discerpō*, *I tear apart*; *dīlabor*, *I fall down*.

por-, *forth*: *porrigere*, *to reach out*.

re- (before a vowel or *h*, *red-*), *back*: *remittere*, *to send back*; *redeō*, *I return*. *Reddō*, *I give back*, has *red-* even before a consonant.

sē- (before a vowel *sēd-*), *apart from*: *sēiungere*, *to separate*; *sēditiō*, *a going aside*.

vē-, *without*: *vēcors*, *without reason*; *vēsānus*, *insane*.

CONJUNCTIONS

154. Conjunctions are Co-ordinate, connecting similar constructions; or Subordinate, joining dependent constructions to those on which they depend. (See 464–470.)

INTERJECTIONS

155. 1. Of Pain: *hei*, *heu*, *ō*, *vae*. (See 200. Note 2.)

2. Of Surprise: *ecce*, *ēn*, *hem*, *ō*. (See 200. Note 3.)

3. Of Question, Address: *eho*, *heus*, *ō*, *prō*. (See 200. Note 1.)

NOTE.—The following forms are used as Interjections:—

hercle (*hercule*), *by Hercules!* *meherculēs*, *mehercle*, *by Hercules!* *medius fidius* (= *medius fidius iuuet*), *so help me the god of truth!* *mēcastor*, *by Castor!* *pol!* *edepol!* *Pollux!* *by Pollux!*

FORMATION OF WORDS



156. By the formation of words we mean the way in which new words are made from words already extant, either by Derivation or by Composition. In Derivation, we distinguish stem-words (Primitive) and derived words (Derivatives). In Composition, we have Simple words and Compound words.

That part of a word which forms the basis for several kindred words is called the Root:—

reg- is root for **regō, rēx, rēgnum.**

DERIVATION

DERIVATION OF VERBS

I. FROM OTHER VERBS

157. 1. Frequentatives (Intensives) denote an often-repeated or strengthened action. They are formed from the Perfect Participle by a change of **-us** to **-āre**:—

From **trahō** (Part. **tractus**) is formed the Frequentative **tractāre**, *to drag violently.*

From **currō** (Part. **cursus**) is formed the Frequentative **cursāre**, *to run to and fro.*

The Participle in **-ātus** changes into **-itāre**: **clāmitāre**, *to bawl*, from **clāmātus**.

2. Inceptives (Inchoatives) denote a beginning. (See 147.)

3. **Desideratives** denote a desire. They are formed on Participial stems, end in **-uriō**, and are of the Fourth Conjugation:—

From **edō**, *I eat* (Part. **ēsus**), is formed the Desiderative **ēsuriō**, *I am hungry*.

4. **Diminutives** denote a diminution or a weakening of the action. They end in **-illō** and are of the First Conjugation:—

cantillō, *I hum a tune*, from **cantō**.

scribillō, *I scribble*, from **scribō**.

II. FROM NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

158. 1. Those of the First Conjugation are usually transitive; those of the Second are intransitive:—

armāre, *to arm* (from **arma**, *weapons*).

lūcēre, *to grow light* (from **lūx**, *light*).

2. Those of the Third and Fourth are partly transitive, partly intransitive:—

metuere, *to fear* (from **metus**, *fear*).

finire, *to end* (from **finis**, *end*).

sitire, *to be thirsty* (from **sitis**, *thirst*).

DERIVATION OF NOUNS

I. FROM OTHER NOUNS

159. 1. **Diminutives** denote that which is small of its kind. They are also used to denote affection or contempt. They end in **-ulus**, **-ula**, **-ulum** (after a vowel, in **-olus**, **-ola**, **-olum**); **-culus**, **-cula**, **-culum**; **-ellus**, **-ella**, **-ellum**; **-illus**, **-illa**, **-illum**. They retain the gender of the stem-word.

Stem-word	Diminutive	Meaning
puer , <i>boy</i>	puerulus	<i>little boy</i>
filia , <i>daughter</i>	filiola	<i>little daughter</i>
homō , <i>man</i>	homunculus	<i>manikin</i>
lapis , <i>stone</i>	lapillus	<i>pebble</i>
sacrum , <i>temple</i>	sacellum	<i>chapel</i>

2. The place where things are stored, or where animals are kept, is indicated by the following endings: —

-ārium : as aerārium, *treasury*

-ētum : as quercētum, *oak-grove*

-ile : as ovile, *sheep-fold*

3. The following endings are generally in nouns that modify the names of persons: —

-ina, to indicate a professional act, or the place in which it is exercised: **medicīna**, *surgery*; **tōnstrīna**, *barber's shop*.

-ium, to indicate a condition, or a union of persons: **conlōgium**, *union*; **servitium**, *slavery*.

4. **Patronymics** denote descent, though sometimes they denote the followers of, the partisans of: as **Aeneadēs**, *the partisans of Aeneas*.

Masculine Patronymics end in

-idēs (-ιδης) : **Priamidēs**, *son of Priam*

-idēs (-ειδης) : **Atridēs**, *son of Atreus*

-iadēs : **Anchisiadēs**, *son of Anchises*

-adēs : **Aeneadēs**, *son of Aeneas*

Feminine Patronymics end in

-is : **Tantalīs**, *daughter of Tantalus*

-ēis : **Nērēis**, *daughter of Nereus*

-ias : **Thestias**, *daughter of Thestius*

5. The suffix -ātus indicates official position: **cōnsulātus**, *consulship* (**cōnsul**).

II. FROM ADJECTIVES

160. Nouns derived from Adjectives end in *-ia*, *-itia*, *-tās* (*-itās*), *-tūdō* (*-itūdō*), and occasionally in *-mōnia*. They are abstract, denoting Quality:—

insānia, *madness*; *malitia*, *malice*; *bonitās*, *goodness*; *fortitūdō*, *firmness*; *sāctimōnia*, *holiness*.

III. FROM VERBS

161. 1. Nouns in *-ōs* (*-or*), *-us*, *-ium*, *-ēla*, formed on verbal stems, denote an Act or a State:—

furor, *madness*; *decus*, *grace*; *gaudium*, *joy*; *querēla*, *complaint*.

2. Nouns in *-or*, formed on Participial stems, indicate:—

Regular, or constant, or professional employment in an act: *scriptor*, *scribe*; *pīctor*, *painter*.

A single act so notable that it gives one a historical designation: *Rōmulus conditor*, *Romulus, the founder*.

3. Nouns in *-crum*, *-trum* indicate Place or Means:—

lavācrum, *bath*; *sepulcrum*, *burial-place*; *arātrum*, *plough*.

4. Nouns in *-iō*, *-us* (Gen. *-ūs*), formed on Participial stems, usually denote a quality, or an act considered alone: *institūtiō*, *education*; *mōtus*, *motion*.

Sometimes they are concrete, and denote the Result of an action: *accūsātiō*, *a suit*.

NOTE.—The endings *-idō*, *-ium*, *-sūra*, *-tūra*, have the same meaning: *libīdō*, *desire*, *cultūra*, *cultivation*; *cēnsūra*, *ensorship*.

5. Nouns in *-men*, *-mentum*, *-bulum*, *-culum*, *-ulum*, denote Means, Instrument, or Place of an action:—

volūmen, *a roll*; *alimentum*, *nourishment*; *vēnābulum*, *hunting-spear*; *gubernāculum*, *rudder*; *vīnculum*, *chain*.

DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES

I. FROM VERBS

162. 1. The endings *-bundus* and *-cundus* give the adjective a little stronger force than the Present Participle has: *mīrābundus*, *full of wonder*; *verēcundus*, *modest*.

2. The ending *-idus* denotes a State or Characteristic: *pavidus*, *timid*.

3. The endings *-ilis* and *-ibilis* denote Capability or Desert in the Passive: *docilis*, *teachable*; *facilis*, *easy to be done*; *mōbilis*, *easily moved*.

4. The endings *-āx* and *-ulus* denote Tendency, usually toward evil: *fallāx*, *deceitful*; *mendāx*, *lying*; *garrulus*, *loquacious*.

II. FROM COMMON NOUNS

163. 1. The ending *-eus* means *made of*: *ferreus*, *iron*; *aureus*, *golden*.

2. *-ālis*, *-āris*, *-ārius*, *-ēnsis*, *-ius*, *-icus*, *-icius*, *-ivus*, *-nus* mean *pertaining to, connected with*: *nāvālis*, *naval*; *populāris*, *democratic*; *legiōnārius*, *legionary*; *forēnsis*, *public*; *rēgius*, *kingly*; *bellicus*, *military*; *tribūnīcius*, *pertaining to a tribune*; *tempestivus*, *stormy*; *paternus*, *paternal*.

3. *-ōsus* and *-lentus* indicate *fulness*: *Insidiōsus*, *dangerous*; *vinolentus*, *drunken*.

4. *-ātus*, *-itus*, *-ūtus* mean *furnished with*: *ālātus*, *winged*; *aurītus*, *furnished with ears*; *nāsūtus*, *having a large nose*.

5. *-ānus* and *-inus* indicate *pertaining to a place, or origin from*: *urbānus*, *pertaining to the city*; *dīvīnus*, *of divine origin*.

6. *-ter* (*-tris*), *pertaining to*; *equestris*, *equestrian*.

III. FROM PROPER NAMES

164. 1. Adjectives are usually formed from the names of persons by the endings **-ānus**, **-īnus**, **-iānus**: **Sullānus**, *pertaining to Sulla*; **Verrīnus**, *pertaining to Verres*; **Tullīānus**, *pertaining to Tullius*.

2. Roman family names in **-ius** retain this form as an adjective to show the work done by a member of the family: **via Appia**, *the Appian road*.

3. The endings **-ēus** and **-icus** are usually found only with Greek proper names: **Epicūrēus**, *Epicurean*; **Sōcraticus**, *Socratic*.

4. Adjectives used as nouns are formed from the names of places by the endings **-ānus**, **-īnus**, **-ēnsis**, **-ās** (Gen. **-ātis**): **Rōmānus**, *Roman*; **Caudīnus**, *of Caudium*; **Cannēnsis**, *of Cannae*; **Arpīnās**, *of Arpinum*.

NOTE. — In Greek words the endings are **-ius** and **-aeus**: — **Salamīnius**, *of Salamis*; **Lārissaeus**, *of Larissa*.

5. Adjectives are formed from names of nations or tribes by adding **-icus**, sometimes **-ius**: **Gallicus**, *Gallic* (from **Gallus**); **Thrācius**, *Thracian* (from **Thrāx**).

6. Most names of countries are derived from adjectives, but even then adjectives are sometimes formed from them, to point out something in a foreign land: **Hispāniēnsis exercitus**, *the (Roman) army in Spain*.

IV. FROM OTHER ADJECTIVES

165. These are Diminutives, and end in **-ulus**, **-olus**, **-ellus**, **-culus**; **-olus** occurs after **e** and **i**, otherwise **-ulus**; **-culus** occurs after **e**, **i**, **u**, and consonant stems: **albulus**, *whitish*; **parvulus**, *little*; **aureolus**, *golden*; **misellus** (= **miser-lus**), *wretched*; **pauperculus**, *poor*.

V. FROM ADVERBS

166. 1. Adjectives of Time end in **-tinus** (**-tīnus**), **-ernus** (**-urnus**): **prīstinus**, *ancient*; **repentīnus**, *sudden*; **hodiernus**, *of to-day*; **nocturnus**, *nocturnal*.

2. Adjectives of Place end in **-cus** (**-quus**): **posticus**, *in the rear*.

COMPOSITION

167. The first part of a compound word is the modifier which gives to the base of the word a more precise meaning. The base can be a verb, a noun, or an adjective.

COMPOSITION OF VERBS

168. The base is always a verb; the modifier may be

1. The stem of a verb; found, however, only in compounds of **faciō**: **aduſefaciō**, *to accustom*; **calefaciō**, *to make warm*; **patefaciō**, *to open*.

2. The stem of a noun: **animadvertō**, *to notice*; **testificor**, *to call to witness*.

3. A particle: —

An adverb: **benefaciō**, *to treat well*.

A preposition: **referō**, *to bring back*.

NOTES. — 1. **ǣ** and **ě** are usually changed into **i**; **ae** into **i**: — **cōnficiō** (from **faciō**); **redimō** (from **emō**); **conquiro** (from **quaerō**).

Before two consonants **ǣ** passes into **ě**: **cōnfectus** (from **factus**).

2. **ǣ** remains only in the compounds of **caveō**, **maneō**, **trahō**, and some of those of **agō**, but becomes **ě** in the compounds of **arceō**, **carpō**, **fallō**, **farcio**, **gradior**, **pario**, **patior**, **scandō**, **spargō**.

ě remains in the compounds of **edō**, **ferō**, **gerō**, **metō**, **petō**, **serō**, **tegō**, **terō**, **vehō**, and some of those of **legō** (**perlegō**, **neglegō**, **intellegō**; but **conligō**, **dēligō**).

ae is retained only in compounds of **haereō** and in **pertaesum est**.

COMPOSITION OF NOUNS

169. Nouns may be compounded:—

1. Of a noun-stem and a verb-stem; this is joined to the base by **I**: **agricola** (**agr-i-cola**), *farmer*; **arm-i-ger**, *armor-bearer*.

2. Of two nouns, or a noun and an adjective: **manū-missiō**, *the freeing of a slave*; **bi-duum**, *a period of two days*.

3. Of a preposition and a noun: **dē-missiō**, *a letting down*.

COMPOSITION OF ADJECTIVES

170. Adjectives may be compounded:—

1. Of two nouns, or a noun and an adjective. The connecting vowel is **I**, if the base begins with a consonant: **miser-i-cors**, *pitiful*.

2. Of a preposition and a noun, **ā**, **dē**, **ex**, **in**, **sē** having a negative force: **con-cors**, *harmonious*; **dē-mēns**, *distracted*.

3. Of a preposition and an adjective, **in** having a negative force, while **per** and **prae** intensify, and **sub** weakens: **in-dignus**, *unworthy*; **per-modestus**, *very modest*; **sub-mōrōsus**, *somewhat peevish*.

SYNTAX (SENTENCE-BUILDING)

AGREEMENT

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE

171. Subject. — The Subject may be a noun, a pronoun, an adjective or participle, an indeclinable word, an infinitive, or a clause: *cōsul imperat, the consul orders; ille maeret, he mourns; bonī amantur, the loyal are loved; amantēs amantur, the loving are loved; "a" anceps est, "a" is doubtful; errāre hūmānum est, to err is human; opportunē accidit quod advēnistī, it was fortunate that you came.* The Subject is in the Nominative.

NOTE. — Unless emphatic, or for the sake of contrast, the subject, if a personal pronoun, is omitted: *vōs manētis, ego abeō, you remain, I go away.*

172. Indeterminate Subject. — The Indeterminate Subject, where reference is not to any particular person, is expressed:

1. By the passive of transitive verbs: *laudor, I am praised; i.e. some one praises me.*

2. By the 3d sing. pass. of intransitives: *itur, some one goes.*

3. By the 3d plur. act.: *dīcunt, they say; i.e. it is generally reported.*

4. By the 1st plur. act., when the speaker includes himself: *quae nōn habēmus cupimus, people (the speaker included) long for what they do not possess.*

5. By the second person singular Subjunctive active (see 321. 3): *dīcās, you may say = some one may say.*

6. By an indefinite pronoun, generally in introducing an objection: *fōrsitan quispiam dixerit, possibly some one might say.*

173. 1. **Predicate.** — The Predicate is usually a verb, but may be a noun, pronoun, or adjective with the copula *esse, to be*: *puer scribit, the boy is writing; arbor est viridis, the tree is green; homō est Thrāx, the man is a Thracian.*

2. **Esse, to live, exist,** is an independent verb: *est deus, God exists.*

It is also used with an adverb to denote a State or Condition: *tūtō esse, to be safe.*

3. Other copulas besides *esse* are: *ferī, to become; existere, to appear; manēre, to stay; vidēri, to seem;* and the passive of such verbs as take a double Accusative in the active.

4. In compound tenses, parts of the verb *sum* are often omitted, especially *est, sunt, esse.*

THE SUBJECT AND THE PREDICATE NOMINATIVE

174. 1. The verb agrees with its subject in number and person: *vōs valētis, you are well; anni praetereunt, the years pass by.*

2. If the predicate nominative is an adjective, a participle, or a pronoun, it agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case: *nēmō fit cāsū sapiēns, no one becomes wise by accident; tū beātus vidēris, you seem happy; puer laudātus est, the boy was praised; virtūs laudanda est, virtue is to be praised.*

3. If the predicate is a noun or adjective, it agrees with the subject:

In case always: **Athēnae omnium artium domicilium fuerunt**, *Athens was the home of all arts.*

In gender usually: **Athēnae omnium doctrinārum inventricēs fuerunt**, *Athens was the discoverer of all sciences; leō est rēx animālium*, *the lion is the king of animals.*

In number, if it indicates a person: **Fabius populī Rōmānī scūtum vocābātur**, *Fabius was called the shield of the Roman people.*

4. If the subject and predicate nominative differ in number and gender, the copula usually agrees with the nearest noun. This is regularly the case, if an Infinitive is the subject: **contentum suis rēbus esse māximae sunt dīvitiae**, *to be content with one's lot is the greatest riches.*

5. When **cum** with its case is joined to a singular subject, the predicate is sometimes in the plural: **māter cum filiā capiuntur**, *the mother with her daughter are captured.*

6. The predicate sometimes gets its number and gender from the idea suggested, and not from the grammatical form of the subject. This is the case with collective nouns and with **milia** with a personal signification: **cum tanta multitudō lapidēs conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nullī**, *Caes. B. G. II. 6, since so great a multitude were hurling stones, no one could stand on the wall.*

SEVERAL SUBJECTS

175. 1. **Number.**—With two or more singular subjects, connected by *and*, the predicate is in the plural, especially if the subjects are persons: **Isocratēs et Gorgiās ad summam senectūtem vixērunt**, *Isocrates and Gorgias lived to extreme old age.*

2. The predicate is in the singular, if it refers to each subject, or if the subjects form a sum total: **religiō et fidēs**

antepōnātur amīcitiāe, let religion and faith be preferred to friendship; senātus populusque Rōmānus intellegit bellō opus esse, the senate and Roman people know that there is need of war.

3. When the predicate precedes, it agrees with the nearest subject: *vīsae sunt facēs ārdorque caeli, torches and the flame of the sky were seen.*

4. If several singular subjects are united by *nec . . . nec, aut . . . aut*, the predicate is in the singular rather than the plural. But the plural is used with personal subjects: *in hominibus iuvandis aut mōrēs spectārī aut fortūna solet, in aiding men either custom or fortune is usually looked to.*

176. Person.—If the subjects are of different persons, the predicate is of the first person rather than the second, and of the second rather than the third: *ego, tū, et Balbus manūs sustulimus, you, and Balbus, and I lifted up our hands.*

NOTE.—Observe that the order in Latin is the order in persons: first, second, third.

177. 1. Gender.—If the predicate is an adjective or participle, it agrees with the subjects in gender: *pater et filius mortuī sunt, the father and his son are dead.*

2. If the subject consists of two or more abstract feminine nouns, the predicate is sometimes neuter: *temeritās et incōstantia fugienda sunt, rashness and fickleness should be avoided.*

3. If the subjects are of different genders, the predicate is in the masculine if they are names of persons, in the neuter if they are names of things: *iam pridem māter et filius mortuī sunt, the mother and the son have been dead*

for a long time; *dīvitiae et honōrēs incerta sunt, riches and honors are uncertain.*

4. If some of the subjects are names of persons and some of things, the predicate gets its gender from the persons: *rēx rēgiaque classis unā profectī sunt, the king and the royal fleet set out together.*

NOTE. — The predicate can get its gender from the nearest noun.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

178. An attributive adjective agrees with the noun it limits in gender, number, and case: *sapiēns cōsul, a wise consul.*

2. An attributive adjective belonging to two or more words generally agrees with the nearest: *patrius mōs et disciplina, ancestral custom and rule.*

The predicate adjective has been treated under 171 and 173.

APPOSITION

179. By Apposition one substantive is placed by the side of another that denotes the same person or thing: *Alexander rēx, Alexander the king.*

The noun in apposition usually defines more particularly the noun with which it is in apposition.

The word in apposition agrees with the principal word in case, and, as far as possible, in gender and number: *urbs Rōma, the city of Rome; urbs Athēnae, the city of Athens; Rhēnus flūmen, the river Rhine.*

180. 1. **Partitive Apposition.** — In Partitive Appositive the whole is subdivided into its parts: *duo rēgēs, ille bellō, hic pāce, cīvitātem auxērunt, two kings advanced the state, the former by war, the latter by peace.*

2. An Accusative may be in apposition with a clause: *admoneor ut aliquid etiam de sepultura dicendum existimem, rem non difficilem, I am reminded to consider that something should be said on the subject of burial also, a matter not difficult.*

181. 1. **Predicate Attribution and Apposition.** — Any case may have another word in the same case in Predicative Attribution or Apposition: *Socratem sapientissimum virum Atheniensis interfecerunt, the Athenians slew Socrates, a man of the greatest wisdom.*

2. This predicate attribute is found in expressions of Office, Worth, Age: *Cato senex historiam scribere instituit, Cato, when an old man, began to write history.*

3. It indicates mental or physical condition, or has a local or temporal force: *invitus hoc feci, I did this unwillingly; milites exanimati pervenerunt, the soldiers came up out of breath; Socrates primus hoc docuit, Socrates was the first who taught this.*

NOTES. — 1. This construction is most common with the adjectives *primus first; princeps, chief; prior, former; posterior, following; postrumus, last; unus, one; solus, alone; volens, nollens, etc.*

2. The predicate sometimes agrees with the appositive: *Volsinii, oppidum Tuscorum, concrematum est fulmine, Volsinii, a town of the Tuscans, was consumed by a lightning-flash.*

AGREEMENT OF PRONOUNS

182. 1. **Relative and Demonstrative Pronouns** agree in gender and number with the words on which they depend, or to which they refer, but they get their case from the construction of the sentence: *arboris serit agricola, quarum fructus aspiciet numquam, the farmer plants trees, of which he will never see the yield; diligentia in omnibus rebus plu-*

rimum valet; haec colenda est nōbīs, *diligence is worth much in everything; it should be cultivated by us.*

2. A Relative or a Demonstrative referring to a clause is in the neuter. Instead of quod we generally have id quod: Pompēius, quod (id quod) mihi summō dolōrī est, ipse sē adflixit, *Pompey has ruined himself, a thing which is the greatest grief to me.*

3. Referring to two or more words, the laws already given hold good. But if the antecedent is a collective noun, the relative is usually in the plural: Caesar omnem equitātum praemittit, quī . . . videant, *Caesar sends forward all the cavalry, to see.*

4. The Relative and the Demonstrative often agree with a predicate noun, instead of with the antecedent: Thēbae, quod Boeōtiae caput est, *Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.*

NOTE. — This does not occur when the predicate noun is a proper name: est genus quoddam hominum quod Hīlōtae vocātur, *there is a certain class of men which is called Helots*; nor in questions, when the question depends on the idea suggested by a word: quid est cārītās? *what is charity?*

5. The person of the verb of a relative clause depends on the person of the antecedent: ego nōn is sum quī mortis periculō terrear, *I am not one to be frightened by the fear of death.*

THE CASES

THE ACCUSATIVE

163. The Accusative has three uses:—

It is the case of the Direct Object of an action;

It defines the Compass of an action or quality;

It shows the End or Limit towards which motion is directed.

ACCUSATIVE OF THE DIRECT OBJECT

184. The Direct Object of a transitive verb may represent:—

1. A person or thing, already existing, which is *affected* by the action: **boni civēs patriam amant**, *loyal citizens love their country*.

2. A Result not previously existing, but *produced* by the action: **Rōmulus et Remus urbem condidērunt**, *Romulus and Remus founded a city*.

NOTES.—1. In changing to the passive construction, the Object Accusative becomes the Subject Nominative: **urbs a Rōmulō et Remō condita est**, *the city was founded by Romulus and Remus*.

2. A transitive verb is used *absolutely* when it is used without an object: **fāma est Helenum Grāiās rēgnāre per urbēs**, *there is a rumor that Helenus is reigning throughout Grecian cities*.

ACCUSATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED

185. Type: **amō patriam**, *I love my country*.

1. Intransitive verbs which become transitive when compounded with **circum**, **per**, **praeter**, and **trāns** take the Accusative: **circumvenire Gallōs**, *to surround the Gauls*; **partēs quās modo percucurrī**, *Cic. Or. III. 52, the portions that I have just run over*; **iam hōs cursū, iam praeterit illōs**, *Verg. Aen. IV. 157, now in his course outstrips these, now those*; **trānsire montēs**, *to cross the mountains*.

2. Many verbs compounded with **ad**, **in**, **super**, and some with **ante**, **con**, **inter**, **ob**, and **sub**, take the Accusative: **adit vātem**, *he approaches the priest*; **coīre societātem**, *to form a union*; **inīre cōsulātum**, *to enter on a consulship*; **obīre lēgātiōnem**, *to undertake an embassy*; **subīre labōrēs**, *to undergo toils*.

NOTE.—This is common with verbs of Surpassing and Excelling, such as **superāre**, **anteīre**, **antecēdere**; but many of these verbs are

used both with the Accusative and with the Dative. With other verbs the preposition is repeated, or the Dative is used: **invādere in hostēs**, to attack the enemy.

186. The following **Impersonals** take the Accusative: — **decet**, it is proper; **dēdecet**, it is unseemly; **fallit**, it deceives; **fugit**, it escapes my notice; **praeterit**, it escapes; **orātōrem irāscī minimē decet**, it ill becomes an orator to get angry; **simulāre dēdecet**, to pretend to be is improper.

NOTE. — **Decet** and **dēdecet** may also have an Infinitive, a neuter pronoun, or an adjective as subject.

187. Verbs of the Affections or Emotions. — These verbs, regularly intransitive, are sometimes used absolutely and sometimes transitively, according to their meaning: **doleō** (**lūgeō**, **maereō**, **fleō**, **gemō**, **lāmentor**) **cāsum Cicerōnis**, I grieve (*mourn, weep*) over Cicero's mishap; **queror**, **conqueror cāsum Cicerōnis** (or **dē cāsū Cicerōnis**), I grieve over Cicero's mishap; **horreō**, **reformidō bellum**, I shudder at war; **rīdeō incōnstantiam hominum**, I laugh at the fickleness of men; **mīror**, **admīror mē ipsum**, I wonder at myself.

188. The Accusative as the Object of the Passive. — In poetry, many verbs that have a middle force — that is, whose subject performs an action on itself or on something connected with itself — take an Accusative of the object: **induitur cultum faciemque Diānae**, she assumes the garb and form of Diana.

ACCUSATIVE OF THE RESULT PRODUCED

189. Type: **Aenēas urbem condidit**, Aeneas founded a city.

Neuter pronouns and neuter adjectives may be used with any verb as the Accusative of the Result Produced: **nōn possum idem glōriārī**, I cannot make the same boast; **loquentem vāna**, talking empty things.

190. 1. **Cognate Accusative.** — Any verb may take an Accusative of the Result Produced, if it has a form or a meaning similar to that of the verb. This Accusative regularly has a modifier: *longam viam ire, to travel a long journey.*

2. Verbs of Tasting and Smelling take an object of the Result Produced: *vīnum redolēns, smelling of wine; olet unguenta, he smells of perfumes.*

TWO ACCUSATIVES

191. **Object and Predicate.** — Two Accusatives, the one of the Object, the other of the Predicate Noun are found:

1. With verbs of Naming, as *appellāre, nōmināre, vocāre, dīcere*: *senātus appellat Divitiacum amīcum, the senate calls Divitiacus friend.*

2. With verbs of Making, Appointing, Choosing; as *facere, reddere, creāre, dēligere, dēsīgnāre*: *Pompēius mare tūtum reddidit, Pompey made the sea safe; populus Rōmānus rēgem Numam creāvit, the Roman people made Numa king.*

NOTE.—The only Predicate Accusative with *reddere* is an adjective.

3. With verbs of Considering; as *dūcere, exīstimāre, indicāre, numerāre, putāre*: *Catōnem sapientem putant, they consider Cato wise.*

4. With verbs of Holding, Giving, Taking; as *habēre, dare, addere, adsūmere*: *addunt Aeduōs amīcōs, they add the Aeduans as friends.*

5. With verbs meaning to show oneself in a certain light: *praestā tē virum, show yourself a man.*

NOTE.—*Sē praestāre* is used only in a good sense.

6. With verbs meaning to Understand, to Distinguish, to Inscribe, chiefly in the passive: *cōgnōscēs mē tuī cōnsiliī fautōrem, you shall find me a promoter of your plan.*

192. Person and Thing. — Two Accusatives, one of the Person and the other of the Thing, are found with: —

1. Verbs of Teaching and Hiding; as *docēre*, to teach; *cēlāre*, to conceal from: *Catō ipse filium litterās docuit*, *Cato himself taught his son his letters*; *imperātor iter exercitum cēlāvit*, *the general concealed his route from the army*.

NOTE. — *Docēre* may also take *dē* with the Ablative: *docent eum dē adventū hostium*, *they inform him of the arrival of the enemy*.

Cēlāre, in the passive, always takes *dē* with the Ablative: *māximīs dē rēbus cēlātus est*, *he has been kept ignorant of the most important things*.

2. Verbs of Asking, Begging, Demanding; as *poscō*, *flāgitō*, *ōrō*, *rogō*: *Caesar frumentum cottidīē Aeduōs flāgitābat*, *Caesar each day kept demanding corn of the Aeduans*.

NOTE. — *Postulāre*, *petere*, *precārī*, regularly take *ab* with the Ablative of the Person: *postulō hōc ā tē*, *I demand this of you*.

193. Retained Accusative. — In changing to the Passive construction, the Accusative of the Person becomes the subject, while the Accusative of the Thing is retained:

Active: *Cicerōnem sententiam rogāvērunt*, *they asked Cicero his opinion*.

Passive: *Cicerō sententiam rogātus est*, *Cicero was asked his opinion*.

194. Two Accusatives with Compounds. — Compounds with *trāns* may have, besides the Accusative of the Object, an Accusative depending on *trāns*: *Caesar Germānōs flūmen trācit*, *Caesar puts the Germans across the river*.

ACCUSATIVES THAT DEFINE THE COMPASS OF AN ACTION OR QUALITY

195. Adverbial Accusative. — This Accusative is found only in neuter adjectives and pronouns used as substan-

tives, and the form is usually felt more as an adverb than a substantive; **multum, plūs, tantum, quantum** are the common words: **multum tē diligō**, *I love you much*.

NOTE. — Some other phrases and expressions fall under this head: **māximam partem**, *for the most part*; **id temporis**, *at that time*; **meam vicem**, *for my part*, etc.

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

196. Extent of Space is expressed by the simple Accusative: **Caesar duās fossās xv pedēs lātās perdūxit**, *Caesar made two ditches fifteen feet wide*.

NOTE. — If the idea of space is not suggested by the governing word, **per** with the Accusative is used: **per omnēs partēs prōvinciae**, *through all parts of the province*.

197. Extent in Time is expressed by the Accusative, or, where emphatic, by the Accusative with **per**: **diēs circiter quindecim iter fēcērunt**, *Caes. B. G. I. 15, they made a journey of about fifteen days*; **per decem diēs**, *Cic. in Cat. III. 20. 26, through ten days*.

ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION (GREEK ACCUSATIVE)

198. The extent of the action of any verb may be expressed by the Accusative neuter of a pronoun: **nōs aliquid tē iūvimus**, *I have helped you somewhat*.

NOTE. — **Cētera**, *in other respects*, **nihil**, *in no respect*, have the same use: **cētera Grāius fuit**, *Verg. Aen. III. 594, he was in other respects a Greek*.

In poetry, the Accusative of any word may be used as above: **omnia Mercuriō similis**, *Verg. Aen. IV. 558, like unto Mercury in all respects*.

Many so-called Accusatives of Specification are really only cases of retained Accusatives (cf. 193).

ACCUSATIVE OF THE LIMIT OF MOTION

199. The Accusative denotes the End or Limit towards which motion is directed. This is used: —

1. With names of Towns, Cities, and Small Islands: **Caesar Rōmam rediit**, *Caesar returned to Rome*.

2. With **domum** (meaning *home*), **domōs, rūs**: **puer domum revertitur**, *the boy returns home* (but in **domum**, *into the house*); **rūs iit**, *he went to the country*.

NOTES. — 1. **Ad** with the Accusative of a town denotes *towards the vicinity of*.

2. **Urbs, oppidum, colōnia, mūnicipium**, without an attribute, are used with a preposition before the name of the city: **in oppidum Cirtam**, *into the town of Cirta*.

With an attribute they follow the name of the city: **Cirtam in oppidum Africae**, *into Cirta, a town of Africa*.

3. In poetry, the Limit of Motion may be expressed by the Accusative of any noun without a preposition, though this is not a common construction: **Lāvīniaque vēnit litōra**, Verg. Aen. I. 2–3, *and came to the Lavinian shores*.

4. The motion must be expressed with each item in Latin: *to Caesar in the camp*, **ad Caesarem in castra** (not **castris**).

5. **Petō** is transitive and does not allow a preposition.

ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS

200. The Accusative of a noun or of a personal pronoun, usually with a modifier, is found in exclamations of wonder or of pain, with or without the interjections **ō** and **heu**: **mē miserum!** *wretched me!* **ō fortunātam rem publicam!** *O fortunate republic!*

NOTES. — 1. For emphasis in address, **ō** is used with the Vocative.

2. **Vae** takes the Dative: **vae victis!** *woe to the conquered!*

3. **Ēn** and **ecce** take the Nominative also: **ēn Priamus!** *lo Priam!* **ecce homō!** *behold the man!*

For the Accusative with Prepositions, see 258.

THE DATIVE

DATIVE OF THE OBJECT

201. The Dative is used as the Indirect or Remote Object of a verb, usually of a transitive verb. It generally answers the question "*To whom?*" Transitive verbs take also a direct object in the Accusative: **pater filiō pecūniam dat**, *the father gives his son money.*

202. **Dative with Compound Verbs.** (See 185. 2.)—Both transitive and intransitive verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad**, **ante**, **cum (con)**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **sub**, **super** take an indirect object in the Dative:—

1. *Transitive*

addere alicui animum, *to lend one courage.*

adferre alicui dolōrem, *to cause one grief.*

antepōnere honōrem divitiis, *to prefer honor to riches.*

inferre Aeduīs bellum, *to wage war on the Aeduans.*

intercludere hostibus commeātum, *to cut off supplies from the enemy.*

postpōnere rem rei, *to esteem (one) thing less than (another) thing.*

praeferre rem rei, *to prefer one thing to another.*

praeficere aliquem exercituī, *to place one over the army.*

2. *Intransitive*

intercēdere lēgī, *to oppose a law.*

obvenire alicui, *to meet some one.*

interesse cōsiliis, *to take part in plans.*

praeesse rei pūblicaē, *to take charge of the state.*

3. Among the common exceptions are: **adiuvō**, **adorior**, **adgredior**, **conlocō**, **comparō**, **impellō**, **incendō**, **incūsō**, **in-**

veniō, interficiō, obsideō, obtineō, opprimō, oppūgnō. These take the Accusative (see 185. 2).

NOTE.—Compounds with **con**, instead of taking the Dative, usually repeat **cum** and take the Ablative: **commūnicāre aliquid cum aliquō**, to share something with some one.

203. Double Construction.—**Aspergere**, to sprinkle, **circumdare**, to surround, and **dōnāre**, to give, have a double construction, as follows:—

aspergit <i>āram sanguine</i> , he sprinkles the altar with blood.	aspergit <i>ārae sanguinem</i> , he sprinkles blood on the altar.
circumdat <i>urbī mūrum</i> , he places a wall around the city.	circumdat <i>urbem mūrō</i> , he encircles the city with a wall.
dōnat <i>filiō dīvitiās</i> , he bestows riches on his son.	dōnat <i>filiū dīvitiās</i> , he endows his son with riches.

204. Verbs that have different constructions with different meanings:—

metuere and timēre alicui (mihi) (libertātī) dē rē publicā	} to fear for.	metuere and timēre aliquem (aliquid) aliquid ab aliquō	} to fear.
cōnsūlere	{	rēi publicae , to provide for the state. aliquem , to consult some one. in aliquem graviter , to take harsh measures against some one.	
prōspicere and prōvidēre	{	rēi publicae , to provide for the state. aliquid , to provide something.	
cavēre	{	alicui , to provide safety for some one. aliquid , to shun something.	

205. Dative with Intransitive Verbs. — The Dative of the Person or the Thing is used as the indirect object of many intransitive verbs, some of the most common of which mean *to help, hinder, hurt, agree to, differ with, pity, pardon, forgive, oppose, lie in wait for, envy, be angry with, rail at, threaten, command, obey, yield to, oppose, heal, spare, restrain oneself, please, displease, persuade, trust, distrust*: *civitatī persuāsit*, Caes. B. G. I. 2, *he persuaded the state*; *Allobrogibus imperāvit*, Caes. B. G. I. 28, *he ordered the Allobroges*; *philosophia medētur animis*, *philosophy heals the mind*; *probus invidet nēmini*, *a good man envies no one*.

Exceptions: *aequāre, decēre, dēficere, iuvāre, iubēre, vetāre*, take the Accusative.

NOTE. — In the passive these verbs are used impersonally: *invidētur mihi*, *I am envied*.

DATIVE OF PURPOSE, END, OR SERVICE

206. This Dative has a predicative use, is in the singular number, and is semi-abstract in its nature. It occurs most usually with some form of *esse*, and is generally accompanied by a second Dative of the person for whom something is, or is done: *pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram*, Caes. B. G. I. 33, *and promised that that matter would be a care to him*; *quem auxiliō Caesarī Aedui miserant*, Caes. B. G. I. 18, *which the Aeduians had sent for an aid to Caesar*.

DATIVE OF THE AGENT

207. The Dative denotes Agency. This is the regular construction with the Gerund or Gerundive: *Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda*, Caes. B. G. II. 20, *Caesar had to do everything at one time*.

NOTES.—1. The Ablative with **ā** sometimes takes the place of this Dative, but only to avoid ambiguity: **mīlitibus ab imperātōre cōnsulendum est**, *the interests of the soldiers must be consulted by the general.*

2. In poetry, and rarely in prose, a Dative of the Agent is often found with the compound tenses of the passive voice: **mihi hōc prōvīsum est**, *this has been foreseen by me.*

DATIVE OF REFERENCE

208. The Dative of Reference points out the person in whose eyes the statement is true, or to whom the statement refers, or who feels an interest in the statement, or whose attention is called to it: **versātur mihi ante oculōs aspectus Cethēgī**, Cic. Cat. IV. 11. 16, *there is ever before my eyes the sight of Cethegus.*

NOTE.—This Dative does not modify a single word, but the sentence.

209. The **Ethical Dative** is found only with the personal pronoun, and the connection of the Dative with the rest of the sentence is very slight: **Tongilium mihi ēdūxit**, Cic. Cat. II. 4. 23, *he has led out my Tongilius.*

(Compare this with our English colloquialism, “There’s a fine horse *for you*.”)

210. Dative of the Point of View.

Local: **Volscōs, quae gēns ad Campāniam euntibus nōn longē ab urbe est**, *Volsci, a community which is not far from the city to those going (= as one goes) toward Campania.*

Mental: **vērē aestimantī**, L. 37. 58. 8, *to one judging truly.*

NOTE.—The Participle is the form commonly found with this Dative.

211. Dative of Separation.—Where the idea of Personal Interest is implied, the Dative occasionally takes the place of an Ablative: *scūtō ab novissimīs unī militī dētractō*, Caes. B. G. II. 25, *having snatched a shield from a soldier on the rear*. This may be considered as Indirect Object also.

DATIVE OF POSSESSION

212. Esse with the Dative conveys the idea of Possession: *cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classī eiusmodī congressus erat*, Caes. B. G. III. 13, *with these ships our fleet had such an encounter*.

NOTES.—1. If the possession of qualities is affirmed, the Ablative of Quality, *inesse* with the Dative, or *in* with the Ablative, is used: *Cicerō māximā eloquentiā est*; *Cicerōnī māxima eloquentia inest*; *māxima in Cicerōne eloquentia est*, *Cicero possesses very great eloquence*.

2. With *nōmen* the proper name is usually made to agree with the Dative rather than with *nōmen*: *mihi Cicerōnī nōmen est*, *my name is Cicero*.

DATIVE OF PLACE

213. The Place Towards Which Motion is Directed is sometimes expressed in poetry by the Dative: *lābentur flūmina pontō*, *rivers will glide on to the sea*.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

214. The Dative is used with adjectives meaning *near*, *equal*, *like*, *unlike*, *friendly*, *hostile*, and, in general, with adjectives having a meaning similar to that of the verbs in **205**. These adjectives are usually united with some tense of *esse*: *hōc bellum nōn minus vīctōribus quam vīctīs exitiōsum fuit*, *this war was no less destructive to the victors than to the vanquished*; *quī proximī Rēmīs erant*, Caes.

B. G. II. 12, *who were next to the Remi*; **māximē plēbī acceptus fuit**, Caes. B. G. I. 3, *he was very pleasing to the people* (= very popular).

NOTES. — 1. For **propius** and **proximus** with the Accusative, see 258. 2.

2. **Amīcus**, **inimīcus**, and **familiāris**, in the Positive and Superlative, are used as substantives modified by a possessive pronoun or a Genitive: **meus amīcissimus**, *my dearest friend*; **Cicerōnis familiāres**, *Cicero's intimates*. So **pār**, **proprius**, **similis**.

3. Instead of adjectives denoting Friendliness, followed by the Dative, **ergā** with the Accusative may be used: **vestra ergā mē voluntās**, Cic. Cat. IV. 1. 5, *your kindly feeling towards me*. Instead of adjectives denoting Unfriendliness, followed by the Dative, **adversus**, **ad**, or **in** with the Accusative may be used: **adversus ea respondēbō**, *to that I will reply*. Also **ad haec respondēbō**, and **hīs respondēbō**, *to this I will reply*.

4. **Ūtilis**, *useful*, **inūtilis**, *useless*, **aptus**, *fit*, **idōneus**, *suitable*, **necessārius**, *necessary*, and **parātus**, *ready*, may take the Dative, or the Accusative with **ad**: **locus castrīs (ad castra) idōneus**, *a place suitable for a camp*.

THE GENITIVE

215. The Genitive is the case of the Complement, and is akin to the adjective. It is used chiefly as the complement of nouns and adjectives, less often as the complement of verbs.

I. THE GENITIVE WITH NOUNS

216. **Subjective and Objective Genitive.** — 1. When the noun which the Genitive limits contains the idea of an action, the Genitive may be Subjective; that is, Active; or Objective; that is, Passive. If the Genitive denotes the subject of the action, it is called the Subjective Genitive; if it denotes the object of the action, it is called the Objective Genitive.

Subjective: **Ariovistus ad postulata Caesaris pauca respondit**, *Caes. B. G. I. 44, Ariovistus replied briefly to Caesar's demands (the demands made by Caesar).*

Objective: **Cupiditas gloriae**, *desire of glory.*

(In this sentence **gloriae** denotes the object of the desire).

Pro veteribus Helvetiorum iniuriis populi Romani, *Caes. B. G. I. 30, in return for the ancient wrongs inflicted by the Helvetians on the Roman people (lit. in return for the ancient injuries of the Helvetians of the Roman people).*

As in the above sentence, the Subjective Genitive precedes the Objective.

2. Instead of the Objective Genitive of persons, **in, erga, adversus** with the Accusative of the person are generally used, particularly when the other noun is accompanied by a possessive pronoun or by a Subjective Genitive: **amorem in patrem tuum**, *Cic. Sull. 12. 16, love for your father.*

3. Instead of the Subjective Genitive of personal pronouns, the possessive pronoun is used, agreeing in case with the modified noun: **non est ista mea culpa, sed temporum**, *Cic. Cat. II. 3. 5, it is not my fault, but that of the times.*

4. Possessive Pronouns are sometimes used for Objective Genitives: **ullam rei publicae partem cum sua minima invidia auderet attingere?** *Cic. Sest. 49. 11. (Who) . . . would have dared to take any part in politics at the risk of the very least unpopularity to himself?*

5. **Nostrī** and **vestrī** are objective forms; **nostrum** and **vestrum**, partitive forms.

217. Genitive of Possession. — 1. The Genitive denotes possession: **in castris Helvetiorum**, *Caes. B. G. I. 29, in the camp of the Helvetians.*

2. The Genitive is used with *esse, fieri, putari*, etc., to indicate one to whom something belongs or of whom something is a characteristic. These Genitives are often used as predicates: *Gallia est Ariovistī, Gaul belongs to Ariovistus; adulēscētis est māiōrēs nātū reverēri, it is the duty of a young man to respect his elders; ūnum genus est eōrum*, Cic. Cat. II. 18. 12, *one class consists of those.*

NOTES. — 1. Instead of the Genitive of the personal pronoun, the corresponding possessive pronoun is used: *haec erant mea, these things were mine.*

2. Instead of the neuter of the predicate adjective, we regularly use the Genitive of the masculine of the Third Declension adjective of one ending: *sapientis est, it is wise; it is characteristic of a wise man.*

218. 1. The Genitive occurs with the Ablatives *causā* and *grātiā*, which are used as prepositions and follow their nouns. The Ablative of the possessive pronoun with *causā* takes the place of the Genitive of the personal pronouns: *laudis causā (grātiā), for the sake of praise; meā causā, for my sake; rei frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā*, Caes. B. G. I. 39, *for the sake of provisions and supplies.*

2. The indeclinable *instar* is also used with a Genitive: (*aedificant*) *instar montis equum*, Verg. Aen. II. 15, *they build a horse as large as a mountain.*

219. **Appositive Genitive.** — The Appositive Genitive or Genitive of Definition has almost the force of an appositive: *vitium tarditātis, the fault of slowness.*

220. **Genitive of Origin.** — The Genitive denotes Origin: *filia Cicerōnis, the daughter of Cicero.*

221. **The Genitive of Material.** — The Genitive denotes that of which a thing consists: *acervus farris, a heap of spelt.*

222. Genitive of Quality. — *Quality* is expressed by the Genitive. This Genitive is found in the singular and has an attribute, usually *māgnus, māximus, summus, tantus*: *vir māgnae sapientiae, a man of great wisdom*; *habēmus enim hūiuscemodī senātūs cōnsultum, Cic. Cat. I. 4. 12, for we have the senate's decree of this very nature.*

223. Genitive of Measure. — The Genitive indicates Number, Measure, Time, Space: *trīduī via, Caes. B. G. I. 38, a journey of three days.*

224. Genitive of Price or Value. — General or Indefinite Price or Value is expressed by the Genitive, used with *aestimāre, facere, putāre, etc.* The most common of these Genitives are *māgnī, plūris, plūrimī, māximī, parvī, minōris, minimī, quantī, tantī, tantīdem, permāgnī, nihili*: *quantī emistī? at what price did you buy? parvī existimō, little do I care.*

NOTE. — All forms of the Genitive of Quality are common in the predicate: *vir erat priscae sevēritātis, he was a man of old-fashioned sternness.*

For the Ablative of Quality, see 245.

225. Partitive Genitive. — The Genitive indicates the whole of which a part is made prominent. This Genitive is modified: —

1. By nouns of quantity and measure; as *pars, part*; *numerus, number*; *cōpia, abundance*; *multitūdō, multitude*; *modius, measure*; *pondus, weight*: *multitūdō hominum, a multitude of men*; . . . *quae pars civitātis Helvētiae, Caes. B. G. I. 12, which part of the Helvetian state.*

2. By words used as neuter substantives, if they are in the Nominative, or in the Accusative without a preposi-

tion; as **tantum, quantum, aliquantum, multum, plūs, plūri-
mum, paulum, minus, minimum, satis, parum, nihil, hōc, id,
illud, istud, idem, quid, etc.**: *virtūs nihil expetit praemiī,
virtue demands no reward; satis ēloquentiae, enough elo-
quence; . . . minus dubitātiōnis, Caes. B. G. I. 14, less of
doubt.*

3. By Comparatives and Superlatives; also the Superlatives of adverbs: **māior frātrum, the elder of the brothers; māximē omnium laudandus, most greatly to be praised among all.**

4. By ordinals, and by pronouns like **uter, alter, neuter, uterque, ūllus, nāllus, nēmō, quisquam, quis, quicumque, quisquis, quisque, nōnnūllī, multī, paucī, quotus quisque: . . . cum sciās esse hōrum nēminem, Cic. Cat. I. 15. 23, since you know that there is no one of these.**

5. By adverbs of place and degree: **ubinam gentium sumus? Cic. Cat. I. 9. 9, where in the world are we? eō adrogantiae, to that pitch of presumption.**

NOTES.—1. Adjectives of the Second Declension are found in the Partitive Genitive, but those of the third are attracted into the case of the modifying word: **aliquid novī, something new; but aliquid ūtile, something useful.**

2. Instead of the Partitive Genitive the Ablative with **ex** or **dē** may be used to indicate Selection. This is regularly so with **quīdam**, and often with **ūnus** and other cardinals: **ūnum ē multīs, one of many; quīdam ex militibus, some of the soldiers; videō dē istīs, quī sē populārēs habēri volunt, abesse nōn nēminem, Cic. Cat. IV. 10. 13, I see that of those who wish to be considered democratic some are absent.**

3. Where both words cover the same ground, and where there is no contrast between the whole and the part, the attributive is found: **multī hostēs, many of the enemy.**

4. When modified by **uterque** the pronoun is put in the Genitive; the substantive, in the same case as **uterque**: **uterque hōrum, each of these; uterque cōsul, each consul.**

II. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

226. 1. The Objective Genitive is used with adjectives that denote Desire, Experience, Fulness, Knowledge, Memory, Participation, Power, and their contraries; as *avidus, cupidus, studiōsus; cōnsciūs, gnārus, perītus; Insciūs, Ignārus, imperītus; adfinis, particeps, compos, plēnus; expers, inops; memor, immemor: . . . dīxissetque sē semper bonōrum ferrāmentōrum studiōsum fuisse, Cic. Cat. III. 10. 10, and had said that he had always been very fond of good cutlery.*

2. The Objective Genitive is used with some Present Participles of transitive verbs, if they denote a permanent quality: *homō fugiēns labōris, a man shirking labor* (regularly); but *homō fugiēns labōrem*, referring to a particular case.

3. Instead of the Dative, the Genitive is often used

With *superstes, surviving.*

With *proprius, own; commūnis, common; sacer, sacred.*

With *similis* and *dissimilis*, always the Genitives *meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī.*

III. GENITIVE WITH VERBS

227. 1. Verbs of Remembering, Reminding, and Forgetting take the Genitive, particularly *meminisse, to bear in mind; reminiscī, to remember; obliviscī, to forget: mortuōrum meminī, I keep in mind the dead; praeteritōrum meminī, I keep in mind the past; . . . oblītī salutis meae, Cic. Cat. IV. 1. 6, forgetting my safety.*

2. *Meminī, I recall*, takes the Accusative: *Caesarem meminī, I recall Caesar.*

3. *Recordārī, to call to mind*, takes *dē* with the Ablative of the person, and usually has the Accusative of the

thing: *recordor aliquid dē Catōne, I call to mind something of Cato.*

4. **Admoneō, commoneō, commonefaciō, I remind, I impress on,** take the Accusative of the person, while the thing is expressed by the Ablative with *dē*, or, less commonly, by the Genitive: *nōs tantī virī rēs admonuit, the matter reminded us of so great a man; dē quō vōs admonuī, I reminded you of this.*

5. The Genitive is used with the phrase *mihi in mentem venire*: *vēnit mihi Platōnis in mentem, I thought of Plato.*

6. With verbs of Remembering, Reminding, Forgetting, the neuter of a pronoun or an adjective is in the Accusative: *multa memini, I remember many things; tē haec admonēbō, I will admonish you of this.*

228. Verbs of Judicial Action. — Verbs of Accusing, Acquitting, Condemning, and Convicting take the Genitive of the Crime and the Ablative of the Penalty. The most common of these verbs are *accūsāre, arguere, arcessere, convincere, damnāre, absolvere, and reum facere*: *Miltiadēs, capitis absolūtus, pecūniā multātus est, Miltiades, though acquitted of a capital offense, was fined (lit. mulcted in money).*

NOTE. — Note particularly the phrases *postulāre dē repetundīs, to proceed against for extortion.*

accūsāre and damnāre dē venēficiis, to accuse of (to condemn for) poisoning.

accūsāre and damnāre inter sicāriōs, to accuse of (to convict of) murder.

accūsāre dē vī, to accuse of assault.

vōtī damnātus, having attained one's prayer.

229. Verbs of Emotion. — The Impersonals *miseret, it moves to pity, paenitet, it repents, piget, it wearies, pudet,*

it shames, taedet, it tires, and the personal verb *misereor, I pity*, take the Genitive of the person towards whom or the thing towards which the feeling is directed and the Accusative of the person who feels: *mē pudet stultitiae, I am ashamed of my folly; hōc mē pudet, I am ashamed of this; mē tamen meōrum factōrum atque cōnsiliōrum numquam, patrēs cōscriptī, paenitēbit, Cic. Cat. IV. 20. 8, and yet, Conscript Fathers, never shall it repent me of my deeds and plans; miserēre nostrī, pity us.*

NOTES.—1. *Pudet* also takes the Genitive of the person before whom one feels ashamed: *pudet mē deōrum hominumque, I am ashamed before gods and men.*

2. A demonstrative or a relative pronoun may be used as the subject: *nōn tē haec pudent? Do not these things shame you?*

230. 1. Interest and rēfert.—*Interest* takes a Genitive of the person concerned; seldom of the thing: *Caesaris interest, it is of importance to Caesar.*

2. The Ablative singular feminine of the possessive pronoun is used instead of the Genitive of the personal pronoun: *nunc, patrēs cōscriptī, ego meā videō quid intersit, Cic. Cat. IV. 9. 1, now, Conscript Fathers, I see what is to my interest.*

3. The Measure of Concern or Interest is expressed by an adverb, an adverbial Accusative, or a Genitive of Price: *Caesaris interest māximē (plūrimum) (māximī), it concerns Caesar very greatly.*

4. The Object of Concern is expressed by a neuter pronoun as a subject, by an Infinitive (or Accusative and Infinitive), by *ut* or *nē* with the subjunctive, by an indirect question: *hōc meā interest, this concerns me; interest omnium rēctē facere, it is of importance to all to do right; interest bonōrum nē improbī cōnsulem faciant, it is of inter-*

est to the loyal that the disloyal do not make a consul; meā interest quid dē mē amīcī loquantur, it is of importance to me what my friends say about me.

NOTE. — Apposition is expressed by a relative clause.

5. *Rēfert* does not take the Genitive of the person, but in other respects has the same construction as *interest*.

GENITIVE WITH VERBS THAT USUALLY TAKE THE ABLATIVE

231. *Potior* governs the Genitive in the phrase *potiri rērum*, *to control matters*.

Implēre, *complēre*, *egēre* occasionally take the Genitive, while with *indigēre* it is the more common construction: *cum complētus iam mercātōrum carcer esset*, Cic. II. Verr. 5. 147, *when the prison had already been filled with merchants*.

THE ABLATIVE

232. The Ablative has three fundamental uses, denoting —

1. The Place From Which (Ablative of Source or Origin, Ablative of Material, Ablative of Separation, Ablative of Specification, Ablative of Comparison).
2. The Place Where (Ablative of Place, Ablative of Time).
3. The Thing With Which (Ablative of Accompaniment, Ablative of Manner, Ablative of Quality, Ablative of Means, Ablative of Measure, Ablative with Verbs of Plenty and Want, Ablative of Price, Ablative with *opus*, Ablative with Verbs, Ablative of Cause).

ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE FROM WHICH

233. 1. Place From Which is expressed by the Ablative with a preposition: *dē finibus suis*, Caes. B. G. I. 2, *from their own boundaries*; *ēgredere aliquandō ex urbe*, Cic. Cat. I. 10. 2, *at last depart from the city*.

2. The preposition is omitted with names of towns and small islands, and with *domō*, *from home*, *humō*, *from the ground*, and *rūre*, *from the country*: *Rōmā rediī*, *I returned from Rome*; *domō exire nōlunt*, *they are unwilling to leave home*. *Relinquō* takes the Accusative.

3. Even with names of towns, the preposition is regularly used to express *distance from*, or to indicate *from the neighborhood of*: *iam Caesar ā Gergoviā discessisse audiēbātur*, Caes. B. G. VII. 59, *now Caesar was heard to have departed from the neighborhood of Gergovia*; *cum mīlia passuum circiter XXX ab Gergoviā abesset*, Caes. B. G. VII. 38, *when he was about thirty miles from Gergovia*.

NOTES. — 1. If a noun, such as *urbs* or *oppidum*, is in apposition with the name of a town from which motion takes place, it takes a preposition with it: *Cirtā ex oppidō Āfricae*, *from Cirta, a town of Africa*.

2. In poetry, the place from which motion takes place may be expressed by the Ablative without a preposition, even if it is not the name of a town: *frātrēs Lyciā missōs occīdit*, *he slays the brothers sent from Lycia*.

234. 1. Ablative of Source or Origin. — With Participles denoting birth (*ēditus*, *genitus*, *nātus*, *ortus*, etc.) the Ablative alone (rarely with *ex*) is used to designate parentage or immediate descent; the Ablative with *ab*, to designate remote descent: *Mercurius Māiā nātus est*, *Mercury was descended from Maia*; *amplissimō genere nātus*, *descended from a most illustrious line*; *Belgae sunt ortī ab Germānīs*, *the Belgians are of German descent*.

2. With pronouns a preposition is used: **ex nōbīs nātōs liberōs appellāmus**, *we call those born of us children.*

235. Ablative of Material.—Material is expressed by the Ablative with **ex** (sometimes **dē**) or by an adjective: **cīvica corōna fit ē fronde querneā**, *the civic crown is made of oak leaves*; **nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore**, Caes. B. G. III. 13, *ships made entirely of oak*; **triumphālēs corōnae sunt aureae**, *triumphal crowns are of gold.*

236. Ablative of Separation.—The following verbs and their compounds regularly take the Ablative:—

1. **pellere, dēpellere, expellere, movēre, dēicere, dēturbāre, cēdere, dēcēdere, excēdere**: **Caesar pellit Mārcum ex civitāte**, *Caesar drives Marcus from the state.*

2. **arcēre, prohibēre, excludere, intercludere, dēterrere, abstinere, dēsistere**: **arceat hostēs urbe**, *he keeps the enemy off from the city*; **dēfendit urbem ab hostibus**, *he defends the city from the enemy*; **rē frūmentāriā intercludī**, Caes. B. G. I. 23, *to be cut off from provisions.*

3. **liberāre, levāre, solvere**: **liberat Ītaliā rēgibus**, *he frees Italy from kings.*

NOTES.—1. With these verbs the Person From Whom is expressed by the Ablative with **ab**. The Thing or Place From Which is expressed by the Ablative alone or by the Ablative with **ab, dē, ex**, under classes 1 and 2, while class 3 takes the simple Ablative.

2. The Place From Which gives the Point of View from which a thing is regarded: **ab superiōre parte**, Caes. B. G. II. 18, *on the upper part*; **ab summō**, Caes. B. G. II. 18, *from the summit*; **ā tergō**, *in the rear.*

3. The following verbs always take the Ablative with **ab**:—

1. Compounds of **dīs** and **sē**; as **dīstinguere** and **sēparāre**.
2. The verbs **abhorrere, aliēnare, abaliēnare**.

237. 1. The Ablative of Separation is also used with verbs of Depriving and Lacking: **miles oculis privātus est**,

the soldier was deprived of his eyes; mortuī carent sēnsū, the dead are without feeling.

2. Adjectives of similar meaning also take this Ablative, but use *ab* with persons: *animus cūrīs vacuus, a mind free from cares; rēs pūblica nūda est ā magistrātibus, the state is without magistrates.*

NOTE.—*Indigēō* usually takes the Genitive: *arma, quōrum indigēbat, weapons, of which he stood in need.*

238. 1. **Ablative of Specification.**—This Ablative gives the precise point of view from which, or the feature in respect to which, a thing is considered: *animō ignāvus, coward of soul; hī omnēs linguā, institūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt, Caes. B. G. I. 1, all these differ from one another in language, customs, laws.*

Common expressions are: *māior nātū, older; minor nātū, younger; meā sententiā, in my opinion.*

In like manner the Ablative is found in such phrases as *ex lēge, according to law; ex mōre, according to custom.*

2. This Ablative is also found with *dignus, indignus, dignārī* (Active, *dignum iūdicāre*): *dignus est poenā, he deserves punishment.*

239. 1. **Ablative of Comparison.**—The Ablative of Comparison is used with Comparatives instead of *quam* with the Nominative or the Accusative, but generally only after a negative or its equivalent: *pater filiō doctior est, or pater doctior est quam filius, the father is wiser than the son; nihil est amābilius virtūte, there is nothing more lovable than virtue; celeriusque omnium opīniōne, Caes. B. G. II. 3, and more quickly than the expectation of everybody; quid est in homine ratiōne dīvīnius? in man what is more divine than reason?*

2. The Ablative cannot take the place of *quam* with the Accusative, if the reference would be vague: *Germanī gra-*

viōrēs hostēs sustinuērunt quam Rōmānōs, the Germans withstood worse enemies than the Romans (were).

On the other hand, when the word giving the point of view is a negatived relative, the Ablative must be used: **Phīdiae simulācris, quibus nihil in illō genere perfectius vidēmus, cōgitāre tamen possumus pulchriōra, the statues of Phidias, than which we see nothing more perfect in their class, still allow us to imagine those that are more beautiful.**

3. **Plūs, minus, amplius, longius**, are often used for **plūs quam, minus quam, etc.**: **in eō proeliō occidērunt minus duo mīlia cīvium, in that battle fewer than two thousand citizens were slain.**

ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHERE

240. 1. Ablative of Place. — Place Where is expressed by the Ablative, usually with **in**: **in collibus, on the hills; in equō, on horseback; in ancoris, at anchor.**

2. When the Ablative of Place contains also the added idea of Cause, Manner, or Means, no preposition is used: **bellō, in (and by means of) war; legiōnem silvis occultat, he conceals the legion in (and by means of) the woods.**

241. The following take the Ablative without a preposition: —

1. Names of Towns in the singular of the Third Declension and in the plural of all declensions: **hic Tibure nātus est, ille Gabiis, one was born at Tibur, the other at Gabii; Athēnis Cratippum audiēbam, I used to hear Cratippus at Athens.**

NOTE. — If **urbs** or **oppidum** is in apposition with the name of the town, **in** is used.

2. Substantives modified by **medius, middle, tōtus, cūctus, omnis, whole**: **carcer mediā urbe aedificātur, a prison is being built in the middle of the city.**

3. The expressions *terrā marīque*, *by land and sea*; *dextrā*, *on the right*; *laevā*, *sinistrā*, *on the left*; *locō* (usually with an attributive), *locīs* (always with an attributive): *nōn nullīs locīs*, *in some places*; *parte*, *partibus* (always with an attribute): *utrāque parte Tiberis*, *on each side of the Tiber*; *regiōne* (with a modifier), *region*.

242. 1. In the singular of the First and Second Declensions, names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Locative of the Place Where: *Rōmae rūs optās*, *at Rome you wish for the country*; *Lānuvii fuit*, *he was at Lanuvium*.

2. Other Locative forms are *domī*, *at home*; *humī*, *on the ground*; *bellī* and *mīlītiaē*, in the phrases *domī mīlītiaēque*, *in peace and in war*, *bellī domīque*, *at home and in the field*; and *rūrī*, *in the country*.

3. Appositions are regularly expressed by the Ablative with *in*: *mīlītēs Albae cōnstitērunt in urbe opportūnā*, *the soldiers halted at Alba, a conveniently situated town*.

243. 1. **Ablative of Time.** — Time When or Within Which is expressed by the Ablative of all words that really denote time, such as *tempus*, *aetās*, *pūctum temporis*, *hōra*, *diēs*, *mēnsis*, *annus*, *saeculum*, *vēr*, *aetās*, *nox*, *vīgilia*: *diē cōnstitūtā*, *Caes. B. G. I. 4*, *on the appointed day*.

2. Other words, as well as those denoting the time of life, if accompanied by a modifier, are put in the Ablative alone; if not modified, in the Ablative with *in*: *bellō Pūnicō secundō*, *in the Second Punic War*, but *in bellō*, *in war*; *prīmā pueritiā*, *in early youth*, but *in pueritiā*, *in youth*.

3. Time within which: *hīs paucīs diēbus*, *Caes. B. G. III. 17*, *within these few days*; *proximā nocte*, *Caes. B. G. III. 18*, *on the next night*.

NOTE. — Occasionally the Ablative denotes Duration of Time: *hōc tōtō proeliō*, *Caes. B. G. I. 26*, *throughout this whole battle*.

ABLATIVE OF THE THING WITH WHICH

244. Ablative of Accompaniment. — Accompaniment is expressed by the Ablative, usually with *cum*: *cum omnibus cōpiis* Caes. B. G. II. 29, *with all their forces*.

The preposition is sometimes omitted in military phrases: *omnibus cōpiis*, *with all his forces*.

245. Ablative of Manner. — The Ablative of Manner answers the question “How?” and is used only of abstract nouns.

Nouns modified by adjectives are usually in the simple Ablative, while those not modified by adjectives usually take the Ablative with *cum*: *hūc māgnō cursū contendērunt*, Caes. B. G. III. 19, *thither they came at full speed*; *vēnit cum celeritāte*, *he came with speed*.

Words like *modō*, *pactō*, *ritū* do not take in.

246. Ablative of Quality or Descriptive Ablative. — The Ablative of Quality is used without a preposition, and always has a modifier: *integrīs viribus militēs*, Caes. B. G. III. 19, *the soldiers with fresh strength*.

Instead of the Ablative of Quality, the Genitive may be used, usually in the singular, with the attributives *māgnus*, *tantus*, *summus*, *māximus*: *māgnī ponderis saxa*, Caes. B. G. II. 29, *stones of great weight*.

NOTE. — Expressions of Measure, Number, Time, Space, and Weight are put in the Genitive only; parts of the body in the Ablative only. In other cases, either the Genitive or the Ablative may be used.

247. 1. Ablative of Means. — The Means or Instrument is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition: *gladiō*, *with a sword*; *nāvibus trānsire*, Caes. B. G. IV. 17, *to cross on boats*.

2. The **Personal Agent** of a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with **ab**: **expectantur ab his cōplae**, *forces are awaited by them*; **quārum rērum a nostris fieri nihil poterat**, *Caes. B. G. III. 4, none of which things could be done by our men.*

For the Dative of the Agent, see 207.

3. The Person by Means of Whom is expressed by the Accusative with **per**: **per speculātōrēs certior factus est**, *he was informed through (not by) scouts.*

NOTES. — 1. **Nitor**, *I support myself*, and **frētus**, *supported (= relying on)*, take an Ablative of Means.

2. Note the following peculiar phrases: **proficisci pedibus**, *to go on foot*; **laccunt proeliō**, *they harass with strife*; **vincunt proeliō**, *they conquer in strife*; **sanguine pluisse senātui nuntiātum est**, *Cic. Div. II. 58, it was reported to the senate that it had rained blood*; **nāvi vehi**, *to sail*; **equō vehi**, *to ride*; **in equō**, *on horseback*; **ex equō pugnāre**, *to fight on horseback.*

248. The **Ablative of Measure or Degree of Difference** answers the question "By How Much?" It precedes Comparatives and comparative ideas; as **ante**, **post**, **infrā**, **suprā**, **citrā**, **ultrā**, **mālō**, **antecellō**, **praestō**, **superō**. Examples of these Ablatives are **quō**, **eō**, **quantō**, **tantō**, **multō**, **aliquantō**, **paulō**, **nihilō**: **biduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit**, *Caes. B. G. I. 47, two days afterward, Ariovistus sent ambassadors to Caesar.*

249. Time Before or After is expressed by the Ablative of Measure with a cardinal or ordinal numeral with **ante** or **post**: **tribus annis ante (post)**, or **tribus ante (post) annis**, *three years before (after)*; **aliquot diēbus ante**, *Caes. B. G. IV. 9, some days before*; **paucis ante diēbus**, *Caes. B. G. I. 18, a few days before*; **faciam idem, quod viginti annis ante Balbus fēcit**, *I shall do the same thing that Balbus did twenty years before.*

REMARK.—1. Note the phrases *multō, nōn multō, nōn ita multō, paulō, brevī, aliquantō*, with *ante* or *post*.

2. In answer to the question "How long before the present time?" we find the Ablative with the pronoun *hīc*, or the Accusative with *abhinc*: *hīs quattuor decem annīs*, or *abhinc annōs quattuor decem*, *fourteen years ago*.

250. Ablative with Verbs of Filling.—The Ablative is used with verbs of Filling, Abounding, and Equipping, and with a few adjectives of similar meaning: *Arīōn nōminis suī fāmā omnēs terrās implēverat*, *Arion had filled all lands with the glory of his name*; *Germānia rivīs flūminibusque abundat*, *Germany abounds in streams and rivers*; *homō praeditus auctōritāte*, *a man endowed with authority*.

251. Ablative of Price.—The Ablative is also used with verbs of Buying, Selling, Costing, Hiring, Renting, to indicate Price, whether definite or indefinite: *multō sanguine Poenīs victōria stetit*, *the victory cost the Carthaginians much blood*; *vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēpta*, *Caes. B. G. I. 18, taxes purchased at a small price*.

252. 1. This Ablative is used with *opus est*, *there is need*; the person feeling the necessity is put in the Dative: *auctōritāte tuā nōbīs opus est*, *we need your influence*.

2. If the thing needed is expressed by a neuter pronoun or an adjective, *opus est* is construed personally: *multa opus sunt*, *many things are needful*.

3. If the thing is expressed by a verb, the Infinitive or the Accusative with the Infinitive is used: *quid opus est tam multa dicere?* *what is the need of saying so much?*

253. Ablative with Verbs.—Here belongs the Ablative with *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and their com-

pounds: *eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō*, Caes. B. G. I. 5, *adopting the same plan*; *utī omnibus in vitā commodīs ūnā cum iis fru- antur*, Caes. B. G. III. 22, *that they enjoy with them all privileges in life*; *fungitur officiō*, *he discharges his duty*; *potiri imperiō*, Caes. B. G. I. 2, *to get control of the supreme power*; *vescitur cāseō*, *he feeds on cheese*.

254. Ablative of Cause. — The Ablative denotes Cause, chiefly with verbs of Emotion: *exercitus famē interiit*, *the army perished through hunger*; *fortūnā amici gaudeō*, *I rejoice in my friend's fortune*; *et eō magis*, Caes. B. G. I. 47, *and the more for this reason*; *his rēbus fiēbat*, Caes. B. G. I. 2, *because of these things it resulted*.

NOTES. — 1. **Ob** and **propter** with the Accusative are often used for the Ablative of Cause: *ob eās causās mūnitiōnī T. Labiēnum praefēcit*, *for these reasons he placed T. Labienus over the fortification*.

2. The Ablative with **prae** expresses a Preventing Cause: *prae gaudiō ubi sim nēsciō*, *I know not where I am for joy*.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

255. With an Ablative, a participle, an adjective, or another substantive may stand *predicatively*; that is, it may be expanded into a clause. This construction is commonly called the Ablative Absolute.

Usually this Ablative does not refer to the same person or thing as the subject or the object of the leading verb. It is grammatically absolute, but logically has a connection with the rest of the sentence. The Ablative Absolute may express Time, Cause, Condition, Concession, etc.

1. Time: *Caesar, expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ad hostēs contendit*, Caes. B. G. V. 9, *the troops having been landed, and a suitable location for the camp secured, Caesar hastened against the enemy* (= *when the*

troops had been landed, or having landed the troops, etc.); ille Cicerōne cōsule mortuus est, he died during Cicero's consulship; praecēpit nē sē absente pūgnāret, he instructed him not to fight during his absence.

2. Cause: **exiguā parte aestātis reliquā, Caesar in Britanniam proficisci contendit, Caes. B. G. IV. 20, a small part of the summer being left (= as only a small part of the summer remained), Caesar hastened to set out for Britain.**

3. Condition: **quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustias ire nōn poterant, Caes. B. G. I. 9, by which they could not go on account of the narrows, if the Sequani should be unwilling.**

4. Concession: **damnātus, quod sē vetante pūgnāset, condemned because he had fought, although forbidden by him.**

5. Attendant Circumstance: **Tarquinius bellum Rōmānīs intulit, auxilium eī ferente Porsenā, Tarquin made war on the Romans, Porsena lending him aid (= with the aid of Porsena).**

6. An Ablative of Attendant Circumstance, denoting *with, under circumstances of, under, at, etc.*, is sometimes explained as an Ablative Absolute with omission of the participle: **serēnō quoque caelō aliquandō tonat, sometimes also it thunders while the sky is clear; hanc urbem statuī malīs auspiciīs, I founded this city under unfavorable auspices.**

7. The Ablative Absolute may contain more than one of the above ideas: **acceptō aurō recessērunt, having received gold, they retired, = not only 'when they had received,' but also 'because they received' it.**

For the Ablative with prepositions, see 258.

THE NOMINATIVE

256. The Nominative is used as the subject of a finite verb (see 171) and as a predicate (see 174).

THE VOCATIVE

257. The Vocative is used in address, either with or without an interjection: **M. Tullii, quid agis?** Cic. Cat. I. 27. 6, *Marcus Tullius, what are you doing?*

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

258. Originally, prepositions were adverbs. Later, in connection with certain cases of nouns or in composition with verbs, they acquired a special use. The preposition and the verb are written in one word, but not the preposition and the noun. Many of these prepositions still retain an adverbial use also: **ante**, *previously*; **contrā**, *on the other hand*; **intrā**, *within*, etc.

1. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE ONLY

ad , <i>to, at</i>		iūxtā , <i>close by</i>
adversum }	} <i>opposite, towards</i>	ob , <i>on account of</i>
adversus }		penes , <i>in the power of (a person)</i>
ante , <i>before</i>		per , <i>through</i>
apud , <i>with</i>		post }
circum }	} <i>around</i>	pōne } <i>after</i>
circā }		praeter , <i>except, past</i>
circiter , <i>about (of number)</i>		prope , <i>near</i>
cis }	} <i>on this side</i>	propter , <i>on account of</i>
citrā }		secundum , <i>according to, close behind</i>
contrā , <i>against</i>		super }
ergā , <i>towards (a person)</i>		suprā } <i>above</i>
extrā , <i>outside</i>		trāns , <i>across</i>
Infrā , <i>below</i>		ūltrā , <i>beyond</i>
inter , <i>between</i>		versus , <i>against (follows its case)</i>
intrā , <i>within</i>		

NOTE. — **Usque**, *even*, is often prefixed to **ad** and **trāns**: **usque trāns montem**, *even across the mountain*.

2. WORDS USED AS PREPOSITIONS

Propior, propius, proximus, proximē, are sometimes used with the Accusative. They take also the Dative, or the Ablative with **ab**.

Prīdiē, postrīdiē, clam, and **usque** may take the Accusative. **Prīdiē** and **postrīdiē** take the Genitive also.

3. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ABLATIVE ONLY

ā	} <i>from, by</i>	prae , <i>in front of, because of</i>
ab (before vowels or h)		prō , <i>instead of, before</i>
abs (only before tē)	} <i>out of</i>	sine , <i>without</i>
cōram , <i>in the presence of</i>		tenus (follows its case), <i>as far as</i> (may take the Genitive also)
cum , <i>with</i>	} <i>out of</i>	procul and simul are sometimes used as prepositions and take the Ablative
dē , <i>from, of</i>		
ē		
ex (before vowels or h)		
palam , <i>in the presence of</i>		

NOTE. — **Cum** is enclitic with the personal pronouns **mē, nōbīs, tē, vōbīs, sē**, and usually with the relative and interrogative pronoun: **nōbīscum; quibuscum** or **cum quibus**.

4. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE ABLATIVE

In, in, on, into, until, and **sub, under, up to**, answering the question *Whither?* take the Accusative, and answering the question *Where?* take the Ablative.

THE VERB

259. **Noun-Forms**: Infinitive, Supine, Gerund.

Adjective-Forms: Gerundive, Present Active Participle, Future Active Participle, Perfect Participle Passive and Deponent.

THE INFINITIVE

260. Tenses of the Infinitive. — The tenses of the Infinitive denote time with reference to the verb on which they depend.

1. The Present Infinitive represents an act as *present* at the time of the verb on which it depends: **crēdō eum scribere**, *I believe that he is writing*; **crēdebam eum scribere**, *I believed that he was writing*.

NOTE. — **Dēbuit, oportuit, potuit**, with the Present (rarely the Perfect) Infinitive, represent the English *ought to have, should have, could have*: **oportuit venīre**, *he ought to have come*.

2. The Perfect Infinitive represents an act as *prior* to the time of the verb on which it depends: **crēdō eum scripsisse**, *I believe that he has written*; **crēdebam eum scripsisse**, *I believed that he had written*.

3. The Future Infinitive represents an act as *subsequent* to the time of the verb on which it depends: **crēdō eum scriptūrum esse**, *I believe that he will write*; **crēdebam eum scriptūrum esse**, *I believed that he would write*.

4. **Periphrastic Future Infinitive.** — In the passive voice, or if the verb has no participial stem, **futūrum esse** or **fore** with an *ut* clause is used instead of the Future Infinitive: **Rōmāni spērabant fore ut Gallī vincerentur**, *the Romans hoped that the Gauls would be conquered*.

This is more common than the so-called Future Passive Infinitive, **-um iri**.

NOTE. — A Future Perfect Passive (or Deponent) is formed by the Perfect Participle with **fore**: **crēdō eam laudātam fore**, *I believe that she will have been praised*.

261. Uses. — The Infinitive is an indeclinable neuter substantive, and stands to the finite verb of the sentence

in the relation of Subject or Object. It also implies verbal action, and may have a subject of its own and an object in the same case as the object of the finite verb from which it is formed. It may also be modified by an adverb. It has two uses, — as Complement and in Indirect Discourse. In its complementary use the Infinitive has two tenses, the Present and the Perfect, referring to *continuous* and *completed* action, respectively. The Present is the tense generally used in the Complementary Infinitive. The Perfect also expresses attainment.

262. The Infinitive as Subject is found with *esse* and various impersonal verbs, such as *piget, pudet, paenitet, taedet; decet, dēdecet; libet, licet; opus est, necesse est, oportet; dēlectat, iuvat; placet, displicet; praestat; interest* and *rēfert*: *māiōrī tamen partī placuit rei ēventum experīrī*, Caes. B. G. III. 3, *yet the majority determined to await the issue of the matter.*

263. The predicate noun used with the Subject Infinitive is in the Accusative: *senem ante tempus fierī miserum est, to become prematurely old is wretched.*

NOTE. — *Licet* allows the Dative of the Person: *mihi neglegentī esse nōn licet, I am not allowed to be negligent.*

264. The Infinitive as Object is used with auxiliary verbs denoting Will, Power, Duty, Habit, Resolve, Inclination, Continuance, End, etc., and their opposites, as *velle, malle, cupere; posse; dēbēre; incipere, instituere, coepisse; pergere, perseverāre; dēsinerē, dēsistere, intermittere, omittere; cōnārī, audēre; cunctārī, morārī; dubitāre, verērī; studēre, contendere, festināre, mātūrāre, properāre; neglegere, nolle, nōn cūrāre; cōgitāre, in animō habēre; statuere, cōstituere, dēcernere, cōnsillium capere, animum indūcere; aduēscere,*

adsuēfacere, cōnsuēscere, solēre; docēre, discere, and many others: **saltāre didicērunt,** Cic. Cat. II. 23. 28, *they have learned to dance.*

265. The Predicate Noun or Adjective with the Object Infinitive is in the Nominative: **omnēs student beātī fierī,** *all desire to become happy.*

ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE

266. The Subject of the Infinitive is in the Accusative. If the Infinitive with a Subject Accusative takes a predicate noun, this noun also is in the Accusative: **Thalēs Mīlēsīus aquam dīxit esse initium rērum,** Cic. N. D. I. 10. 25, *Thales of Miletus said that water was the first principle of things.*

The Accusative with the Infinitive may be the subject or the object of a sentence.

267. As Subject. — The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is found usually as the subject of impersonal verbs and expressions, such as **appāret, cōnstat, condūcit, expedit, prōdest, placet, displicet, oportet, interest; aequum, pār, iūstum est; apertum, manifestum, perspicuum est; fās, nefās, facinus, scelus est; fāma, opīniō, spēs est; necesse est, opus est; crēdibile, vērūm, vērī simile est; honestum, pulchrum, turpe, indignum est;** and impersonal passives of verbs of Thinking, Declaring, Perceiving, and the like, such as **intellegitur, nūntiātum est, putandum est,** etc.: **quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est,** Caes. B. G. I. 1, *which it is said that the Gauls hold; crēdibile est hominum causā factum esse mundum,* *it is likely that the world was made for the sake of men; lēgem brevem esse oportet,* *it is necessary that a law be brief; trādītum est Homērum caecum fuisse,* *it is reported that Homer was blind.*

NOTE. — **Oportet** and **neesse est** may take the Subjunctive: **mē ipsum amēs oportet**, *it is necessary that you love me myself*; **tū mihi concēdās neesse est**, Cic. *Sull.* 68. 16, *it is necessary that you grant me*.

268. As Object. — Verbs of Saying, Thinking, Knowing, Perceiving, and the like (**verba sentiendī et dēclārandī**) take as their object the Accusative and Infinitive. Some of the most common verbs are **sentiō**, **animadvertō**, **audiō**, **videō**; **accipiō**, **comperiō**; **cōgnōscō**, **intellegō**; **cōgitō**; **arbitror**, **cēnsēō**, **crēdō**, **dūcō**, **existimō**, **iūdicō**, **opinor**, **putō**; **spērō**, **suspīcor**; **sciō**, **nēsciō**, **ignōrō**; **meminī**, **recordor**, **oblīviscor**; **adfirmō**, **dīcō**, **negō**, **respondeō**, **scribō**; **fateor**, **dēclārō**, **dēmōnstrō**, **significō**; **simulō**, **dissimulō**; **narrō**, **trādō**; **doceō**, **ostendō**, and such phrases as **certiōrem faciō**, *inform*; **memoriā teneō**, *remember*; and **memoriae trādō** (**prōdō**), *hand down to memory*: **videō enim esse quōsdam**, Cic. *Cat.* I. 8. 8, *for I see that there are some*; **Ambarri Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre**, *Caes. B. G.* I. 11, *the Ambarri informed Caesar that they could not easily ward off the force of the enemy from their towns*.

269. If the verb of declaring has the force of an injunction, the Subjunctive with **ut** or **nē** is used: **ōrābant nē longius prōgredērētur**, *Caes. B. G.* IV. 11, *they asked that he would not advance further*.

NOTE. — But **iubeō** and **vetō** take the Present Infinitive.

270. Cēnsēō, meaning *to resolve, determine*, takes an **ut** clause: **senātus cēnsuit ut quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret Aeduōs dēfenderet**, *Caes. B. G.* I. 35, *the senate decided that whoever obtained the province of Gaul should defend the Aeduans*.

271. With *cernō*, *videō*, etc., the Participle is used to denote the immediate and actual action or condition of the object perceived: *vidī puerōs māgnō studiō ludentēs*, *I saw the boys playing with great zeal.*

272. Verbs of Hoping, Promising, and Swearing take the Accusative with the Future Infinitive, if the action is imminent. *Posse* and *velle* have a future force: *spērō tē ventūrum esse*, *I hope that you will come*; *spērō tē venīre posse*, *I hope you will be able to come.*

273. The Infinitive with the Accusative is the object: —

1. Of *nōlō*, *mālō*, *volō*, *cupiō*, when the subject of the Infinitive is not the same as the subject of the governing verb: *volō is esse quem tū mē esse voluisti*, *I wish to be such a man as you have wished me to be.*

But, even with the same subject, the Infinitive with the Accusative is used, if the fulfillment of the wish does not depend on the subject alone: *volō hōc facere*, *I wish to do this*; but *sapientem civem mē et esse et numerārī volō*, *I want to be and be considered a wise citizen.*

Volō and *nōlō* may take the Subjunctive: *quid vīs faciam?* *what do you wish me to do?*

2. Of *iubeō* and *vetō*. (See 269, Note.)

Where the name of the person on whom the command is laid is expressed, the Active Infinitive is used; where the name is omitted, the Passive Infinitive is used.

Accusative with Active Infinitive: *quemque domō cibāria efferre iubent*, *Caes. B. G. I. 5*, *they order each one to take supplies from home.*

Accusative with Passive Infinitive: *obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit*, *Caes. B. G. II. 5*, *he ordered hostages to be brought to him.*

3. Of *sinō* and *patior*: *Suēbī ad sē vīnum importārī omnīnō nōn sinunt*, Caes. B. G. IV. 2, *the Suevi do not allow wine to be imported to them at all.*

4. Of Verbs of Emotion, such as *gaudeō*, *doleō*, *mīror*, *admīror*, *indīgnor*, *queror*, *molestē* (*graviter*, *indīgnē*) *ferō*: *mīror tē ad mē nihil scribere*, *I wonder that you write me nothing*; *populī Rōmānī exercitum inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant*, Caes. B. G. II. 1, *they were vexed that the army of the Roman people was getting a foothold in Gaul.*

These verbs may also be followed by a *quod* clause, which is the only construction admissible with verbs of Praise, Censure, Thanks, etc.: *quod valēs gaudeō*, *I am glad that you are well*; *prīmum mihi grātiaē verbīs amplissimīs aguntur, quod . . . rēs pūblica māximīs periculīs sit liberāta*, Cic. Cat. III. 14. 7, *in the first place, thanks are rendered to me in most complimentary terms because the state has been saved from the greatest perils.*

5. The Infinitive may take the place of an Accusative with verbs that have two Accusatives: *filium equitāre docuī*, *I taught my son riding.*

274. Passive.—The Personal Construction (Nominative with Infinitive) is used with:—

1. The passive in all persons of *iubeō*, *vetō*, *sinō*, *videō*, *dīcō*, *putō*, *iūdicō*, *existimō*: *mīlitēs iubentur hōc facere*, *the soldiers are ordered to do this*; *tū vidēris beātus esse*, *you seem to be happy*; *lētītāvīsse Platōnem Dēmōsthenēs dīcitur*, *Demosthenes is said to have been in the habit of reading Plato.*

2. The passive of *ferunt*, *trādunt*, in the third person only: *quae nunc Samothrācia fertur*, Verg. Aen. VII. 208, *which is now called Samothrace.*

275. Exclamatory Infinitive. — The Accusative with the Infinitive, in an apparently absolute sense, is found in Exclamations or Questions expressing Sorrow, Scorn, Surprise, Disgust, etc., -ne often being attached to some word in the clause: **Tē nunc, mea Terentia, sic vērārī . . .!** Cic. Ep. Fam. XIV. 2. 13, *That you should be now thus harassed, my Terentia!* **Mēne inceptō dēsistere vīctam . . .?** Verg. Aen. I. 37, (*am*) *I, baffled, (to) give up my undertaking?*

276. Historical Infinitive. — The Present Infinitive takes the place of an Imperfect Indicative, and has its subject in the Nominative: **hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere**, Caes. B. G. III. 4, *at a given signal, the enemy ran down from all directions.*

POETICAL USES

277. 1. The Infinitive is found with **parātus, suētus**, and their compounds, though these words usually take the gerund or gerundive construction in prose: **adsuēfactī superārī**, Caes. B. G. VI. 24, *used to being conquered.*

2. In poetry and late Latin many adjectives take the infinitive: **cantārī dignus**, Verg. Ecl. V. 54, *worthy to be sung.*

3. In poetry, the Infinitive may denote Purpose: **tempus est abīre**, *it is time to go away.*

NOTE.—In most of these uses the infinitive is equivalent to a Dative of Purpose.

THE PARTICIPLE

278. The Participle partakes of the nature of the Adjective and of the Verb.

279. Tenses. — The time of the Participle is relative to the time of the verb on which it depends.

1. The Present Participle denotes action *contemporaneous* with that of the verb on which it depends: **tālia dīcentem Aenēān āversa tuštur**, Verg. Aen. IV. 362, *she gazes askance at Aeneas as he speaks thus*.

2. The Perfect Participle denotes action *prior* to that of the verb on which it depends: **hīs rēbus cōstitūtīs, in urbem redībō**, *when these matters shall have been settled, I shall return to the city*.

3. The Future Participle denotes an action *subsequent* to that of the verb on which it depends: **et sēsē medium iniēcit peritūrus in āgmen**, Verg. Aen. II. 408, *and, doomed to die, he flung himself into the midst of their ranks*.

280. The place of a Present Passive Participle is sometimes supplied by a Gerundive; in past time by **cum** with the Imperfect Subjunctive: **meō nōmine recitandō**, Cic. Att. IV. 1, *while my name was being read*.

281. The place of a Perfect Active Participle is supplied: —

1. By a clause, usually temporal: **quod ubi Caesar rescit**, Caes. B. G. I. 28, *when Caesar learned this (= Caesar having learned this)*.

2. By an Ablative Absolute (see 255): **alius aliā causā inlātā**, Caes. B. G. I. 39, *one, one cause being alleged; another, another (= one alleging, etc.)*.

3. By the Perfect Participle of a deponent verb: **Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus**, Caes. B. G. II. 5, *Caesar having encouraged the Remi*.

4. By a Perfect Passive Participle, agreeing with the object of the main verb: **hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās instrūxerant**, Caes. B. G. II. 8, *the enemy also had*

drawn up their forces, led out from the camp (= the enemy also, having led out their forces from the camp, had drawn them up, or the enemy had led out their forces from camp and drawn them up).

5. The Passive Participles of some deponents and semi-deponents may have the force of Present Participles: **secūtus hostēs**, *following the enemy*.

6. Sometimes the participle of a deponent has a passive force: **parum comitātus**, Cic. Cat. II. 4. 21, *slightly accompanied*.

USES OF THE PARTICIPLE

282. The Participle may modify a noun either attributively or predicatively.

Attributively: **in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem**, Caes. B. G. I. 1, *towards the north and the rising sun*.

Predicatively: This participle may be expanded into a clause, and may denote Time, Concession, Cause, Condition, and various other relations.

TIME: **Aristīdēs patriā pulsus Lacedaemonem fūgit**, *when Aristides was banished from his native land, he fled to Sparta*.

CONCESSION: **Miltiadēs capitis absolutus pecūniā multātus est**, *Miltiades, though acquitted of a capital charge, was mulcted in (a sum of) money*.

CAUSE: **Catilīna, metuēns prōditiōnem, ex urbe excessit**, *Catiline, fearing betrayal, fled from the city*.

CONDITION: **damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat, ut igni cremārētur**, Caes. B. G. I. 4, *if condemned, the punishment that he should be burned with fire was to follow*.

If there is no grammatical connection with the rest of the sentence, the Ablative is used; this is the Ablative Absolute.

283. The Future Active Participle is regularly used in its Periphrastic Conjugation, but often stands independently when it denotes *purpose*; but this is rare in classical Latin: *dēnsōs fertur moritūrus in hostēs*, Verg. Aen. II. 511, *resolved on death, he rushes into the crowds of the enemy.*

284. With *habeō* and *teneō*. — *Habeō* (less often, *teneō*) takes the Perfect Passive Participle in the predicative construction with a force almost equivalent to that of a Perfect or Pluperfect Indicative, but the idea contained in the participle is regarded as a *possession*: *quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat*, Caes. B. G. I. 9, *he wished to have as many states as possible attached to him by reason of his kindness*; *cōnstrictam iam hōrum omnium scientiā tenēri cōiūrātiōnem tuam nōn vidēs?* Cic. Cat. I. 1. 8, *do you not see that your conspiracy is now held fast bound in the knowledge of all these?*

285. Present Participle with Special Verbs. — 1. *Faciō*, *fiŋō*, *indūcō*, *mihi prōpōnō*, take the Present Active Participle when they mean to *represent*, *introduce*, etc., in the language of history, description, or the stage: *mihi prōposuī rēgnantem Lentulum*, Cic. Cat. IV. 12. 17, *I have pictured to myself Lentulus as reigning.*

2. *Videō* and *audiō* may also take the Present Participle in a predicate sense: *audiō tē clāmantem*, *I hear you calling.*

286. A noun and a Perfect Passive Participle in agreement with it are often used where an abstract noun and a limiting Genitive would be expected: *ante urbem conditam*, *before the foundation of the city.* But if the action is progressive or prospective, the Gerundive must be used. See 295. 2.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

287. The Gerund is a verbal noun; that is, it is a noun which has verbal uses. It usually *governs* other nouns.

The Gerundive is a verbal adjective; that is, it is an adjective which has verbal uses. It *agrees with* nouns.

288. The Gerund. — The Gerund is declined as a neuter singular noun of the Second Declension, but has neither Nominative nor Vocative. The Infinitive takes the place of the Nominative; and also of the Accusative when the Accusative is used without a preposition.

CASE USES OF THE GERUND

289. Genitive. — 1. With nouns: *mīlītēs pūgnandī finem fēcērunt*, *the soldiers made an end of fighting.*

2. With adjectives: *cupīdus sum scrībendī*, *I am desirous of writing.*

3. With *causā* or *grātiā*, denoting Purpose: *Germānī ad Caesarem vēnērunt suī purgandī causā*, *Caes. B. G. IV. 13*, *the Germans came to Caesar for the purpose of exculpating themselves.*

NOTE. — The Genitive of the personal pronouns is also used with the Genitive of the Gerund, as in the last example.

290. Dative. — The Dative of the Gerund is used as a Dative of Purpose, and is found with a noun, an adjective, or a verb: *locus pūgnandō idōneus erat*, *the place was suitable for fighting.*

NOTE. — The Dative of the Gerund cannot take a direct object.

291. Accusative. — The Accusative of the Gerund is used only with prepositions, *ad* and *in* being the most common:

nostrī ad pūgnandum convēnērunt, our men assembled to fight.

NOTES. — 1. The Accusative of the Gerund does not admit of an object.

2. The Infinitive takes the place of the Accusative without a preposition: **dīcit vidēre esse crēdere, he says that seeing is believing.**

292. Ablative. — The Ablative is used with a preposition or alone. The Ablative without a preposition denotes Cause, Means, Instrument: **mīlitēs pūgnandō fortēs fiunt, soldiers are made brave by fighting; lēx est rēcta ratiō in iubendō et vetandō, law is right rule in ordering and forbidding.**

NOTE. — The Ablative with a preposition does not admit an object. **Sine** is never used with the Gerund. **Ab, dē, ex, in** are common.

293. Nominative. — The place of the Nominative of the Gerund is taken by the Infinitive: **vidēre est crēdere, seeing is believing.**

294. Object of a Gerund. — Only the Ablative (without a preposition) and the Genitive of the Gerund admit an object. This object is in the same case as the object of the verb would be.

THE GERUNDIVE

295. 1. The Gerundive is a verbal adjective of the First and Second Declensions. It denotes Obligation or Necessity. Occasionally it is used attributively, but generally predicatively.

Attributively: **bellum agendum, war to be waged.**

Predicatively: 1. With **esse**, forming the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation: **Caesarī ūnō tempore omnia agenda**

erant, Caes. B. G. II. 20, *Caesar had to do everything at once.*

NOTE.—If the verb is intransitive, its Gerundive cannot have a personal use: **nōbīs eundum est**, *we must go.*

2. With **dō**, **trādō**, **mittō**, **prōpōnō**, **relinquō**, **concedō**, **accipiō**, **suscipiō**, **permittō**, **locō**, **condūcō**, **tribuō**, the Gerundive denotes the End to be Attained or the Object Effected: **mūrōs reficiendōs cūrāvit**, *he saw to repairing the walls.*

THE GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION

296. Usually the place of a transitive Gerund and its object is taken by a Gerundive and a noun with which the Gerundive agrees, the noun being put in the case of the Gerund which the Gerundive replaces.

Only transitive verbs and **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, and **potior** can be used in the Gerundive construction.

GERUND CONSTRUCTION

Caesar proelium committendī signum dedit, *Caesar gave the signal for beginning the battle.*

GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION

Caesar proeliī committendī signum dedit, *Caesar gave the signal for beginning the battle.*

297. The Gerundive construction is much more common than that of the Gerund with an object, and *must* be used, except in the Genitive, and in the Ablative without a preposition: **triumvirī colōniae dēdūcendae creatī sunt**, *a commission of three was appointed for leading out a colony* (here the Gerundive is used to avoid giving a direct object to the Dative of the Gerund); **quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant**, Caes. B. G. II. 1, *who had means for hiring men*; **in commemorandā calamitāte**, Caes. B. G. II.

28, *in recounting the misfortune*. (In these two examples the Gerundive is used to avoid giving a direct object to a Gerund used with a preposition.)

298. With neuter adjectives used as nouns, the Gerund is used to avoid ambiguity: *fēmina est studiōsa audiendī multa*, *the woman is desirous of hearing many things*.

299. In the Gerundive construction the Genitives *meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī*, have no distinction of gender or number: *multī principēs civitātis Rōmā nōn tam suī cōservandī quam tuōrum cōnsiliōrum reprimendōrum causā profūgērunt*, Cic. Cat. I. 7. 18, *many leading men of the state fled from Rome, not so much for the purpose of saving themselves as for thwarting your plans*.

300. The Dative of the Gerundive construction is common in certain phrases that have become formulas, such as *studēre, operam dare, labōrem impertīre, praeesse, diem dīcere, locum capere*; and in designations of official duty, such as *decemvirī lēgibus scribendīs, trēsvirī colōniae dēdūcendae, agris adsignandīs*.

THE SUPINE

301. The Former Supine, or Supine in *-um*, is used with verbs of motion to denote the purpose of the motion. Occasionally it takes an object: *Aeduī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxiliū*, Caes. B. G. I. 11, *the Aeduans send ambassadors to Caesar to ask aid*.

302. 1. The Latter Supine, or Supine in *-ū*, is an Ablative of Limitation, though by some explained as a Dative of Purpose. It is used with *fās, nefās, opus est, honestus, turpis, iūcundus, facilis, difficilis, incredibilis, mirābilis, optimus, ūtilis*, etc.

2. The Supines most commonly used are *audītū, visū, cōgnitū, dictū, factū, inventū, memorātū*: *miserābile visū*, Verg. Aen. I. 111, *miserable to be seen*.

NOTE. — *Facile cōgnitū, easy of understanding*, may be expressed as follows: 1. *rēs est facilis ad cōgnōscendū*; 2. *facile est rem cōgnōscere*; 3. *rēs facile cōgnōscitur*; 4. *rei cōgnitiō facilis est*.

TENSES

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

303. There are two things to be considered: —

The Time of the action, — Present, Past, Future.

The Kind of action, — Undefined, Continuous, Completed.

304. **Principal and Historical Tenses.** — Principal or Primary Tenses refer to the present or the future. They are the Present, Future, Perfect, and Future Perfect. Historical or Secondary Tenses refer to the past. They are the Imperfect, Historical Perfect or Aorist, and Pluperfect.

THE PRESENT

305. 1. Undefined: *dīcō, I speak*.

2. Continuous: *dīcō, I am speaking*.

3. Conative, denoting *attempted* action: *is ad plēbem P. Clōdium trādūcit*, Cic. Ep. Att. I. 18, *he tries to bring Publius Clodius over to the people*.

4. The Historical Present, used in lively narration for the Historical Perfect: *volat ille per āera māgnū*, Verg. Aen. I. 300, *he flew through the widespread air*.

5. The Gnostic Present denotes something that is always true: *virtūs et vitium inter sē differunt*, *virtue and vice differ from one another*.

6. With *iam diū, iam dūdum, iam pridem*, the Present moves back in time to a Perfect, but represents the action as still going on: *tē iam dūdum hortor*, Cic. Cat. I. 12. 31, *I have long been urging you.*

7. With the force of a Future immediately at hand: *cui rēs pūblica ā mē in manum trāditur*, Cic. Mur. III. 13, *into whose hand the state will be delivered by me.*

THE IMPERFECT

306. 1. The Imperfect denotes the continuance of an action in past time: *librum legēbam*, *I was reading a book.*

The Imperfect gives *details*, while the Historical Perfect sums up *results*: *Verrēs in Forum vēnit; ardēbant oculi; tōtō ex ore crūdēlitās ēminēbat*, Cic. Verr. V. 62. 161, *Verres came into the Forum; his eyes were blazing; cruelty was standing out from his whole countenance.*

2. The Conative Imperfect denotes attempted, interrupted, intended, or expected action: *num dubitās id mē imperante facere, quod iam tuā sponte faciēbās?* Cic. Cat. I. 13. 34, *do you hesitate to do at my order what you were already trying to do of your own motion?*

3. The Imperfect denotes habitual or repeated action: *certior fiēbat*, Caes. B. G. II. 1, *he was informed* (from time to time).

4. The Imperfect with *iam diū, iam dūdum, iam pridem*, refers to an act continuing in past time, but which had begun some time before: *ego māgnū in rē pūblicā versārī furōrem iam pridem vidēbam*, Cic. Cat. IV. 6. 19, *I had long seen that a widespread madness was abroad in the state.*

5. The Imperfect denotes the beginning of an action: *quō nunc ibās?* *whither now were you about to go?*

THE PERFECT

307. The Perfect has two uses:—

1. It denotes an action completed in present time (Present Perfect): *urbem praeclāram statuī, mea moenia vīdī*, Verg. Aen. IV. 655, *I have built a noble city, I have seen my walls arise.*

NOTE.—The Perfects *cōnsuevī, meminī, nōvī, ōdī*, emphasize the state that results from the completion of an act, and have the force of Presents: *I am accustomed, I remember, I know, I hate.*

2. It is the usual tense of narration (Historical Perfect or Aorist): *dēcrēvit quondam senātus*, Cic. Cat. I. 4. 1, *formerly the senate decreed.*

3. The Historical Perfect (rather than the Imperfect) is used with a negative, or with a definite number. With a negative it means *did not*, while the Imperfect means *would not*, implying resistance to pressure: *nōn dīxit, he did not speak; nōn dīcēbat, he would not speak.*

308. Poetical Uses of the Perfect.—1. Instantaneous action: *incubuere marī*, Verg. Aen. I. 84, *at once they settle on the deep.*

2. A general truth (Gnomic Perfect): *nēmo repentē fuit turpissimus*, Juv., *no one suddenly becomes very base.*

THE PLUPERFECT

309. The Pluperfect denotes an action completed in past time: *Helvētīī id, quod cōstituerant, facere cōnantur*, Caes. B. G. I. 5, *the Helvetians attempted to do that which they had decided on.*

THE FUTURE

310. 1. Undefined: *dīcam, I shall speak.*

2. Continuous: *dīcam, I shall be speaking.*

THE FUTURE PERFECT

311. The Future Perfect denotes completed action in future time: *dīxerō, I shall have spoken.*

Latin is much more exact than English in the use of the Future and the Future Perfect in subordinate clauses. If the leading verb is Future, and the subordinate verb is *contemporaneous* with it, the subordinate verb is Future also; but if the subordinate verb is *antecedent* to it, then this subordinate verb is in the Future Perfect.

REPEATED ACTION

312. When two actions are repeated *contemporaneously*, both are put in the Present, Imperfect, or Future Indicative; when one is repeated *before* the other, it is put in the Perfect, Pluperfect, or Future Perfect Indicative. So also with Indefinite Relatives *quisquis, quicumque*, etc.

EPISTOLARY TENSES

313. In letters, the writer often uses a tense as it will appear to the reader, and so uses the Imperfect and the Perfect for the Present, and the Pluperfect for the Perfect: *ex itinere scribēbam, I am writing on the journey; ego cōstitueram venīre in Puteolānum, I have determined to go to my seat at Puteoli.*

The writer may also use the adverb of the reader; that is, he may use the adverb or the adverbial expression which would be appropriate to the reader: *prīdiē Idūs Febr. haec scripsī ante lūcem; eō diē apud Pompōnium . . . eram cēnātūrus, Cic. Ep. Q. F. II. 3. 7, I am writing this on the day before the Ides of February; I am this day to sup with Pomponius. (In this sentence we should expect hōc for eō.)*

In English the same principle appears in the use of *come* for *go*, the writer transferring himself to the time of the receiver. Thus the writer of a note may say, "I will *come* to your house to-morrow."

314. TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

	Continuous	Completed
Principal or Primary	Present	Perfect
Historical or Secondary	Imperfect	Pluperfect

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

315. Principal (Primary) tenses are followed by Principal; Historical (Secondary) by Historical: that is, if the verb of the main clause is in a Principal tense, the verb of the dependent clause is in a Principal tense; if Historical, the verb of the dependent clause is Historical.

Principal Sequence:—

Cōnsul videt quid faciās, *the consul sees what you are doing.*

Cōnsul vidēbit quid faciās, *the consul will see what you are doing.*

Cōnsul viderit quid faciās, *the consul will have seen what you are doing.*

Cōnsul videt quid fēceris, *the consul sees what you have done.*

Cōnsul vidēbit quid fēceris, *the consul will see what you have done.*

Cōnsul viderit quid fēceris, *the consul will have seen what you have done.*

Cōnsul vīdit quid faciās, *the consul has seen what you are doing.* (Rare.)

Cōnsul vīdit quid fēceris, *the consul has seen what you have done.* (Rare.)

Historical Sequence: —

Cōnsul vidēbat quid facerēs, *the consul saw what you were doing.*

Cōnsul vīdit quid facerēs, *the consul has seen (saw) what you were doing.*

Cōnsul vīderat quid facerēs, *the consul had seen what you were doing.*

Cōnsul vidēbat quid fēcissēs, *the consul saw what you had done.*

Cōnsul vīdit quid fēcissēs, *the consul has seen (saw) what you had done.*

Cōnsul vīderat quid fēcissēs, *the consul had seen what you had done.*

PECULIARITIES OF SEQUENCE

316. 1. The Historical Present (**305. 4**) is usually considered a historical tense: **Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, ad exercitum proficīscitur**, *Caes. B. G. IV. 6, Caesar set out for the army that he might not meet with a very serious war.*

2. In Result clauses (with **ut, quī, quīn**) the Present and Perfect Subjunctive occasionally follow Historical tenses: **Alexander cum nullō unquam hoste congressus est quem nōn vicerit**, *Alexander never fought with any enemy whom he did not conquer.* But after verbs of Happening, such as **accidit, fit, contigit**, the Imperfect is always used.

The Imperfect is regularly used to denote a result as *continuous or permanent*.

3. A clause depending on a dependent clause takes the secondary sequence, if the main verb will allow: **quod expectāvī iam sum adsecūtus ut vōs omnēs factam esse apertē confūratīōnem contrā rem publicam vidērētis**, Cic. Cat. II. 6. 1, *I have at last obtained what I have been waiting for; namely, that you should all see clearly that a conspiracy has been made against the state.*

4. The Perfect Indicative is usually historical: **ut urbi sine vestrō mōtū satis esset praesidiī cōnsultum atque prōvisum est**, Cic. Cat. II. 26. 3, *care has been taken and provision made that there should be ample guard for the city without any movement on your part.*

5. If a dependent Subjunctive gets its time from an Infinitive that depends on a verb of Saying or Thinking, the Subjunctive usually takes its tense from the verb of Saying or Thinking: **videor ostendere quālēs deī sint**, *I seem to show of what nature the gods are.*

6. But, with a Perfect Infinitive, the Subjunctive is usually put in the Imperfect or the Pluperfect: **videor ostendisse quālēs deī essent**, *I seem to have shown of what nature the gods are.* (In this sentence **ostendisse** represents a Perfect Indicative in the direct discourse, and is therefore followed by a secondary tense.)

REPRESENTATIONS OF THE FUTURE IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

317. 1. In sentences of Purpose, after verbs of Fearing, and when the point of time has already been designated, the Future of the Subjunctive is supplied as follows: By the Present or the Imperfect Subjunctive, according to the law of Sequence of Tenses: **valdē timeō nē patria pereat**, *I am very much afraid that our country will perish; Cicerō*

negat, si nātūram ducem sequāmur, unquam nōs aberrātūrōs, Cicero says that we shall never go astray, if we follow nature as a leader ; Cicerō negābat, si nātūram ducem sequerēmur, unquam nōs aberrātūrōs, Cicero said that we would never go astray, if we followed nature as a leader.

2. The Future Perfect is supplied by the Perfect or the Pluperfect Subjunctive, according to the law of Sequence of Tenses : **Caesar prōmittit sē hōc factūrum esse, ubi primum ad tē vēnerit, Caesar promises that he will do this as soon as he comes to you ; Caesar prōmisit sē hōc factūrum esse, ubi primum ad tē vēnisset, Caesar promised that he would do this as soon as he came to you.**

3. Where the Point of Time has not already been designated, or where it is to be made very definite, the Present or the Imperfect of the Active Periphrastic Subjunctive is used, if the verb has a Future Participle : **nōn dubitō quīn hanc rem cōfectūrus sis, I do not doubt that you will finish this affair ; nōn dubitābam quīn hanc rem cōfectūrus essēs, I did not doubt that you would finish this affair.**

This is most common in Indirect Discourse.

NOTE.—If the verb is in the Passive, or has no Future Participle, there is no regular Periphrastic form, but the Present or the Imperfect Subjunctive with **mox, iam, brevī, postea, statim** is used : **nōn dubitō quīn haec res brevī cōficiātur, I do not doubt that this will be finished in a little while.**

MOODS

THE MOODS IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

THE INDICATIVE

318. 1. The Indicative represents the statement as a reality, or asks a direct question : **puer librum legit, the boy reads the book ; legitne ? does he read ?**

2. The Indicative is used in expressions of Power, Possibility, Obligation, Necessity: **possum haec negāre**, *I might deny this*.

3. The Indicative is used with such Impersonal expressions as **decet**, **longum est**, **aequum est**, etc.: **nōn aequum est haec negāre**, *it would not be just to deny this*.

THE IMPERATIVE (Negative **nē**)

319. The Imperative is the mood of Command, its tone ranging from positive injunction to piteous entreaty: **ēgre dere ex urbe**, *depart from the city*. **Nē** in classic prose is found only with the Future Imperative: **hominem mortuum in urbe nē sepelitō nēve ūritō**, Cic. Leg. II. 23. 58, *thou shalt not bury nor burn a dead man in the city*; **nē percipite ea** (poetical), *do not notice that*.

320. **Tenses**. — There are two forms of the Imperative, the Present and the Future. The Present Imperative has only the second person; the Future has the second and the third. The Future differs from the Present only in being a little more formal, and is regularly used in laws and treaties. When it occurs elsewhere, the command is made in a formal or authoritative way.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE

321. **Hortatory Subjunctive** (Negative **nē**). — The Hortatory Subjunctive is used in commands, exhortations, entreaties.

1. In the Present, first person plural: **moriāmur**, **et in media arma ruāmus**, Verg. Aen. II. 353, *let us die and dash into the thickest of the fray*.

2. In the Present, third person singular and plural: **exeant**, **proficiscantur**, **nē patiantur dēsideriō sui Catilinam**

miserum t̄abēscere! Cic. Cat. II. 6. 6, *let them depart, let them set forth, let them not permit poor Catiline to waste away through longing for his followers!* *illā sē iactet in aulā* *Aeolus!* Verg. Aen. I. 140, *let Aeolus strut in that court of his!*

3. Occasionally in the second person singular Present with an indefinite *you* (172. 5) as subject: *quidquid agis, pr̄denter agās et respice finem*, *whatever you do, do prudently, and look to the end.*

4. Prohibition is expressed by the second person of the Perfect Subjunctive with *nē*: *nē h̄oc f̄eceris*, *don't do this.* Prohibition is also expressed by *nōī* with the Infinitive or *cavē nē* with the Subjunctive: *nōī h̄oc facere*, or *cavē nē h̄oc faciās*, *don't do this.*

322. Summary of Imperative Constructions. — 1. For the first person use the Present Subjunctive.

2. For the second person, if positive, use the Present Imperative; if negative, use *nē* with the Perfect Subjunctive, *nōī* with the Present Infinitive, or *cavē nē* with the Subjunctive.

3. For the third person, if positive, use the Present Subjunctive; if negative, use *nē* with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive.

323. Concession. — Concession may be expressed by the Subjunctive, the Present for present time and the Perfect for past time: *antepōnātur Pompēius omnibus*, Cic. Cat. IV. 21. 21, *let Pompey be placed above all; d̄ixerit, suppose him to have said.*

324. The Deliberative Subjunctive is used in questions that express doubt or that are asked simply for effect, the Present referring to present time and the Imperfect to

past time. The negative is *nōn*: *quid agam?* *what must I do?* *quid agerem?* *what was I to do?* *what should I have done?*

NOTE.— In short questions the Indicative may be used. The test for a Deliberative Subjunctive is to see what the answer would be. If the answer would be an Imperative, use the Subjunctive in the question.

325. Optative Subjunctive (Negative *nō*).— The Subjunctive is used in Wishes: the Present and Perfect if the decision is in suspense; the Imperfect and Pluperfect if the decision is adverse; the Imperfect for present time and the Pluperfect for past time. The Present often takes *utinam*; the Imperfect and the Pluperfect always take *utinam*, or some other particle of wishing. The Perfect is rare: *utinam tibi istam mentem dī immortalēs duint!* Cic. Cat. I. 22. 4, *may the immortal gods give you such a purpose!* *utinam tibi istam mentem dī immortalēs darent!* *O that the immortal gods would give you such a purpose!* *utinam tibi istam mentem dī immortalēs dedissent!* *would that the immortal gods had given you such a purpose!*

NOTE.— As an introduction to the Optative Subjunctive we have *velim*, *nōlim*, *mālim*, *vellem*, *nōllem*, *māllem*: *velim redeat*, *may he return*; *vellem redisset!* *O that he had returned!*

326. Asseverations.— Similar to this is the Subjunctive in Asseverations: *ita mē dī ament, ut ego nunc nōn tam meā causā laetor quam illius*, *may the gods so love me as I now rejoice, not so much on my own account as his.*

327. Potential Subjunctive (Negative *nōn*).— The Potential Subjunctive represents the speaker's opinion as an *opinion*. The tone varies from surmise to certainty. This Subjunctive is sometimes taken as the apodosis of a con-

dition whose protasis is omitted, but usually there is no definite ellipsis. The Present or Perfect is used for present time; the Imperfect for past time: *hōc Ithacus velit*, Verg. Aen. II. 104, *the Ithacan would wish this*; *forsitan requirās*, Verg. Aen. II. 506, *perhaps you may ask*; *maesti militēs — crēderēs victōs — rediērunt in castra*, *the soldiers returned to the camp in sadness — you would have thought them conquered*.

NOTE.—The Imperfect is used of only a few verbs, such as *dīcere*, *crēdere*, *putāre*, *vidēre*, *cernere*, and only then with the imaginary you as a subject: *putārēs*, *one might have thought*.

MOODS IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

PURPOSE CLAUSES (FINAL CLAUSES)

328. Purpose Clauses express Purpose or Design. Their verb is in the Subjunctive. In pure Purpose Clauses, purpose is suggested by the introductory particle, *ut* affirmative and *nē* negative: *ede ut vivās*, *eat that you may live*; *hōc dīcō nē fallāris*, *I say this that you may not be deceived*.

For the Relative Clause of Purpose, see **322. 3**.

329. *Ut nē* is a more emphatic form for *nē*. Often, however, it is simply pleonastic: *senātus dēcernēbat ut ante, quam rogātiō lāta esset, nē quid agerētur*, Cic. Ep. Att. I. 14, *the senate decreed that nothing should be done before the bill was passed*.

330. If the second of two purpose clauses is negative, it is usually introduced by *nēve* (*neu*): *veniam ut tuae pristinae virtūtis memoriam retineās neu perturbēris animō*, *I shall come that you may retain the memory of your former valor, and not be disturbed in mind*.

331. **Quō** introduces a clause containing a comparative: **quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant**, *Caes. B. G. I. 14, that men may grieve all the more from a change in their circumstances.*

332. The purpose of the *mention* of the action suggests a stronger statement while declining to make it: **ac nō longum sit**, *Cic. Cat. III. 10. 1, and not to be lengthy.*

In this construction the Infinitive cannot be used, as in English.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE (COMPLEMENTARY FINAL CLAUSES)

333. A Substantive Clause is one that denotes some case-relation with a verb, usually that of subject or object. In these clauses the idea of purpose is suggested by the verb on which the purpose clause depends.

Substantive clauses of Purpose are used with verbs of Asking, Demanding, Encouraging, Admonishing, Advising, Commanding, Urging, Permitting; such as **rogō, orō, petō, precor, obsecrō; postulō, flāgitō; hortor, adhortor, cohortor; moneō, admoneō; suādeō, persuādeō; mandō, ēdicō, imperō, praecipio; impellō, incitō, moveō, permoveō, adducō; concēdō, permittō.** The subordinate clause here may be considered as coming from an Imperative of Direct Discourse.

1. Clause as Subject: **hīs persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat**, *Caes. B. G. II. 10, these could not be persuaded to delay longer and not carry aid to their friends; ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret*, *Caes. B. G. I. 22, as he had been ordered by Caesar, not to join battle.*

2. Clause as Object: **cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē finibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent**, *Caes. B. G. I. 2, he persuaded*

the state to leave their territory with all their forces; **Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar addūceret**, Caes. B. G. I. 42, *Ariovistus demanded that Caesar should not bring any foot-soldier to the interview.*

3. Apposition: **mea lēnitās hōc exspectāvit, ut id, quod latēbat, ērumperet**, Cic. Cat. II. 27. 20, *my forbearance has had this in view, namely, that that which was concealed might burst forth.*

NOTE. — **Iubeō**, *I command*, and **vetō**, *I forbid*, take the Infinitive.

334. Substantive clauses of Purpose are used with verbs of Wishing, Caring for, Striving, Bringing about, Obtaining; such as **optō**; **cūrō**, **prōspiciō**, **prōvideō**; **contendō**, **labōrō**; **faciō**, **efficiō**, **perficiō**; **adsequor**, **cōsequor**, **impetrō**: **cūrā ut valeās**, *see to it that you keep well*; **sē id contendere et labōrāre nē ea ēnūntiārentur**, Caes. B. G. I. 31, *that they were striving and toiling that those things should not be made known.*

335. Verbs of Hindering, Preventing, etc., take the Subjunctive with **nē** and **quō minus** (also written **quōminus**), when positive; they have **quō minus** or **quān** when negative. The most usual of these verbs are **impediō**, **dēterreō**; **obsistō**, **resistō**, **obstō**, **repugnō**, **interdicō**; **caveō**; **recūsō**: **impedior dolore animi nē plūra dicam**, *by grief of mind I am prevented from saying more*; **nāvēs ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent**, Caes. B. G. IV. 22, *the ships were prevented by the wind from coming into the same harbor.*

336. With expressions of Fearing, the Subjunctive is used with **nē** affirmative, and **ut** or **nē nōn** negative; regularly **nē nōn** is used after a negative or an interrogative with a negative force: **nē eius suppliciō Divitiaci animum**

offenderet verēbātur, Caes. B. G. I. 19, *he was afraid that by punishing him he would wound the feelings of Divitiacus*; **timeō ut sustineās**, *I fear that you cannot stand it*; **timēre nōn dēbeō nē nōn iste illā cruce dignus iūdicētur**, Cic. 2 Verr. V. 171, *I ought not to fear that he will not be considered worthy of that cross.*

RESULT CLAUSES (CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES)

337. Result Clauses show the Consequence or Tendency of an action.

In pure Result clauses, tendency is suggested by the particles **ut**, **ut . . . nōn**, and **quān** (**quān** after a negative).

For the Relative Clause of Result, see **382. 4.**

338. The principal clause often contains correlative demonstratives, such as **tālis**, **tantus**, **tot**, **tam**, **tantopere**, **totiēns**, **is**, **ita**, **sīc**, **eō**, **adeō**, **usque eō**: **in eō statū rēs nostrae sunt ut nōn possint esse miseriōrēs**, *our affairs are in such shape that they cannot be worse*; **atque haec omnia sīc agentur ut bellum sēdētur**, Cic. Cat. II. 28. 1, *and all this shall be so managed that the war shall be stopped.*

339. Result clauses are common after a comparative with **quam** meaning *too*: **clārior rēs erat quam ut tegī ac dissimulārī posset**, *the matter was too clear to be covered up and concealed.*

340. Result clauses also depend on the impersonal **tantum abest (āfuit)**: **tantum abest ab eō ut malum mors sit ut verear nē hominī sit nihil bonum aliud**, Cic. Tusc. I. 76, *so far is death from being an evil that I fear man has no other blessing.*

The forms of **absum** in this construction are generally impersonal.

SUBSTANTIVE RESULT CLAUSES (COMPLEMENTARY
RESULT CLAUSES)

341. Here the tendency is suggested by the verb on which the clause depends. These clauses usually depend on verbs of Effecting. The negative is *nōn* or *nē*.

Substantive clauses of result are used: —

1. With verbs of Causation: *facere, efficere, perficere; adsequi, cōsequi; prōficere, impetrāre, valēre, committere, tenēre, adipisci, praestāre, ferre* (with *cōsuētūdō, nātūra, fortūna*), *adferre, adiuvāre, expugnāre, extorquēre, exprimere: nātūra adfert ut eīs faveāmus, nature causes us to favor them.*

2. With verbs of Compelling, Permitting, and impersonal verbs of Happening and Following; with impersonal phrases similar in meaning to these verbs: *cōgere, adigere, impellere, dūcere* and its compounds; *movēre, commovēre; permittere, sinere, concēdere, dare; fit, accidit, contingit, obtingit, evenit, sequitur; additur, accēdit, restat, reliquum est, appāret; rārum est, vērī simile est*, and many others: *hōc certā de causā nōndum addūcor ut faciam, Cic. Cat. I. 5. 29, for a certain reason, I am not yet induced to do this; vērū concēdō tibi ut ea praetereās, but I permit you to pass over this; accidit ut esset lūna plēna, Caes. B. G. IV. 29, it happened that the moon was full; accēdit eōdem ut etiam ipse candidātus tōtum animum atque omnem cūram, operam dīligentiamque suam in petitiōne nōn possit pōnere, Cic. Mur. 45. 1, to this is added that not even the candidate himself can give all his attention and all his care, his personal exertion and diligence, to his canvass; an vērī simile est ut cīvis Rōmānus aut homō liber quisquam cum gladiō in Forum dēscenderit ante lūcem? Cic. Sest. 78. 16, or is it likely that a Roman citizen or any free man would have resorted to the Forum, weapon in hand, before daylight?*

3. With verbs and phrases of Hindering, Preventing, Refusing, Delaying, Doubting, etc., the Complementary Result Clause is used with *quān* and *quō minus*. *Quān* is used after a negative: *neque abest suspiciō quān ipse sibi mortem cōnsciverit*, Caes. B. G. I. 4, *and suspicion is not lacking that he committed suicide*; *nōn dubitō quān brevī sit Trōia peritūra*, *I do not doubt that Troy will soon be destroyed*; *negārī nōn potest quān turpius sit fallere quam falli*, *it cannot be denied that it is more disgraceful to deceive than to be deceived*; *nōn esse dubium quān tōtius Galliae plūrimū Helvētīū possent*, Caes. B. G. I. 3, *that there was no doubt that the Helvetians were the most powerful of all Gaul*; *neque recūsātūrōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum dīciōne atque imperiō essent*, Caes. B. G. I. 31, *and that they would not refuse to be under their control and power forever*.

NOTE. — *Dubitō* with the Infinitive generally means *to hesitate*: *dubitās vitāre*, Cic. Cat. I. 17. 20, *do you hesitate to avoid?*

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

342. **General Principle.** — If the Temporal Clause simply defines the *time* of the action of the clause on which it depends, it takes the Indicative; but if the *circumstances* of the action are also implied, the verb of the Temporal Clause is in the Subjunctive. This may be taken as a general rule, subject to many exceptions.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH *postquam*, *ut*, ETC.

343. Temporal Clauses introduced by *ut*, *ubi*, *quandō-que*, *quandōcumque*, *postquam*, *simul ac* (*simul atque*), and other conjunctions, take the Indicative, as the clauses are

merely temporal: *postquam id animum advertit*, *Caes. B. G. I. 24, after he directed his attention to this.*

1. The Perfect or the Historical Present is used of a *single act*: *ut Catilina paucis ante diebus erupit ex urbe*, *Cic. Cat. III. 3. 25, when Catiline broke forth from the city a few days ago.*

2. The Perfect often has the force of a Pluperfect: *simul atque adsedit partem istam subselliōrum nudam atque inanem reliquerunt*, *Cic. Cat. I. 16. 10, as soon as you had taken your seat, they left that part of the benches bare and empty.*

3. The Pluperfect is used of repeated acts; also with *postquam* referring to a single act, if the interval of time is specified: *ut quisque istius animum offenderat, in lautumias statim coniciēbatur*, *2 Verr. 5. 143, whenever any one had given him offense, he was at once thrown into the quarries*; *Hannibal tertio anno postquam domo profugerat, in Africam rediit*, *Hannibal returned to Africa the third year after he had fled from home.*

4. The Imperfect is used of overlapping action; *i.e.* of action continued into the time of the principal clause: *ubi nemo obvius ibat, ad castra hostium tendunt*, *when (they found that) no one was coming to meet them, they proceeded to the camp of the enemy.*

TEMPORAL CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY *cum*

344. Following the general principle for Temporal Clauses, *cum* with a strictly temporal force takes the Indicative, while circumstantial *cum* takes the Subjunctive.

345. *Cum* referring to the Present or the Future takes the Indicative: *cum suis finibus eos prohibent*, *Caes. B. G.*

I. 1, *while they are keeping them off from their borders*; **dē hīs rēbus, ōtiōsī cum erimus, loquēmur**, *we will speak about these matters when we are at leisure.*

346. **Cum** with the Indicative (Past Time) is used:—

1. To fix the point of time: **cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Aedui**, *Caes. B. G. VI. 12, when Caesar came into Gaul, the Aeduans were leaders of the one faction.*

2. With an Iterative force: **et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt ex essedīs dēsiliunt**, *Caes. B. G. IV. 33, and whenever they have worked their way between the troops of cavalry, they leap down from their chariots.*

NOTE.—In Livy the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are common with this force.

3. When **cum** is put in what is logically the main clause: **vix ea fātus erat cum scindit sē nūbēs**, *Verg. Aen. I. 586, scarcely had he said this, when the cloud burst.*

347. **Cum** Circumstantial with the Subjunctive (Imperfect and Pluperfect) describes the time by natural events, *when, while, as soon as*: **ipsī comprehēnsī ad mē, cum iam dilūcēsceret, dēdūcuntur**, *Cic. Cat. III. 6. 4, they themselves, having been arrested, were brought before me when day was just beginning to dawn.*

348. **Cum** Historical, in narration, describes the occasion or circumstances of an action: **Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII milibus abesset, . . . ad eum lēgātī revertuntur**, *Caes. B. G. IV. 11, when Caesar was not more than twelve miles distant from the enemy, the ambassadors returned to him.*

NOTE.—The Imperfect and Pluperfect are the only tenses used; the Imperfect for contemporaneous, the Pluperfect for antecedent action.

Often, however, the Subjunctive is used where the idea is chiefly temporal, the circumstantial idea being involved to only a slight degree, if at all: *cum esset Caesar in citiōre Galliā, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur*, Caes. B. G. II. 1, *while Caesar was in hither Gaul, frequent rumors were brought to him*. In this the *cum*-clause seems to be purely temporal.

In past time *cum* takes the Subjunctive much more frequently than the Indicative. In Caesar the proportion is more than 10 to 1.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH *antequam*, *dum*, ETC.

349. *Antequam*, *priusquam*, *dōnec*, *dum*, and *quoad*, introducing clauses merely temporal, take the Indicative, but where *purpose* is implied they take the Subjunctive.

350. *Antequam* and *priusquam* take the Indicative to denote an actual fact: *antequam ad sententiam redeō dē mē pauca dīcam*, Cic. Cat. IV. 20. 1, *before I return to the motion, I shall say a few words about myself*; *nec prius ille est relictus locus quam finis est pūgnandī factus*, *nor was that position abandoned before an end was made of fighting*.

NOTE.—*Antequam* and *priusquam* are often written as in the last sentence.

351. *Antequam* and *priusquam* take the Subjunctive if the action is purposely anticipated; or, after a negative, purposely awaited: *antequam dē rē publicā dīcam, expōnam cōnsillium*, *before I speak of the state, I will set forth my plan*; *Gallī nōn prius ducēs dīmittunt quam ab hīs sit con-*

cessum arma utī capiant, Caes. B. G. III. 18, *the Gauls did not send away the chieftains before the latter had consented to take up arms.*

1. The Imperfect Subjunctive is often found with a Historical tense: **priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Divitiacum vocārī iubet**, Caes. B. G. I. 19, *before he risked anything, he ordered Divitiacus to be summoned.*

352. **Dum**, *while*, takes the Indicative, usually the Historical Present: **dum Caesar morātur lēgātī vērunt**, Caes. B. G. IV. 22, *while Caesar delayed, the ambassadors came.*

353. **Dum**, *as long as*, may take any tense: **ille erat ūnus timendus ex istīs omnibus, sed tam diū, dum urbis moenibus continēbātur**, Cic. Cat. III. 16. 9, *he alone was to be feared of all those, but only so long as he was held in by the walls of the city.*

354. **Dum, dōnec, and quoad**, *until*, take the Indicative to denote an actual event; the Subjunctive to denote anticipation or expectation: **pūgnāvērunt hostēs dum dux interfectus est**, *the enemy fought until their leader was slain; dum hostēs veniant, morābor*, *I shall wait until the enemy come.*

CAUSAL CLAUSES

355. **Cum** Causal takes the Subjunctive: **quae cum ita sint, Catilīna, perge quō coepistī**, Cic. Cat. I. 10. 1, *since this is the case, Catiline, go whither you started.*

356. **Quandō** takes the Indicative: **quandō hōc miserius esse nihil potest, omittam**, *since nothing can be more wretched than this, I will pass it over.*

357. **Quod, quia, quoniam** take the Indicative when the writer or speaker states the reason on his own authority;

the Subjunctive, when he refuses to be held accountable for it and refers it to some one else. This is the Subjunctive of Repudiated Statement: **graviter eōs accūsāt quod ab iis nōn sublevētur**, Caes. B. G. I. 16, *he bitterly censures them because (as he claims) he was not assisted by them*; **doleō quia dolēs**, *I am grieved because you are*.

358. A hypothetical reason takes the Subjunctive; the real reason, the Indicative: **pugilēs ingemiscunt, nōn quod doleant, sed quia omne corpus intenditur**, Cic. Tusc. II. 23, *boxers groan, not because they are in pain, but because the whole body is put to the stretch*.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH *quod*

359. These clauses take the Indicative. They are usually found:—

1. In apposition with **hōc, id, illud, eō, ex eō, inde**, etc.: **ex tōtā laude Rēgulī illud est admirātiōne dignum, quod captīvōs retinendōs cēnsuit**, *of all the praise paid Regulus this is worthy of admiration, that he voted for keeping the captives*.

2. With **facere, fit, accidit, ēvenit**, modified by **bene, male, commodē, opportunē**: **bene facis, quod litterās voluptātibus antepōnis**, *you do well in preferring letters to pleasures*.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

360. A Conditional or Hypothetical sentence contains two clauses: the Condition or Protasis (the *if*-clause), and the Conclusion or Apodosis (the *then*-clause): thus, **sī hōc dīcis, errās**, *if you say this, you are in error*, is a conditional sentence, of which **sī hōc dīcis** is the condition and **errās** the conclusion.

361. **Conditional Particles.**—**Sī, if**, is the usual particle. The negative of **sī** is **nisi** or **sī nōn**; **sī nōn** being used to

negative a single word, and **nisi** to negative the entire condition.

1. **Si nōn** is usual when the condition is concessive, or when the affirmative form of the same verb as that of the conclusion precedes: **si nōn moderātē, at certē populārīter**, Cic. *Sest.* 37. 24, *if not with moderation, at least in the interests of the people*; **ēdūc tēcum etiam omnēs tuōs**; **si minus, quam plūrimōs**, Cic. *Cat.* I. 10. 4, *lead out with you also all of your followers*; *if not all, as many as possible.*

NOTE. — **Minus** takes the place of **nōn** where the verb is not repeated.

2. **Nisi** adds an exception or a restriction to the leading clause, and is common after negatives; it is often strengthened by **forte, vērō**: **nisi vērō si quis est**, Cic. *Cat.* II. 6. 3, *unless, indeed, there is some one*; **et iam diū nihil tē iūdicat nisi dē parriōidiō suō cōgitāre**, Cic. *Cat.* I. 17. 26, *and (your country) has for a long time been of opinion that you think of nothing save her destruction.*

3. **Sin** excludes the preceding condition; it is often strengthened by **autem, aliter, minus, vērō, secus**: **hunc mihi timōrem ēripe**; **si est vērū, nē opprimar**; **sin falsus, ut tandem aliquandō timēre dēsīnam**, Cic. *Cat.* I. 18. 40, *take away from me this fear*; *if it is true, that I may not be crushed*; *but if false, that I may finally cease to fear.*

CLASSES OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

362. There are three classes of Conditional Sentences: Logical, Ideal, Unreal.

363. **Logical Condition (Condition of Fact or Probability).** — 1. This is by far the most common condition. It refers to the past, the present, or the future. The

condition is stated as a fact, positive or negative, or as a probability.

Mood: Indicative in both clauses. Tense: Any.

SĪ hōc dīcis, errās, if you say this, you are in error; sĪ peccāvī, insciēns peccāvī, if I did wrong, I did so unwittingly; sĪ hōc dīxeris, errābis (errāveris), if you say this, you will be in error.

2. The condition may take the indefinite *you* of the Subjunctive Present or Perfect, with the force of an Indicative: (*senectūs*) *plēna est voluptātis, sĪ illā sciās ūtī, Sen. E. M. 12. 4, (old age) is full of pleasure, if you know how to use it.*

3. The conclusion may be an Imperative or an independent Subjunctive: "*dēsilitē,*" inquit, "*militēs, nisi vultis aquillam hostibus prōdere,*" *Caes. B. G. IV. 25, "leap down," said he, "soldiers, unless you wish to betray the standard to the enemy."*

4. The Future Perfect in the conclusion is rare. When used, it implies that the action of its verb will be completed at the same time as that of the condition, although the latter began first: *sive hōc statueritis, dederitis mihi, Cic. Cat. IV. 11. 1, if you adopt this, you will at once give me.*

364. Ideal Condition (Condition of Possibility).— This is the least common of the conditions. It refers to future time and denotes possibility. From the standpoint of the English, it may be generally recognized by *were to* or *should* in the condition.

Mood: Subjunctive. Tense: Present. Sometimes the Perfect is used (to denote completed action).

SĪ hōc dicās, errēs, if you were to say this, you would be mistaken; haec sĪ tēcum, ita ut dīxī, patria loquātur, nōnne

impetrāre dēbeat? Cic. Cat. I. 19. 1, *if your fatherland should talk with you, just as I have said, ought she not to obtain her request?*

365. The Latins often use the Ideal Condition where the contents of the sentence would indicate the Unreal. All depends upon the view of the speaker or writer, or his choice in the form of presentation.

The Imperative and the Future Indicative are often found in the conclusion, where the idea of futurity is to be made prominent.

366. Unreal Condition (Condition Contrary to Fact).— Here the condition is represented as unreal, impossible, contrary to fact.

Mood: Subjunctive in both clauses. Tense: Imperfect for present time; Pluperfect for past time.

Servi mehercule mei si me isto pacto metuerent, ut te metuunt omnes civis tui, domum meam relinquendam putarem, Cic. Cat. I. 17. 13, *by Hercules, if my slaves feared me as all your fellow-citizens fear you, I would think that I ought to leave my home; at si hoc idem P. Sestius dixissem, mihi senatus vim et manus intulisset,* Cic. Cat. I. 21. 30, *but if I had said this same thing to Publius Sestius, the senate would have laid violent hands on me.*

367. The Imperfect Subjunctive, denoting a *continuous* act or state, sometimes refers to the past: *ego si hoc optimum factum iudicarem, unius usuram horae gladiatoris isti ad vivendum non dedissem,* Cic. Cat. I. 29. 3, *if I had thought (and still thought) that this were best to be done, I would not have given that bully the use of one hour of life.*

368. The conclusion may be in the Imperfect or Perfect Indicative, in expressions of Ability, Obligation, Necessity,

Desirability, Propriety, the Imperfect referring to both present and past time: *dēlērī potuit exercitus, sī quis aggredī ausus esset*, *the army could have been destroyed, if any one had dared to attack it.*

369. The Indicative of either Periphrastic Conjugation may be used in the conclusion: *nisi vīnum dēfēcisset, multō plūra et graviōra dictūrī fuimus*, *if the wine had not given out, we would have said a great many more and more serious things.*

370. Mixed Conditions.— Often the condition is of one class, the conclusion of another: *nōs autem fortēs virī satis facere rei pūblicae vidēmur, si istius furōrem ac tēla vitēmus*, Cic. Cat. I. 2. 17, *but we, brave men! seem to be doing enough for the state, if we avoid his fury and weapons (= the fury of his weapons).* Here we have the Subjunctive in the condition, the Indicative in the conclusion. *Quōs quidem ego sī ullō modō fierī possit, nōn tam ulcisci studeō*, Cic. Cat. II: 17. 5, *these indeed, if it can be done in any way, I desire not so much to punish.* Here we have the Subjunctive in the condition, the Indicative in the conclusion; but the meaning of *studeō* conveys *contingency*.

371. Incomplete Conditional Sentences.— Sometimes the conditional particle is omitted: *ūnum cōgnōris, omnēs nōris*, (*if*) *you know one, you know all.*

372. The condition is expressed in a word or a phrase: *sic dēnique victor . . . mittēre*, Verg. Aen. III. 439, *thus at length you shall be sent as victor.* Here *sic* = *sī id fēcēris, if you do this.* *Ut explorātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultisque conlētis, quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt*, Caes. B. G. III. 18, *as if victory were assured, collecting fagots and twigs with which to fill up the trenches of*

the Romans, they advanced against the camp. (Here the condition is expressed in the Ablative Absolute, *explōrātā victōriā.*)

373. Some other word may take the place of the particle: *haec āra tuēbitur omnēs, aut moriēre simul*, Verg. Aen. II. 523–4, *this altar shall protect us all, or (= if not) you shall die with us.*

374. To assign any condition in English to its proper class, consider the following table:—

Past	Present	Future
Logical	Logical	Logical
Unreal	Unreal	Ideal

Observe that in past or present time, if the action is not *contrary to fact*, the condition is Logical; for the future, unless the protasis has *were to* or *should*, the condition is Logical.

To recognize a condition in Latin when complicated by Indirect Discourse, remember that the Logical is the most common. The sense will generally make it plain, if it is Unreal. The Ideal is the least common, and is less definite than the Logical.

375. Conditional Clauses of Comparison.—The conclusion is omitted in comparisons with *ac sī, ut sī, quam sī, quasi, tamquam sī, velut sī, tamquam, velut, ceu, as if*:—

Mood: Subjunctive. Tense: usually determined by the sequence rather than the apparent condition: *loquor quasi ego illud fēcerim*, Cic. II. Verr. 1. 29, *I speak as if I had done that*; *respondit tamquam sī esset cōsul, he replied as if he were consul.*

376. Proviso (Negative nē).—*Dum, modo, and dum modo*, with the Subjunctive, denote a Proviso: *dīcatur*

sānē electus esse ā mē, dum modo eat in exsilium, Cic. Cat. II. 15. 16, *for all I care, let him be said to have been cast out by me, provided he goes into exile.*

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

377. Concession may be expressed by the Hortatory Subjunctive: **sit Scīpiō clārus**, Cic. Cat. IV. 21. 13, *grant that Scipio is famous.*

378. 1. The clauses usually known as Concessive clauses are more properly Adversative clauses, and are introduced by **licet, quamvis, ut, nō, cum, etiam sī, etsī, tametsī, quamquam**, with the general sense of *although*. They are regularly followed by a *yet*-clause, the whole statement being that *a certain thing follows, despite the occurrence of something that has a tendency to prevent it*. In these clauses **ut** often means *but so that*, **ita** being usually expressed either in the principal clause or at the beginning of the **ut**-clause: **ut tamen artum solveret hospitīis animum**, Hor. Bk. II. Sat. VI. 82, *yet not without opening his close breast in acts of hospitality.*

2. **Licet, quamvis, ut, nō**, take the Subjunctive; but **quamvis** with the Indicative is common in Horace and late prose: **licet fremant omnēs, ego nōn tacēbō**, *though all complain, I shall not keep silent.*

NOTE. — **Quamvis** with the positive of an adjective or adverb denotes a *high pitch*: **itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatōrum equitum quamvis paucos adire audent**, Caes. B. G. IV. 2, *and so, no matter how few in number, they dare attack any number of cavalry with housings.*

3. **Etiam sī** takes both the Indicative and the Subjunctive, but the Subjunctive is the more common.

4. **Etsi** and **tametsi** usually take the Indicative, but sometimes the Subjunctive.

5. **Quamquam** usually takes the Indicative.

NOTE. — In principal clauses **quamquam** has a *corrective* force, modifying a previous statement that is too strong or intensifying one that is too weak. It is translated *and yet*. **Tametsi** has a like use.

6. **Cum** Concessive takes the Subjunctive: **cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit**, Caes. B. G. I. 26, *though the battle lasted from the seventh hour until evening, no one could see an enemy's back*.

379. The Future sometimes has a concessive force: **excūdent alii spīrantia mollius aera**, Verg. Aen. VI. 847, *others may fashion images of brass that breathe more gently*.

RELATIVE CLAUSES

380. Relative clauses are introduced by relative pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs. The relative clause, when used simply as an adjective, takes the Indicative: **virum canō qui in Ītaliā vēnit**, Verg. Aen. I. 1, *I sing of the hero who came into Italy*.

381. Iterative relatives and relatives used with an iterative force take the Indicative: **quae sārari poterunt quācumque ratiōne sārābō**, Cic. Cat. II. 11. 41, *what can be healed I will, by all possible means, heal*.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES

382. When the clause implies Concession, Cause, Purpose, Result, Characteristic, the Subjunctive is used: —

1. CONCESSION: **Nomadumque petam cōnūbia quōs sim totiens iam dēdignāta maritōs?** Verg. Aen. IV. 536, *and shall*

I seek marriage with the Numidians whom I have so often spurned as suitors?

2. CAUSE: *infēlix quī nōn spōnsae praecepta furentis audierit!* Verg. Aen. II. 345, *unfortunate in not listening to the warnings of his inspired betrothed!*

NOTE. — The causal force is intensified by *ut, utpote, as, quippe*, namely.

3. PURPOSE: *equitātum praemittit quī videant*, Caes. B. G. I. 15, *Caesar sent forward cavalry to see.*

4. RESULT: *turrēs tōtō opere circumdedit quae pedēs LXXX inter sē distārent*, Caes. B. G. VII. 72, *around the whole work he placed towers which were eighty feet apart.*

NOTE. — In a result clause, the relative is equivalent to *ut* with a demonstrative or a personal pronoun.

5. CHARACTERISTIC: *habēs ubi ostentēs*, Cic. Cat. I. 26. 18, *you have an opportunity to display.*

383. Characteristic. — The usual ideas are those of Character or Fitness, the thought seeming to be that the relative attaches some permanent characteristic to the antecedent. The Subjunctive (consecutive) is the regular mood: —

1. With a definite antecedent where the character is emphasized. This is regularly the case with *dīgnus, indīgnus, aptus, idōneus, is, tālis, ēiusmodī, tam, tantus, ūnus, sōlus*: *nōn tū is es quī hōc nēsciās*, *you are not the man to be ignorant of this*; *Caesar idōneus esse vidētur quī rem publicam administret*, *Caesar seems to be a suitable man to manage the state.*

2. With an indefinite antecedent or its equivalent: *sunt quī putent*, *there are some who think.*

3. After comparatives with *quam*, as an object clause: *quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adicī pos-*

set, Caes. B. G. II. 21, *because the enemy were not more than a javelin's throw away.*

4. After a negative or an interrogative that implies a negative answer, *quīn* is often used for *quī nōn*: *quis est quīn cernat quanta vīs sit in sēnsibus?* *who is there that does not see how much force there is in the senses?* *nēmō erat quī nōscīret,* *there was no one who did not know.*

5. Here belong such phrases as *quod sciam,* *so far as I know.*

QUESTIONS

DIRECT QUESTIONS

384. Questions are asked by interrogative pronouns and adverbs, or by interrogative particles. The mood of the question is the mood of the answer that is expected or suggested.

1. A Sentence-Question relates to the action itself, and can be answered by *yes* or *no*.

2. A Word-Question has an interrogative word, and cannot be answered by *yes* or *no*.

3. A Rhetorical Question does not expect an answer; it makes a statement in the form of a question.

385. 1. Interrogative Particles. — In a Sentence-Question the enclitic *-ne* is attached to the emphatic word. It usually suggests nothing as to the nature of the answer: *tūne huic crēdis?* *do you believe this fellow?*

2. *-ne* is sometimes equivalent to an emphatic *nōnne*: *meministine mē dicere?* Cic. Cat. I. 7. 8, *do you not remember that I said?*

3. *Nōnne* expects an affirmative answer; it usually comes first in the sentence. If there are several parts to the question, *nōn* is used in all save the first: *nōnne hunc*

in vincla dūcī, nōn ad mortem rapī, nōn summō suppliciō mactārī imperābis? Cic. Cat. I. 27. 12, *will you not order this man to be put into chains, to be hurried away to death, to be put to death with the most severe torture?*

4. **Num** expects a negative answer; it comes first in a sentence: *num mē fefellit?* Cic. Cat. I. 7. 12, *did it escape me?*

5. **An** introduces the second part of a disjunctive question; that is, a question giving a choice between two, while **aut** gives the continuation of a simple question. The first part of this disjunctive question may be gotten from the context, or it may be expressed, *utrum* or *-ne* being the particle: *vōsne vērō L. Domitium an vōs Domitius dēseruit?* Caes. B. C. II. 32, *indeed did you desert Lucius Domitius or did Domitius desert you?* (this implies that one or the other is true); *timēsne Pompēium aut Caesarem?* *do you fear Pompey or Caesar?* (this does not necessarily imply that you fear either of them); *an vērō P. Scipiō T. Gracchum interfēcit?* Cic. Cat. I. 3. 20, (*am I wrong,*) *or did Publius Scipio slay Tiberius Gracchus?*

NOTE. — *Or not* is expressed by **an nōn**: *isne est quem quaerō an nōn?* *is he the man I am looking for or not?*

386. 1. The answer "Yes" is expressed: —

(1) by repeating the emphatic word: *audīsne mē?* — **Audiō**, *do you hear me?* — *Yes.*

(2) by *ita, ita est, ita vērō est, etiam, factum, vērū, sãnē, sãnē quidem*, etc.

2. "No" is expressed by repeating the emphatic word with **nōn, minimē, minimē vērō**, etc.: *sōlus vēnistīne?* — **Nōn sōlus**, *did you come alone?* — *No.*

NOTE. — **Immō** conveys a correction, and either removes a doubt or heightens a previous statement, — *yes indeed, nay rather.*

387. 1. **Peculiarities.** — **Quid** is often used alone, to indicate surprise or indignation, or to draw attention to what follows, which is usually a question: **quid?** Cic. Cat. I. 8. 23, *what (do you think of this statement I am about to make)?*

2. **Quid enim**, in Cicero, is used after a general statement to introduce a refutation of an objection, and is always followed by a question: **sī ista aegritūdō perturbāre animū sapientis nōn potest, nūlla perturbātiō poterit. Quid enim? Metusne conturbet?** *if such sickness cannot disquiet the mind of a wise man, there can be no disquiet. What then? Shall fear annoy?*

3. **Ut** in direct questions is colloquial: **ut valēs?** *how is your health?*

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

388. Indirect Questions are substantive clauses that depend on verbs of Asking, Saying, Knowing, etc. They are introduced by interrogative pronouns and adverbs. Mood: Subjunctive: **quis sim, sciēs ex eō quem ad tē misī,** Cic. Cat. III. 12. 40, *who I am you shall learn from him whom I have sent to you.*

389. It is important to distinguish in English between a dependent Interrogative and a Relative clause. In the case of the Interrogative, the whole clause is the object (or subject) of the leading verb; in a Relative clause the antecedent of the Relative is the object (or subject) of the leading verb. An Interrogative clause involves a direct question; a Relative does not.

	Interrogative	Relative
<i>Who</i>	quis	quī
<i>What</i>	quid	quod
<i>When</i>	quandō	cum, ubi

390. The same interrogative particles are used as in the direct question :—

1. **Num** means *whether*: **interrogās mē num in exsilium** (supply **tē ire iubeam**), Cic. Cat. I. 13. 35, *you ask me whether (I order you to go) into exile.*

2. **Sī**, *whether*, is used after verbs and sentences denoting Attempt and sometimes after verbs of Asking: **Aenēās petit Anthea sī quem iactātum ventō videat**, Verg. Aen. I. 181, *Aeneas strives (to see) if he can see anything of Antheus tossed by the storm; sī posset praebere rogātus, Hor. Ep. I. 6. 41, *being asked if he could furnish.**

3. *Or not* is expressed by **necne**, but an **nōn** is the more common if the latter alternative contradicts the former: **dī utrum sint necne sint quaeritur**, Cic. N. D. III. 17, *the question is whether there are gods or not.*

4. **An** is used with **haud sciō**, **nēsciō**, **đubitō**, **incertum est**, to express the probable alternative, the improbable alternative being omitted: **nēsciō an amplius mihi negōtīf contrahātur**, Cic. Cat. IV. 9. 6, *probably more trouble is being prepared for me.*

NOTE.—The interrogative may be in a participial clause: **quam ūtilitātem petentēs scīre cupimus illa quae occulta nōbīs sunt**, Cic. Fin. III. 11. 37, *seeking what good do we desire to know what is hidden from us (= what good do we seek that we, etc.).*

5. Expressions like **nēsciō quis**, *some one (I know not who)*, are sometimes used like indefinite pronouns and do not affect the construction.

6. Two or more interrogatives may be used in the same sentence: **quem sī interficere voluisset, quantaē quotiēs occāsiōnēs quam praeclārae fuērunt**, *and if he had wished to kill him, what great opportunities there were, how excellent, how often!*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

(ŌRĀTIŌ OBLĪQUA)

391. Direct Discourse (**Ōrātiō Rēcta**) gives the speaker's exact language, while Indirect Discourse gives the substance:—

DIRECT

Hīs Caesar ita respondit:
“Hōc mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur, quod eās rēs quās vōs, lēgātī Helvētīī, commemorāstis memoriā teneō.”

To them Caesar replied as follows: “For this reason I have less hesitation, because I remember the things which you, Helvetian ambassadors, have mentioned.”

INDIRECT

Hīs Caesar ita respondit:
“Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētīī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret.”

To them Caesar replied as follows: “That for that reason he had less hesitation, because he remembered the things which the Helvetian ambassadors had mentioned.”

NOTES.—1. Sometimes the verb of saying is not expressed.

2. **Negō** is used for **dīcō nōn**.

3. For Verbs of Fearing, see **336**.

4. For **dubitō** with negative or interrogative, see **341. 3**.

MOODS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

392. Declarative Sentences.—When a change is made from the Direct to the Indirect Discourse, after a verb of Saying, Thinking, or Knowing, the clause which was the principal clause in the Direct Discourse takes its verb in the Infinitive (with a Subject Accusative), while the subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive.

DIRECT

Caesar hōc fēcit, *Caesar did this.*

Agrum dābō in Ītaliā, Āfricā, Hispāniā, ubi quisque volet.

I will give land in Italy, Africa, Spain, wherever each one wishes it.

INDIRECT

Dicō **Caesarem** hōc fēcisse, *I say that Caesar did this.*

Agrum respondet sēsē datūrum esse in Ītaliā, Āfricā, Hispāniā, ubi quisque velit.

He replies that he will give land in Italy, Africa, Spain, wherever each one wishes it.

NOTES.—1. The conjunction *that* of English is not translated in Latin.

2. The Infinitive is sometimes found in a relative clause, when the relative is felt as a principal clause, and may be replaced by a demonstrative with a coördinating conjunction.

3. Explanatory subordinate clauses are not considered as part of the Indirect Discourse, and do not change their mood: **videō duās adhūc esse sententiās, ūnam D. Silāni, quī cēnset eōs, quī haec dēlēre cōnātī sunt, morte esse multandōs**, Cic. Cat. IV. 7. 1, *I see that so far there are two opinions, one that of Decimus Silanus, who proposes that those should be put to death who have attempted to destroy this city (cōnātī sunt is explanatory).*

393. Imperative Clauses (Principal).—Imperatives and Imperative Subjunctives take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, **nē** being the negative: **imperāvit ut obsidēs redderet**, *he ordered that he should return the hostages.* (In the Direct Discourse, **redde.**)

NOTES.—1. **Iubeō** and **vetō** take the Present Infinitive.

2. Use **vetō** instead of **iubeō nōn.**

394. Interrogative Clauses (Principal).—An Indirect (or Dependent) Question takes the Subjunctive: **quid proximā, quid superiōre nocte ēgeris, ubi fueris, quōs convocāveris, quid cōnsilii cēperis, quem nostrum Ignōrāre arbitrāris?** Cic. Cat. I. 1. 9, *who of us do you think does not*

know what you did last night, what you did the night before, where you were, whom you assembled, what plan you formed?

395. Rhetorical Questions. — If the verb of the rhetorical question was in the Indicative in the Direct Discourse, in changing to the Indirect the first and third persons are put in the Infinitive, while the second person is put in the Subjunctive:—

DIRECT

Quod si veteris contumēliae oblivisci **volō**, num etiam recentium iniuriarum memoriam dēpōnere **possum**?

But if I am willing to forget the old insult, can I also lay aside the remembrance of fresh wrongs?

Quid tandem **verēbimini**?
Why, pray, should you fear?

INDIRECT

Rogāvit, quod si veteris contumēliae oblivisci **vellet**, num etiam recentium iniuriarum memoriam dēpōnere **posse**.

He asked if he could also lay aside the remembrance of fresh wrongs, if he were willing to forget the old insult.

Rogāvit quid tandem **verērentur**. *He asked why, pray, they should fear.*

TENSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

396. For tenses of the Infinitive, see **260**; for tenses of the Subjunctive, apply the law for Sequence of Tenses.

397. In Indirect Question. — 1. If the Direct Discourse had the Present Indicative, the Indirect has the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive.

2. If the Direct had the Perfect Indicative, the Indirect has the Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive

3. If the Direct had the Future Indicative, the Indirect has *-ūrus sim* or *-ūrus essem*.

398. In Subordinate Clauses. — 1. If the Direct Discourse had the Present Indicative, the Indirect has the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive.

2. If the Direct had the Perfect Indicative, the Indirect has the Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive.

3. If the Direct had the Future Indicative, the Indirect has the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive.

4. If the Direct had the Future Perfect Indicative, the Indirect has the Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive.

GENERAL RULES FOR CHANGING TO INDIRECT DISCOURSE

399. 1. All verbs, pronouns, and possessive adjectives in Indirect Discourse are of the third person.

2. *Hic* usually changes to *ille*, and *nunc* to *tum*.

3. The first person plural is retained when it refers to the Roman people (see *Caes. B. G. I. 44*).

4. The reflexive subject of the Infinitive must be expressed: *mē, tē, nōs, vōs, sē*: *dīcō mē valēre*, *I say that I am well*; *dīcis tē valēre*, *you say that you are well*; *dīcit sē valēre*, *he says that he is well*.

PARTIAL OBLIQUITY (INFORMAL INDIRECT DISCOURSE)

400. The subordinate clause of Indirect Discourse may occur when the principal clause is merely implied, or is not expressed in the usual way (Infinitive); this is common after verbs of Fearing and as part of an Indirect Question: *Themistoclēs nocte ambulābat quod somnum capere nōn posset*, *Themistocles used to walk about at night, because (as he said) "he could not sleep."*

401. SPECIMEN OF THE CHANGE OF ŌRĀTIŌ OBLĪQUA
INTO ŌRĀTIŌ RĒCTA

INDIRECT

Māgnoperē ōrābant ut **sibi** auxilium **ferret**, quod graviter ab Suēbīs **premerentur**; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus reī publicae **prohibērētur**, exercitum modo Rhēnum **trānsportāret**: **id sibi** ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis **futūrum**: tantum **esse nōmen** atque **opiniōnem** eius exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ūltimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, ut opiniōne et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī tūtī esse **possint**, Caes. B. G. IV. 16.

They earnestly begged that he would render them aid, because they were hard pressed by the Suebi; or if he was prevented from doing that by matters of state, that he would at least transport his army across the Rhine: that that would be enough for aid and hope for the future: that the name and reputation of his army was so great, even to the most remote tribes of the Germans, since Ariovistus had been beaten and

DIRECT

Nōbis auxilium **fer**, quod graviter ab Suēbīs **premur**; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus reī publicae **prohibēberis**, exercitum modo Rhēnum **trānsportā**: **hōc nōbis** ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis **erit**: tantum **est nōmen** atque **opiniō tuī** exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ūltimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, ut opiniōne et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī tūtī esse **possimus**.

Bear aid to us, because we are hard pressed by the Suebi: or, if you are prevented from doing that by matters of state, at least transport your army across the Rhine: this will be enough for aid and hope for the future: so great is the name and reputation of your army, even to the most remote tribes of the Germans, since Ariovistus has been beaten and this last battle fought, that we can be safe by the reputation

this last battle had been fought, of the friendship of the Roman that they could be safe by the reputation of the friendship of the Roman people.

CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Logical Conditions

402. Condition: Subjunctive, the tense depending on the law of the Sequence of Tenses.

Conclusion: Indicatives become corresponding Infinitives:—

DIRECT

SĪ peccō, insciēns peccō, if I am doing wrong, I do so unwittingly.

SĪ hōc crēdēbās, errāvisti, if you believed this, you were in error.

SĪ id crēdēs, errābis, if you believe that, you will be in error.

SĪ id crēdideris, errābis, if you believe that, you will be in error.

INDIRECT

Dīcō, sĪ peccem, mē inscientem peccāre.

Dīxī, sĪ peccārem, mē inscientem peccāre.

Dīcō, sĪ hōc crēderēs, tē errāvīsse.

Dīxī, sĪ hōc crēderēs, tē errāvīsse.

Dīcō tē, sĪ id crēdās, errātūrum esse.

Dīxī tē, sĪ id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.

Dīcō tē, sĪ id crēdideris, errātūrum esse.

Dīxī tē, sĪ id crēdidissēs, errātūrum esse.

Ideal Conditions

403. Condition: Subjunctive, the tense depending on the law of Sequence of Tenses.

Conclusion: Becomes Future Infinitive.

Sī id crēdās, errēs, if you were to believe that, you would be in error.

Dicō tē, sī id crēdās, errātūrum esse.

Dixī tē, sī id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.

Unreal Conditions

404. Condition: Remains unchanged.

Conclusion: Imperfect Subjunctive becomes Future Infinitive; in the Passive it is expressed by *futūrum esse* (fore) followed by *ut* with the Imperfect Subjunctive. The Pluperfect Subjunctive becomes the Infinitive in *-ūrus fuisse*; with verbs which have no Future Participle and for all verbs in the Passive, *futūrum fuisse ut* with the Imperfect Subjunctive is used.

NOTES.—1. The law of Sequence of Tenses does not affect this condition.

2. While the Imperfect here refers to present time, it is generally regarded as Historical.

DIRECT

Sī id crēderēs, errārēs, if you believed this, you would be in error.

Sī quid mihi ā Caesare opus esset, ego ad illum vēnissem, if I had needed anything from Caesar, I would have gone to him.

Quōrum sī aetās potuisset esse longinquior, omnibus perfectis artibus, omnī doctrinā,

INDIRECT

Dicō (dixī) tē, sī id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.

Ariovistus respondit, sī quid ipsi ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad illum ventūrum fuisse, Caes. B. G. I. 34, Ariovistus replied that if he had needed anything of Caesar, he would have gone to him.

Dixit, sī eōrum aetās potuisset esse longinquior, futūrum fuisse ut omnibus perfectis

hominum vīta ērudīta esset, *if their term of life could have been longer, the lives of men would have been polished with the perfection of all arts and all learning.* artibus, omni doctrīnā, hominum vīta ērudirētur, *he said that if their term of life could have been longer, the lives of men would have been polished with the perfection of all arts and all learning.*

NOTE.—If the conditional sentence depends on a construction that requires the Subjunctive, the Pluperfect active becomes -ūrus fuerim.

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

405. A subordinate clause depending on a Subjunctive or an Infinitive is put in the Subjunctive by Attraction, if the two clauses form essential parts of a whole: **quicquid increpuerit, Catilinam timēri nōn est ferendum**, Cic. Cat. I. 18. 37, *it is not to be endured that Catiline is to be feared at the slightest noise* (lit. *whatever rustles*).

SPECIAL USES OF NOUNS

406. **Concrete for Abstract.**—1. Denoting a Period of Life: **ā puerō = ā pueritiā**, *from boyhood*.

2. In designations of Office: **Caesare cōsule = in cōsulātū Caesaris**, *in Caesar's consulship*.

3. The name of a People for a Country: **in Segūsiāvōs**, Caes. B. G. I. 10, *into the country of the Segusiavi*.

407. **Abstract for Concrete** in a collective sense: **lūxuriā**, Cic. Cat. II. 5. 5, *high livers*; **coniūrātiōnis**, Cic. Cat. I. 6. 4, *conspirators*; **latrōciniō**, Cic. Cat. I. 31. 5, *a band of brigands*.

408. **Plural for Singular.**—The plural of abstract nouns may be translated as singular or as "acts of": **libidinēs**,

Cic. Cat. II. 10. 14, (*acts of*) *lust*; *audāciae*, Cic. Cat. II. 10. 14, (*acts of*) *recklessness*.

409. Use of Plural. — When reference is made to several persons or things, the Latin is often very exact in the use of the plural: *Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbis cōfirmāvit*, Caes. B. G. I. 33, *Caesar encouraged the minds of the Gauls with words*.

410. Generic Plural. — The plural is used in such sentences as this: *quārē imitēmur nostrōs Brūtōs, Camillōs*, etc., Cic. Sest. 143. 12, *therefore let us imitate men like our Brutus, Camillus*, etc.

SUBSTITUTES FOR PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

411. 1. A Genitive: *exsul patriae*, *a refugee from his country*.

2. An Adjective: *terrēnus tumulus*, *a mound of earth*.

3. A Relative clause: *pōns qui in flūmine est*, *a bridge over a river*.

ADJECTIVES

412. Adjectives as Nouns. — 1. In the plural, masculine adjectives denote Classes or Kinds of men: *boni*, *the good, the loyal*; *docti*, *the learned*; *nostrī*, *our men*.

2. In the plural, neuters are usually found only in the Nominative or Accusative. They denote things: *parva*, *small things*; *bona*, *property*.

NOTE. — The feminine is not used for things unless *rēs* is expressed. Where the masculine and neuter would be alike, *rēs* is often used, to avoid ambiguity: *multārum rērum*, instead of *multōrum*.

3. In the singular, masculines are rare unless limited by a pronoun: *quīdam stultus*, *a certain base fellow*.

4. In the singular, neuters are usually found with the Partitive Genitive: *aliquid novi*, *something new*.

5. Constant use has given some adjectives the force of nouns: *adversārius*, *opponent*; *amicus*, *friend*; *aquārius*, *waterman*; *cōgnātus*, *kinsman*.

413. Sometimes the adjective has the translation of an adverb: *servus vēnit laetus*, *the slave went joyfully*.

414. When the verb *to be* has an Infinitive or a clause for its subject, a predicate adjective is put in the neuter gender: *hūmānum est errāre*, *to err is human*.

415. A plural noun may be modified by two singular adjectives: *secundus et tertius ōrdinēs*, *the second and third ranks*.

416. If the subject denotes a thing, the predicate adjective may be in the neuter, regardless of the gender of the subject: *immānitās sceleris incredibile est*, *the enormity of the crime was (an) incredible (thing)*.

417. A predicate adjective is occasionally neuter, when it refers to nouns of different genders.

418. **Agreement with the Sense.** — A predicate adjective may get its gender from the idea suggested by the subject: *pars ex urbe expulsī sunt*, *a part were driven from the city*.

EQUIVALENTS FOR THE ADJECTIVE

419. Where our idiom expects an adjective, we sometimes find: —

1. A Genitive: *amor frātris*, *fraternal love*.
2. An abstract noun with a Genitive: *ex annālium vetustāte*, *from old records*.
3. An adverb: *tūtō esse*, Cic. Cat. I. 19. 8, *to be safe*.
4. A case of Hendiadys: *mōlem et montēs*, Verg. Aen. I. 61, *massive mountains*.

PECULIARITIES OF THE ADJECTIVE

420. An adjective cannot be used directly with a proper name save as a cognomen: **Alexander Māgnus**, *Alexander the Great*; **L. Caesar, vir fortissimus**, Cic. Cat. IV. 13. 41, *Lucius Caesar, a man most brave*.

421. An adjective may represent a Subjective, an Objective, or a Possessive Genitive: **mortālia facta**, *the deeds of men*; **externae victōriae**, Cic. Cat. IV. 22. 28, *of victory over an enemy*; **domus rēgia**, *the king's house*.

422. Adjectives denote Race: **Miltiadēs Athēniēnsis**, *Miltiades the Athenian*.

423. Such adjectives as **primus**, **medius**, **summus**, **ūltimus**, **extrēmus**, **infimus** (**imus**) denote parts of the modified word: **summus mōns captus est**, *the top of the mountain was taken*.

424. **Primus**, **prior**, **postrēmus**, and **ūltimus** are often equivalent to a relative clause: **āc prior inquit**, Verg. Aen. I. 321, *and she was the first who spoke*.

425. The Latin often uses a connective between two adjectives where our idiom omits it: **multi et fortēs viri**, *many brave men*.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

426. The Comparative is regularly used in contrasting two objects; but sometimes it is equivalent to *too*, *rather*, *somewhat*, *unusually*: **sī qua rēs erat māior**, Cic. *Sest.* 105. 31, *if there was any matter of unusual importance*.

427. The Superlative often denotes a very high degree of comparison: **homō doctissimus**, *a very learned man*.

428. The Comparative may be intensified by **multō**, **aliquantō**, **paulō**, **etiam**, while the Superlative is intensified by **longē**, **ūnus**, **vel**, **etiam**, **paulō**: **multō māior**, *much greater*; **ūnō māximō**, Cic. Cat. III. 25. 32, *the very greatest*.

429. In comparing two attributes of the same person or thing, the comparative, or **magis** with the positive, is used in both members: **hic homō est ditior quam sapientior**, *this man is richer than wise*.

THE VERB

430. The Passive often has a reflexive force: **nōn fallor**, *I do not deceive myself*; **occāsiō datur**, *the opportunity presents itself*.

431. The Passive of deponent and defective verbs is supplied by the corresponding verbal noun with **esse** or **venire**: **esse admirātīōnī**. (**invidiae**, **odiō**), *to be admired (envied, hated)*; **venire in invidiam** (**odium**, **suspiciōnem**), *to be envied (hated, suspected)*.

PRONOUNS

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

432. 1. The Nominative is expressed only when emphatic: **nōs cōsulēs dēsumus**, Cic. Cat. I. 3. 32, *we consuls are remiss*.

2. The "editorial we" occurs, as in English: **tametsi vidēō quanta tempestās invidiae nōbis impendat**, Cic. Cat. I. 22. 4, *and yet I see how great a storm of unpopularity threatens us*.

3. **Nostrum** and **vestrum**, which are regularly used as Partitive Genitives, when used with **omnium** take the place of the possessive: **ad omnium nostrum vitam salutemque**, Cic. Cat. I. 14. 21, *to the life and safety of us all*.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

433. 1. The possessive is expressed only when emphatic or when the meaning would be vague without it: *haec meā voluntāte fēcit, he did this with my consent.*

2. A Genitive is regularly in apposition with a possessive, *ipsius* being used for special emphasis: *meā ūnīus (or ipsius) operā haec fēcī, I did this unaided.*

3. The possessive is often equivalent to the Genitive of the personal pronoun: *nostrā tamen, qui remānsissēmus, caede tē contentum esse dicēbās, Cic. Cat. I. 7. 22, yet you said you were satisfied with the slaughter of us who had remained.*

THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

434. In simple sentences, *sē* and its possessive *suus* refer to the subject: *Caesar sē ad suōs recēpit, Caesar returned to his men (lit. took himself back to his men).*

NOTE. — Distinguish clearly between *self* as a substantive and *self* as an adjective. *Himself* is *ipse* when agreeing with a noun or a pronoun: *Caesar ipse dixit, Caesar himself said it*; it is *sē* when a substantive: *sē occīdit, he killed himself.*

435. *Mē* and *nōs* are the reflexives of the first person; *tē* and *vōs* of the second.

NOTE. — Where the meaning is clear, *suus*, particularly in connection with *quisque*, may refer to some other word than the subject: *suī cuique mōrēs fingunt fortunam, his own character fixes the lot of each one.*

436. With the Accusative and Infinitive construction, *sē* and *suus* refer to the subject of the principal verb: *Caesar dicit sē valēre, Caesar says that he is well.*

437. In Final Clauses, Dependent Commands or Questions, reported Descriptions, Conditions, or Causes, with

their verbs in the Subjunctive mood, *sē* or *suus* refers to the subject of the principal clause; in other clauses, it refers to the subject of its own clause: *decima legiō Caesari grātiās ēgit quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset*, Caes. B. G. I. 41, *the tenth legion tendered Caesar its thanks for having formed a high opinion of it; eō impetū militēs iērunť ut hostēs sē fugae mandārent*, *the soldiers charged with such impetuosity that the enemy betook themselves to flight.*

438. *Sē* and *suus* are used when the subject is indefinite: *dēforme est dē sē ipsō praedicāre*, *to boast of oneself is bad form.*

RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS

439. The Latin has no reciprocal pronoun, but uses *inter nōs*, *inter vōs*, *inter sē*: *virtūs et vitium inter sē differunt*, *virtue and vice differ from one another.*

440. The same idea is expressed by *alius* (of several) and *alter* (of two): *alius aliud videt*, *one sees one thing, another, another; alter alterum adiuvat*, *they two help each other.*

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

441. *Hic* as the Demonstrative of the first person points out something as near the speaker, in time, place, or thought; while *iste* is the regular demonstrative of the second person, and *ille* of the third: *haec urbs*, *this city of ours; iste liber*, *that book of yours; ille homō*, *that man.*

Hic

442. 1. *Hic* and *ille* often mark a contrast: *hic . . . ille*, *the one . . . the other; the latter . . . the former.*

2. *Hic* often, and *ille* sometimes, refers to what follows: *Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātis mittit*, Caes. B. G. I. 35, *Caesar sent ambassadors with the following instructions.*

3. **Hic** is used as a demonstrative of the first person: **dē his**, Cic. Cat. II. 17. 3, *concerning these*; **tālem hunc**, Cic. Sull. 62. 5, *such a man as this*; **dē hāc coniūrātiōne**, Cic. Sull. 14. 3, *concerning this recent conspiracy*.

NOTE.—**Hōc amicōrum numerō** is regularly used for **hōrum amicōrum numerō**, *in the number of these friends*.

Ille

443. 1. **Ille** often means *famous, well-known*: **sica illa**, Cic. Cat. II. 1. 10, *that famous dagger of his*.

2. In a long sentence, or in the second of two parallel clauses, attention is often directed to some preceding noun by the insertion of **ille**:—

**Arma virumque canō, Trōiāe quī primus ab ōris
Ītaliā, fātō profugus Lāvinaque vēnit**

Litora multum ille et terris iactātus et altō, Verg. Aen. I. 1–3,

I sing of arms and the hero who first from the shores of Troy came, by fate an exile, to Italy and the Lavinian shores, he, buffeted much both by land and sea.

Iste

444. **Iste** is regularly applied to an opponent in debate, often in contempt: **istius furōrem**, Cic. Cat. I. 2. 17, *that wretch's fury*.

Is

445. 1. **Is**, *that*, is the determinative pronoun. It is the regular antecedent of the relative: **in eōs quī ea perficere voluērunt**, Cic. Cat. IV. 12. 24, *against those who have wanted to bring that to pass*.

2. **Is = tālis**: **neque enim is es**, Cic. Cat. I. 22. 12, *for you are not such a one*.

3. It is a personal pronoun of the third person: *ad eum accurrit, he runs up to him.*

NOTE. — It is often omitted where the English would express it: *ūnam, D. Silānī, Cic. Cat. IV. 7. 1, the one that of Decimus Silanus.*

4. Note the phrase *id quod, id* being in apposition with a whole clause: *habētis ūniversum populum Rōmānum, id quod in cīvili causā hodiernō diē primum vidēmus, ūnum atque idem sentientem, Cic. Cat. IV. 19. 18, you have the whole Roman people thinking one and the same thing, a thing which we see to-day for the first time in a matter of politics.*

5. Note the phrase *et ea, and that too*: *et ea per cīvēs, Cic. Cat. III. 21. 7, and that too through citizens.*

6. *Hic, ille, iste, and is* usually take the gender of the predicate noun.

Īdem

446. 1. *Īdem* has the general force of *the same*, used as an adjective or a noun: *nōn eadem est aetās, the age is not the same.*

2. *Īdem* adds an additional predicate: *quidquid ūtile est, idem est honestum, whatever is useful is honorable too.*

3. *Īdem* sometimes has the translation of an adverb: *dixi ego idem, Cic. Cat. I. 7. 15, I also said; et eandem dēlicātam, Cic. Mur. 20. 15, and sensual at that.*

Ipse

447. *Ipse* in general expresses Eminence or Emphasis, and gets its force from the context, being often rendered by an emphatic *he, or very, just, precisely, in person.* It is used as a noun or an adjective: *rēx ipse Aenēās, Verg. Aen. I. 575, king Aeneas in person; ipse haec vidī, I saw this with my own eyes.*

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

448. The relative object may be omitted in English, but not in Latin: **vir est quem vidisti**, *he is the man (whom) you saw.*

449. In Latin, the antecedent sometimes has to be expressed: **ex iis quae vidit**, *from what he saw.*

450. The antecedent is often repeated in the relative clause with the relative as its attribute: (**Caesar**) **intellēxit diem instāre quō diē frūmentum militibus mētiri oportēret**, *Caes. B. G. I. 16, Caesar saw that the day was at hand when corn was to be measured to the soldiers.*

451. The antecedent may be implied in a possessive: **vestrā enim quī cum summā ēlegantīā atque integritāte vixistis**, *Cic. Sull. 79. 26, for in the case of you who have lived with the greatest refinement and blamelessness.*

452. An indefinite antecedent is often omitted: **sunt quī haec dicant**, *there are some who say this.*

INCORPORATION OF THE ANTECEDENT

453. The antecedent is sometimes attracted into the relative clause:—

1. When the relative clause precedes: **quae civitās calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās exsolvit**, *the state which had brought disaster on the Roman people was the chief one to pay the penalty.*

2. When the antecedent is an appositive: **firmī et cōstantēs amicī dēligendī sunt, cūius generis est māgna pēnūria**, *firm and constant friends should be chosen, of which class there is a great scarcity.*

3. When the relative clause gives a personal characteristic as a reason: *quae tua prūdentia est, with your usual foresight.*

4. When the logical antecedent is a superlative: *ex amicis quem habuit fidēlissimum ad rēgem misit, he sent to the king the most faithful friend he had.*

454. 1. The relative is occasionally attracted into the case of the antecedent, particularly into the Ablative: *nōs tamen hōc cōfirmāmus illō auguriō, quō diximus, yet we prove this by that augury which we have mentioned.*

2. In poetry the antecedent may be attracted into the case of the relative: *urbem quam statuō vestra est, Verg. Aen. I. 573, the city which I am building is yours.*

455. A relative at the beginning of a clause has the force of a conjunction and a demonstrative: *quā dē causā, and for this reason.*

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS (SEE 84)

456. For *quis*, see 84. 1.

Aliquis, some one, some, is more definite than *quis*: *utī ē suis lēgātis aliquem ad sē mitteret, Caes. B. G. I. 47, that he should send him one of his lieutenants.*

457. 1. *Quīdam, a certain one,* is even more definite than *aliquis*: *accurrit quīdam, nōtus mihi nōmine tantum, Hor. Sat. I. 9. 3, a certain man runs up, known to me only by name.*

2. With a noun or an adjective *quīdam* modifies a too bold use of language: *et quōdam modō tacita loquitur, Cic. Cat. I. 18. 29, and though silent speaks in a manner, if I may be allowed to use the term.*

458. *Quisquam* is usually found in sentences where a negative is expressed or implied: *neque adhūc repertus est*

quisquam, Caes. B. G. III. 22, *nor so far has any one been found*; **quamdiū quisquam erit**, Cic. Cat. I. 6. 32, *so long as there shall be any one*.

NOTE.—With words denoting persons, Cicero uses **quisquam** as an adjective: **homō liber quisquam**, Cic. Sest. 78. 17, *any free man*.

459. Ūllus has the same use as an adjective that **quisquam** has as a noun: **sine ūllā spē**, *without any hope*. **Ūllus** has also a noun use.

460. Quisque, *each one*, has four common uses:—

1. With the reflexive, **prō sē quisque**, *each one for himself*.
2. With ordinals: **tertiō quōque verbō**, *at every third word*.
3. With relatives and interrogatives: **quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit**, Caes. B. G. IV. 5, *what each one of them has heard about anything*.

4. With superlatives it has a universal force: **nōbilissimī cūiusque liberōs**, Caes. B. G. I. 31, *the children of all the nobles*.

NOTE.—**Quisque** is used of several persons or things; the plural, of groups.

461. Uterque, Ambō.—**Uterque** always has a distinct reference to each of two things; the plural refers to groups, or is used with nouns that are found only in the plural. **Ambō** refers to two objects taken together: **quī utrumque probat, ambōbus dēbuit ūtī**, *he who approves of each ought to have availed himself of both*.

NOTE.—In poetry **ambō** is often used like **duo**.

462. Nēmō, *no one*, is found both with nouns and adjectives: **nēmō mortālis**, *no mortal*; **nēmō civis**, *no citizen*.

463. Cēteri, *the rest*, means *all the others*, while **reliqui** means *the rest of*.

CONJUNCTIONS

464. 1. Coördinating conjunctions join two words or phrases, two principal clauses, or two clauses that depend on the same principal clause.

2. Subordinating conjunctions join the dependent clause to the principal clause.

465. TABLE OF COÖRDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. COPULATIVE, meaning <i>and</i>,
join.
et, -que (enclitic).
āc (before a consonant), atque.
neque for et nōn.</p> <p>2. CORRELATIVE COPULATIVES.
et . . . et, both . . . <i>and</i>.
cum . . . tum, <i>while . . . then</i>.
nec . . . nec } <i>neither . . .</i>
neque . . . neque } <i>nor</i>.</p> <p>3. DISJUNCTIVE, meaning <i>or</i>,
allow a choice.
aut, vel, -ve (enclitic).
nēve or neu when the second
member is negated.</p> <p>4. CORRELATIVE DISJUNCTIVES,
meaning <i>either . . . or</i>.
vel . . . vel; sive . . . sive;
seu . . . seu; aut . . . aut.</p> <p>5. ADVERSATIVE, meaning <i>but</i>,
denote opposition.
sed, denoting opposition.
autem (postpositive) marks
a transition.</p> | <p>at, introduces an opposing
argument.
atquē, cēterum, quod.
vērūm, stronger than sed.
tamen (usually postpositive).
nē . . . quidem, <i>not even</i>, the
emphatic word coming be-
tween nē and quidem.</p> <p>6. CORROBORATIVE, meaning
<i>also</i>, add additional testi-
mony.
etiam (just before the word
modified).
quoque (postpositive), nec
nōn.
et (with pronouns).</p> <p>7. CAUSAL, meaning <i>for</i>, give
reasons.
nam, enim (postpositive),
etenim.</p> <p>8. ILLATIVE, meaning <i>therefore</i>,
<i>and so</i>, draw conclusions.
ergō, itaque, igitur.</p> |
|--|---|

NOTES. — 1. **-que** and **-ve**, enclitics, are added to the second of two words they join, or to the first word of the second sentence or clause: **arma virumque canō**, Verg. Aen. I. 1, *I sing of arms and a hero*;

quid tū es tristis, quidve es alacris? *why are you sad, or why are you cheerful?*

2. **Atque** is a strong connective and usually adds a more important to a less important statement: **dīxerat; atque illam . . . aspiciunt**, Verg. Aen. IV. 663, *she ceased, and they behold her*.

466. Note the correlative expressions **nōn sōlum (modo) . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also; nōn modo nōn . . . sed nē . . . quidem, not only not . . . but not even; nōn modo stantem non dēfendērunt, sed nē iacentem quidem prōtēxērunt**, Cic. Sest. 64. 7, *not only did not defend me standing, but did not protect me fallen*.

467. In such expressions as **nōn modo (sōlum) nōn . . . sed nē . . . quidem** the latter **nōn** is generally omitted when the two negative clauses have the same verb: **sapiēns vir nōn modo facere, sed nē cōgitāre quidem quicquam audēbit quod nōn honestum sit**, *a wise man will (not) dare not only to do, but not even to think anything that is not honorable*.

468. In enumerations, where the several units are of equal importance, the connective is written between each two, or it may be omitted altogether, or **-que** may be attached to the last: **māgnificē et graviter et animōsē vivere**, or **māgnificē, graviter, animōsē vivere**, or **māgnificē, graviter, animōsēque vivere**, *to live nobly, seriously, boldly*.

469. When **et** or **atque** is placed between *the last two only* of several units, all that precede the connective are to be taken together: **sī L. Catilīna subitō pertimuerit, sententiam mūtāverit, dēseruerit suōs, cōnsilium belli faciendī abiēcerit et converterit**, Cic. Cat. II. 14. 2-7, *now if Catiline not only suddenly becomes frightened, changes his mind, deserts his friends, and gives up his plan of making war, but also turns*.

470. SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

1. CAUSE: *because, since, quia, quod, quoniam, cum.* **Quod**, *the fact that*, often introduces an object clause.
2. PURPOSE: *in order that, that, to, ut (nō).*
3. RESULT: *so that, that, so as, ut (ut nōn).*
4. CONDITION: *if, si.*
5. CONCESSION: *although, quamquam, quamvis, cum.*
6. TIME: *when, cum, ubi, ut; as soon as, cum primum, simul atque; while, dum, donec; until, dum, donec; before, antequam, priusquam; after, postquam.*
Interrogative *when* is *quandō*.

ORDER OF WORDS IN THE SENTENCE

471. The subject, unless an Infinitive, comes first, the predicate, last; the direct object precedes the predicate; the indirect precedes the direct: **Caesar Aeduīs auxilium pollicitus est**, *Caesar promised aid to the Aeduans.* The attributive adjective, Genitive, and appositive usually follow their nouns, while demonstratives and adjectives of quantity and number precede. An adverb or adverbial phrase immediately precedes the word it modifies. A preposition may have an attribute between it and its case, or the attribute may precede both the preposition and its case.

Relatives, interrogatives, and conjunctions introduce the clause in which they stand.

Temporal, causal, concessive, comparative, and conditional clauses precede the principal clause; final and consecutive clauses and indirect questions follow. The common subject or object of the principal and subordinate clause precedes both.

EXAMPLES ILLUSTRATING THE ABOVE PRINCIPLES

Aeduī, Rōmānōrum socii, cum sē suaque dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt, *the Aeduans, allies of the Romans,*

since they could not defend themselves and their property, sent ambassadors. (This sentence illustrates the position of the appositive, the causal clause, and the common subject of the principal and subordinate clause): **quibus dē causis, senātus duumvirōs ad eam aedem prō amplitūdine populī Rōmānī faciendam creārī iussit**, for these reasons the senate ordered a commission of two to be appointed for building that temple in keeping with the dignity of the Roman people. (This sentence illustrates the position of an attribute with a preposition and its case, of relatives, of attributive adjectives, of demonstratives, of adjectives of number, and of the limiting Genitive): **his rēbus fiēbat ut minus latē vagārentur**, the result was that they could wander less widely (this sentence shows the position of the result clause and of the adverb). For emphasis, a word is put in some prominent position, usually first or last.

DEVICES TO SECURE EMPHASIS

472. Anáphora repeats the same word or word-order in successive phrases: **nihilne tē nocturnum praesidium Palātī, nihil urbis vigillae, nihil timor populī, nihil concursus bonōrum omnium, nihil hic mūnitissimus habendī senātūs locus, nihil hōrum ōra vultūsque movērunt?** Cic. Cat. I. 1. 7, has the nightly guard on the Palatine moved you in no way; the city watch in no way; the assemblage of all loyal men in no way; this most strongly fortified place of holding the senate in no way; the expression of countenance of all present in no way? (In translating it is better to break this up into short sentences.)

473. Chiásmus changes the relative order of words in contrasted clauses: **frequentiā civium sustentātur, alitur ōtiō**, Cic. Cat. IV. 17. 27, (business) is sustained by the crowd of citizens, is nurtured by ease.

The name comes from the criss-cross arrangement suggested by the Greek letter χ : $\begin{matrix} \text{frequenti\bar{a}} & \text{sustent\bar{a}tur} \\ \text{alitur} & \text{\bar{o}ti\delta} \end{matrix}$

474. **Lítotes** is the intentional use of a mild and negative form of expression for a very strong affirmative one: **haud sēgnis**, Verg. Aen. III. 513, *not slothful*. Compare the English: *Shall I praise you in this? I praise you not*, 1 Cor. 11. 22.

475. **Írony** makes a statement with the evident intention of expressing the opposite: **nōs autem fortēs viri**, Cic. Cat. I. 2. 17, *but we, brave men = but we, shame on our cowardice!*

476. **Hypérbole** is rhetorical exaggeration: **occisus est cum liberis, M. Fulvius**, Cic. Cat. I. 4. 6, *Marcus Fulvius was slain with his children* (though in reality but one child was slain).

477. **Aposiopésis**: where the sentence is incomplete, but the sense is clear: **miscēre et tantās audētis tollere mōlēs? Quōs ego —!** Verg. Aen. I. 134, *do you dare to throw into confusion and stir up such masses (of water)? Whom I —!*

GRAMMATICAL FIGURES

FIGURES OF ETYMOLOGY

478. In Figures of Etymology there is a variation from the usual form of a word.

479. **Sýncope** is the omission of one or more letters within the word: **onerārat = onerāverat**, Verg. Aen. I. 195.

480. **Apócope** is the cutting off of a letter at the end of a word: **Pyrrhīn' = Pyrrhīne**, Verg. Aen. III. 319.

481. **Árchaism** is the use of an ancient form: **ollī = illī**, Verg. Aen. I. 254.

FIGURES OF SYNTAX

482. A variation from the usual structure of the sentence is a figure of Syntax.

483. Asyndeton is the omission of connectives.

484. Polysyndeton is the use of a connective between each two of a series.

485. Ellipsis is the omission of one or more words: **Aeole, namque . . .**, Verg. Aen. I. 65, *Aeolus (on thee I call) for . . .*

NOTE.—This ellipsis with **nam** is common in the Aeneid; see I. 318, 327, 390, 444, 453, 466, 589, 731, 755.

Ellipsis has a comparatively narrow range:—

1. Parts of the verb *to be*, especially **est, sunt, and esse**.
2. The indefinite antecedent of the relative.
3. When a word has already been used in the context, it may be understood in the same or another form.
4. In familiar phrases a part is sometimes omitted: **verbum sat = verbum satis est sapientibus**.

486. Zeúgma makes one verb do the duty of two: **inclūsōs . . . Danaōs et . . . laxat claustra**, Verg. Aen. II. 258–9, *releases the imprisoned Greeks and loosens the bars*.

487. Pléonasm is unnecessary fullness of expression: **apud mē domī**, Cic. Sest. 41. 19, *at my house at home*.

488. Hendíadys is the use of two coördinate nouns instead of one noun with a modifier: **ōra vultūsque**, Cic. Cat. I. 1. 7, *the expression on the faces*.

489. Anacolúthon is a break in the regular construction: **utinam dī immortalēs fēcissent (pāce tuā, patria, dixerim; metuō enim nē scelerātē dīcam in tē quod prō Milōne dīcam piē), uti-**

nam P. Clōdīus nōn modo viveret, sed etiam praetor, cōsul, dīc-tātor esset potius, quam hōc spectāculum vidērem! Cic. Mil. 103. 1. (Here we would naturally expect to have *ut viveret* depending on the *fēcissent* clause; but instead we have a change in the construction to *utinam viveret*.)

490. **Hýsteron Próteron** inverts the natural order of words and clauses: in *Āfricam redire atque Italiā dēcēdere*, Cic. Cat. IV. 21. 16, *to return into Africa and withdraw from Italy*. (Compare our "*I put on my shoes and socks*.")

491. **Prolépsis** anticipates the use of a word: *submersās obrue puppēs*, Verg. Aen. I. 69, *swamp the sunken ships*. (Compare the English "*I know thee who thou art*.")

492. **Tmésis** consists in the separation of the parts of a compound word by some other word or words: *dare braccia circum*, Verg. Aen. II. 792, *to throw his arms around*.

FIGURES OF RHETORIC

493. For *Litotes*, *Irony*, *Hyperbole*, *Aposiopesis*, see 474-477.

494. **Oxymóron** combines contradictory ideas: *pictūrā pāscit ināni*, Verg. Aen. I. 464, *he feeds on the unsubstantial picture*; *splendidē mendāx*, Hor. Od. III. 11. 35, *gloriously false*.

495. **Alliteration** is a succession of words beginning with the same sound: *cavum conversā cuspidē*, Verg. Aen. I. 81.

496. **Onomatopóeia** is accommodation of sound to sense: *luctantēs ventōs tempestātēsque sonōrās*, Verg. Aen. I. 53, *wrestling winds and sounding storms*.

497. *Hypallage* is generally seen in an adjective which is made to agree with a word to which it does not logically belong: *dolentem nōn purpurārum sidere clārior dēlēnit ūsus*, *the use of purple garments more brilliant than a constellation soothes not the sufferer* (here *clārior* agrees with *ūsus*, but logically goes with *purpurārum*).

The essence of this figure is Personification, one of the most common marks of poetic style.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR

498. Dates are reckoned from three points:—

1. The Kalends (*Kalendae*), the first of the month.
2. The Nones (*Nōnae*), the fifth; but in March, May, July, October, the seventh.
3. The Ides (*Idūs*), the thirteenth; but in March, May, July, October, the fifteenth.

The names of the months are expressed by adjectives. When used as nouns, *mēnsis*, *month*, is understood; but usually they agree with *Kalendae*, *Nōnae*, *Idūs*.

These adjectives are *Iānuārius*, *Februārius*, *Mārtius*, *Aprīlis*, *Māius*, *Iūnius*, *Iūlius*, *Augustus*, *September*, *Octōber*, *November*, *December*.

NOTE.—The year originally began with March; hence, prior to 46 B.C., *Iūlius* was *Quīntīlis* and *Augustus* was *Sextīlis*.

499. Intervening days are reckoned as so many days before the following Kalends, Nones, or Ides, as the case may be, both the day of the beginning and the close of the count being included; thus, December 29th is the *fourth day before the Kalends of January*.

500. The day before any one of these periods is *prīdiē*: *prīdiē Kalendās Iānuāriās* (*prid. Kal. Ian.*) is *December 31st*.

501. Various methods of indicating dates: —

1. *diēs quartō ante Nōnās Māiās*, (May 4th).
2. *quartō ante Nōnās Māiās*, (May 4th).
3. *quartō (iv) Nōnās Māiās*, (May 4th).
4. *ante diem quartum (iv) Nōnās Māiās*, (May 4th).

The last is the most common method.

These phrases may be considered as nouns, and may be preceded by the prepositions *ad*, *ex*, *in*: *ex ante diem tertium Nōnās Iūniās usque ad pridie Kalendās Octōbrēs*, from June 3d to September 30th.

502. In letters, the date is placed at the end, and is written in either of two ways: *a. d. vi. Kal. Dec.* (= *ante diem sextum Kalendās Decembrēs*), or *vi. Kal. Dec.* (= *sextō (diē ante) Kalendās Decembrēs*), *November 26th*.

TO PUT A ROMAN DATE INTO ENGLISH

503. For a date preceding the Nones or Ides, add *one* to the date on which the Nones or the Ides fall and subtract the given numeral: *a. d. iii. Nōn. Decembr.*, Cic. Ep. Att. I. 13, *December 3d*; *tertiō Idūs Februār.*, Cic. Ep. Att. V. 21, *February 11th*.

504. In Leap year, the extra day in February was the 25th, designated as *ante diem bis. vi. Kal. Mārt.*, while the 24th was *ante diem vi. Kal. Mārt.*

505. For a date preceding the Kalends, add *two* to the number of days in the preceding month and subtract the given numeral: *meministine mē ante diem xii. Kalendās Novembrēs dicere?* Cic. Cat. I. 7. 10, *do you not remember that on the 21st of October I said? dixi . . . tē caedem . . . contulisse in ante diem v. Kalendās Novembrēs*, Cic. Cat. I. 7. 16, *I said that you had set the massacre for October 28th*.

506.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR

DAY OF MONTH	MARCH, MAY, JULY, OCTOBER. 31 days	JANUARY, AUGUST, DECEMBER. 31 days	APRIL, JUNE, SEPT., NOV. 30 days	FEBRUARY. 28 days
1	Kalendīs	Kalendīs	Kalendīs	Kalendīs
2	a. d. vi.		a. d. iv.	
3	a. d. v.		a. d. iii.	} Nōnās
4	a. d. iv.		prīdiē	
5	a. d. iii.	Nōnis	Nōnis	Nōnis
6	prīdiē			
7	Nōnis		a. d. viii.	
8	a. d. viii.		a. d. vii.	} Īdūs
9	a. d. vii.		a. d. vi.	
10	a. d. vi.		a. d. v.	
11	a. d. v.		a. d. iv.	
12	a. d. iv.		a. d. iii.	
13	a. d. iii.	Īdibus	Īdibus	Īdibus
14	prīdiē	a. d. xix.	a. d. xviii.	a. d. xvi.
15	Īdibus	a. d. xviii.	a. d. xvii.	a. d. xv.
16	a. d. xvii.	a. d. xvii.	a. d. xvi.	a. d. xiv.
17	a. d. xvi.	a. d. xvi.	a. d. xv.	a. d. xiii.
18	a. d. xv.	a. d. xv.	a. d. xiv.	a. d. xii.
19	a. d. xiv.	a. d. xiv.	a. d. xiii.	a. d. xi.
20	a. d. xiii.	a. d. xiii.	a. d. xii.	a. d. x.
21	a. d. xii.	a. d. xii.	a. d. xi.	a. d. ix.
22	a. d. xi.	a. d. xi.	a. d. x.	a. d. viii.
23	a. d. x.	a. d. x.	a. d. ix.	a. d. vii.
24	a. d. ix.	a. d. ix.	a. d. viii.	a. d. vi.
25	a. d. viii.	a. d. viii.	a. d. vii.	a. d. v. (vi.)
26	a. d. vii.	a. d. vii.	a. d. vi.	a. d. iv. (v.)
27	a. d. vi.	a. d. vi.	a. d. v.	a. d. iii. (iv.)
28	a. d. v.	a. d. v.	a. d. iv.	prīdiē (iii.)
29	a. d. iv.	a. d. iv.	a. d. iii.	(prīdiē)
30	a. d. iii.	a. d. iii.	prīdiē	
31	prīdiē	prīdiē		
				Inclosed forms () are for leap year

PRAENOMINA

507. A Roman had three names, a *praenōmen*, a *nōmen*, a *cōgnōmen*. The *praenōmen* was the personal name; the *nōmen* was the name of the *gēns*; and the *cōgnōmen* was the family name: thus, in *Pūblius Vergilius Marō*, *Pūblius* is the individual of the *gēns* known as Vergilian and of the family *Maro*.

508. *Praenōmina* and their abbreviations:—

A.	= Aulus	M'	= Mānius
App.	= Appius	N.	= Numerius
C.	= Gāius	P.	= Pūblius
Cn.	= Gnaeus	Q.	= Quīntus
D.	= Decimus	Ser.	= Servius
K.	= Kaesō	S. or Sex.	= Sextus
L.	= Lūcius	Sp.	= Spurius
Mam.	= Māmercus	T.	= Titus
M.	= Mārcus	Ti.	= Tiberius

VERSIFICATION

509. Latin Versification is based on Quantity. Syllables are harmoniously combined into feet and feet into verses. A Latin verse, then, is a regular combination of long and short syllables.

510. The metrical unit is the short syllable (∪ or ♪). A long syllable (— or ♫) is equivalent to two short syllables.

511. Ictus is the prominence given the long syllable in every foot. The syllable receiving the ictus is the Thesis; the rest of the foot the Arsis.

PRINCIPAL FEET

512. Dactyl, — ∪ ∪; Spondee, — —; Anapaest, ∪ ∪ —; Iambus, ∪ —; Trochee, — ∪.

513. The different kinds of verse take the name of the foot which is their basis; as, Anapaestic, Dactylic, Iambic, Trochaic.

FIGURES OF PROSODY

514. Elision is the omission of a final vowel or diphthong, or of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, before a word beginning with a vowel or *h*. If the second of the two words is *est*, its vowel is lost and the two words are run together in pronunciation.

515. Hiátus, omission of Elision, occurs when one word ends in a vowel and the next begins with a vowel or *h*.

516. Diástole is the lengthening of a short syllable to its original quantity.

517. Sýstole is the shortening of a long syllable to its original quantity.

518. Hardening is giving the vowels *i* and *u* their consonantal force. For Syncope and Tmesis, see **480** and **492**.

519. Synizésis or **Synaéresis** is the union of two vowels by a slur.

520. Synaphéia is the elision of a final short vowel before the initial vowel of the next line.

521. Caesúra is the ending of a word within a foot. In dactylic hexameter, the principal or masculine caesura falls after the thesis of the foot, while the feminine caesura comes between the short syllables of the foot. The usual caesura is in the third foot.

522. Diaéresis is the pause which occurs when the end of a word and the end of a foot coincide. In hexameter verse, the diaeresis at the end of the fourth foot is called the Bucolic diaeresis.

DACTYLIC (HEROIC) HEXAMETER

523. The Dactylic Hexameter in theory contains six Dactyls, but a spondee often takes the place of the dactyl in the first four feet. The sixth foot may be a spondee or a trochee.

If the fifth foot is a spondee, the verse is called spondaic.

SCANNING OR RHYTHMICAL READING

524. In Latin, as in English, scanning must be by *blocks*.

Ārmă vi|rŭmquē cǎ|nō || Trō|iaē quī | prĭmŭs āb | ōris
 Ītāl|ām || fā|tō prōfŭ|gŭs || Lā|vĭnāquē | vēnit
 Lĭtōră | mŭlt(um) il|l(e) ēt tēr|rĭs || iāc|tātŭs ēt | āltō
 Vĭ sŭpē|rŭm || sǎe|vǎe mēmō|rēm || Iū|nōnis ōb | ĩrām,
 Mŭltă quō|qu(e) ēt bēl|lō || pās|sŭs || dŭm | cōndērēt | ūrbēm
 Īnfēr|rētquē dē|ōs Lătĭ|ō || gēnŭs | ūndē Lă|tĭnŭm
 Ālbā|nĭquē pǎ|trēs || āt|qu(e) āltāe | mōēniă | Rōmae.

Verg. Aen. I. 1-7.

NOTE. — In the metrical scheme given above, the marks of quantity (—, ∪) refer to the syllable; the accent above the line indicates the Ictus; the vertical line marks the division into feet, while the parallel lines mark the Caesural pause.

525. Points to remember in Dactylic Hexameter:—

1. The first syllable of each foot must be long.
2. A syllable between two long syllables must be long.
3. Except at the end of a line, a short syllable must be preceded or followed by a short syllable.

EXAMPLE OF HIATUS

Pōsthābi|tā cōlū|issē || Sā|mō: hic|illius|ārmā, Verg. Aen. I. 16,

(the hiatus consists in not eliding the final vowel of **Samō** before **hic**).

ELEGIAC DISTICH

526. The Elegiac Distich consists of a dactylic hexameter and a pentameter. The pentameter may be considered as a hexameter which has lost the arsis of the third and sixth feet: — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | ⊔ || — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ¯.

The mark (⊔) indicates a long syllable (two units) prolonged to the value of four; ¯ indicates the lack of two units at the end.

ROMAN MEASURES

MONEY

527. Up to about 268 B.C. the unit was the **ās**, a copper coin, in theory equal to a pound (**libra**), and divided into twelve **ūnciae**. The **sēstertius** (**HS** or **IIS**), a silver coin, equal to $2\frac{1}{2}$ **āsēs**, then became the unit, though the **dēnārius**, equal to 4 sesterces, was the coin in most common use.

Rules for stating Sums of Money

528. 1. Up to 1000 sesterces, use a cardinal with **sēs-tertii**: **decem sēstertii**, *10 sesterces*.

2. From 2000 to 900,000, use a distributive with **sēstertia**: **dēna sēstertia** (**mīlia** being understood) *10,000 sesterces*.

3. From 1,000,000 sesterces upwards, use an adverbial with **sēstertium** (**centēna mīlia** being understood): **decies sēstertium**, *1,000,000 sesterces*.

NOTES. — 1. **Sēstertium** was a sum of money, not a coin. It was the Genitive plural of **sēstertius**, but was also declined as if it were a neuter noun.

2. The bullion value of a **sēstertius** was about four cents.

529. Interest. — Interest was counted by the month, at so many hundredths of the principal: **ūsūrae bīnae centēsimae**, *two per cent per month*. Lower rates were expressed by fractions of the **ās**: **ūsūrae sēmisse**, *one-half per cent per month*.

530. LENGTH

1 **pēs** = 11.65 inches

1 **passus** = 5 **pedēs**

mille passuum = 1 mile = 5000 **pedēs** = 4850 English feet

The unit of measure of land was the **iūgerum**, 240 feet long and 120 feet broad

531. CAPACITY

1 **sextārius** = almost 1 pint

1 **congius** = 6 **sextārii**

1 **modius** = 16 **sextārii**

1 **amphora** = 8 **congii**

532. ABBREVIATIONS

Aed. = aedilis

I.O.M. = Iovī optimō māximō

A.U. = annō urbis

Leg. = lēgātus

A.U.C. = ab urbe conditā

O.M. = optimus māximus

Cos. = cōsul *or* cōsule

P.C. = patrēs cōscripti

Coss. = cōsulēs *or* cōsulibus

Pont. Max. = pontifex māximus

Des. = dēsignātus

Pr. = praetor

Imp. = imperātor

Pro. = prōcōsul

P.R. = populus Rōmānus

Q.B.F.F.Q.S. = quod bonum fēlix faustumque sit

Quir. = Quiritēs

Resp. = rēs pūblica

S. = senātus

S.C. = senātus cōsultum

S.P.Q.R. = senātus populusque Rōmānus

S.V.B.E.E.V. = sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō

Tr. Pl. = tribūnus plēbis

CATALOGUE OF VERBS

Compounds are treated with the Simple Verb

A

abnuō, 121. 1
aboleō, 113. 1
acuō, 121. 2
adipīscor, 136. 13
adolēscō, 119. 14
adsentior, 137. 1
advesperāscit, 145. 2
agō, 117. 1
algeō, 112. 2
alō, 120. 1
amō, 109. 1
amplector, 136. 6
angō, 127. 1
aperiō, 132. 1
arceō, 114. 1
arcessō, 119. 10
ārdeō, 112. 1
ārēscō, 120. 2
arguō, 121. 3
audiō, 131. 1
augeō, 112. 3
aveō, 115. 1

C

cadō, 116. 1
caedō, 116. 2
caleō, 114. 2
calēscō, 147. 1
candeō, 121. 4
canō, 116. 3; 120. 3
capesō, 119. 11
capiō, 123. 1
careō, 114. 3
carpō, 118. 1
caveō, 111. 1
cēdō, 118. 2

-cellō, 116. 19
cēnseō, 114. 4
cernō, 119. 1
cieō, 113. 2
cingō, 118. 3
claudō, 118. 4
coalēscō, 147. 1
coepi, 144. 6
colō, 120. 4
commīscor, 136. 14
comperiō, 128. 1
compēscō, 120. 6
condolēscō, 147. 1
congruō, 121. 5
cōnsenēscō, 120. 7
cōnsidō, 121. 31
cōnsulō, 120. 8
conticēscō, 147. 1
convalēscō, 147. 1
coquō, 118. 5
crēdō, 116. 4
crepō, 109. 2
crēscō, 119. 15
cubō, 109. 3
-cumbō, 120. 5
cupiō, 125. 1
currō, 116. 5

D

decet, 145. 1
dēdecet, 145. 1
dēfendō, 121. 6
dēfetīscor, 136. 24
dēlēō, 113. 3
dicō, 118. 6
discō, 116. 6
dītēscō, 147. 2
dividō, 118. 8

dō, 107. 1; 116. 7
doceō, 114. 5
doleō, 114. 6
domō, 109. 4
dūcō, 118. 9

E

edō, 117. 2
egeō, 114. 20
ēmineō, 114. 21
emō, 117. 3
ēnecō, 109. 5
eō, 142
ēsuriō, 133. 2
ēvānēscō, 147. 2
ēvārdēscō, 147. 1
excūdō, 121. 8
expergiō, 136. 15
experiō, 137. 2
exuō, 121. 7

F

facessō, 121. 9
faciō, 123. 2
fallō, 116. 8
farcīō, 130. 1
fateor, 135. 2
faveō, 111. 2
feriō, 133. 1
ferō, 140
ferveō, 111. 9
figō, 118. 11
findō, 116. 20
fingō, 118. 12
fiō, 143
flectō, 118. 13
fleō, 113. 4

figō, 118. 14
 flōreō, 114. 22
 flōrēscō, 147. 1
 fluō, 118. 15
 fodiō, 123. 3
 foveō, 111. 3
 frangō, 117. 4
 fremō, 120. 10
 fricō, 109. 6
 frigeō, 115. 2
 fruor, 136. 1
 fugiō, 123. 4
 fulciō, 130. 2
 fulgeō, 112. 4
 fundō, 117. 5
 fungor, 136. 2

G

gemō, 120. 11
 gerō, 118. 16
 gīgnō, 120. 12
 gradior, 136. 11
 grandinat, 145. 2

H

habeō, 114. 7
 haereō, 112. 5
 hauriō, 130. 3
 horreō, 114. 23
 horrēscō, 147. 1

I (vowel)

īcō, 121. 10
 īgnēscō, 147. 2
 imbuō, 121. 11
 immineō, 115. 3
 incessō, 119. 12
 indulgeō, 112. 7
 induō, 121. 12
 irāscor, 136. 16

I (consonant)

iaceō, 114. 8
 iaciō, 123. 5
 iubeō, 112. 6
 iungō, 118. 17
 iuvō, 108. 1

L

lābor, 136. 7
 laccessō, 119. 13
 -laciō, 124. 1; 126. 1
 laedō, 118. 18
 lateō, 114. 24
 lavō, 108. 2
 legō, 117. 6
 libet, 145. 1
 licet, 145. 1
 linō, 119. 2
 linquō, 117. 7
 liquēscō, 147. 1
 loquor, 136. 3
 lūceō, 112. 8
 lūdō, 118. 19
 lugeo, 112. 9
 luō, 121. 13

M

maereō, 115. 4
 mālō, 141
 mandō, 121. 14
 maneō, 112. 10
 mātūrēscō, 147. 2
 memini, 144. 6
 mereō, 114. 9
 mergō, 118. 20
 mētior, 137. 5
 metō, 120. 13
 metuō, 121. 15
 micō, 109. 7
 minuō, 121. 16
 misceō, 114. 10
 miseret, 145. 1
 mittō, 118. 21
 molō, 120. 14
 moneō, 114. 11
 mordeō, 110. 1
 morior, 136. 10
 moveō, 111. 4
 mulceō, 112. 11

N

nanciscor, 136. 17
 nāscor, 136. 18
 nectō, 118. 22
 ningit, 145. 2

niteō, 114. 25
 nitor, 136. 8
 noceō, 114. 12
 nolō, 141
 nōscō, 119. 16
 nūbō, 118. 23

O

obdūrēscō, 147. 2
 obliviscor, 136. 19
 obmūtēscō, 147. 2
 obsolēscō, 119. 17
 occulō, 120. 15
 ōdī, 144. 6
 offendō, 121. 17
 oleō, 114. 26
 operiō, 132. 2
 oportet, 145. 1
 opperior, 137. 2
 ōrdior, 137. 3
 orior, 137. 4

P

paciscor, 136. 20
 paenitet, 145. 1
 palleō, 114. 27
 pandō, 121. 18
 pangō, 117. 8
 parcō, 116. 9
 pārēō, 114. 13
 pariō, 122
 partior, 137
 pāscō, 119. 18
 pateō, 114. 28
 patior, 136. 12
 paveō, 111. 5
 pello, 116. 10
 pendeō, 110. 2
 pendō, 116. 11
 petō, 119. 3
 piget, 145. 1
 pingō, 118. 24
 placeō, 114. 14
 plangō, 118. 25
 plaudō, 118. 26
 pleō, 113. 5
 plicō, 109. 9
 pluit, 145. 2

polleō, 115. 5
 pōnō, 120. 16
 pōscō, 116. 12
 possidō, 121. 32
 pōtō, 109. 8
 prandeō, 111. 10
 prehēdō, 121. 19
 premō, 118. 27
 proficiscor, 136. 21
 pudet, 145. 1
 pungō, 116. 13; 118. 28

Q

quaerō, 119. 4
 quatiō, 124. 3
 queror, 136. 4
 quiēscō, 119. 19

R

rādō, 118. 29
 rapiō, 126. 2
 rēfert, 145. 1
 regō, 118. 30
 reor, 135. 1
 reperiō, 128. 2
 rēpō, 118. 31
 rīdēō, 112. 12
 rōdō, 118. 32
 rumpō, 117. 9
 ruō, 121. 20

S

saepiō, 130. 4
 saliō, 132. 3
 sanciō, 130. 7
 sapiō, 125. 2
 sarcīō, 130. 6
 scalpō, 118. 33
 scandō, 121. 21
 scindō, 116. 21
 sciscō, 119. 20

scribō, 118. 34
 sculpō, 118. 35
 secō, 109. 10
 sedeō, 111. 6
 sentiō, 130. 5
 sepeliō, 131. 2
 sequor, 136. 5
 serō, 119. 5
 serpō, 118. 36
 sileō, 114. 29
 sinō, 119. 6
 sistō, 116. 14
 solvō, 121. 22
 sonō, 109. 11
 spargō, 118. 37
 -speciō, 124. 2
 spernō, 119. 7
 spondeō, 110. 3
 statuō, 121. 23
 sternō, 119. 8
 -stinguō, 118. 38
 stō, 107. 2
 strepō, 120. 17
 stringō, 118. 39
 struō, 118. 40
 studeō, 114. 30
 stupeō, 114. 31
 suādeō, 112. 13
 suēscō, 119. 21
 sūgō, 118. 41
 sum, 93
 suō, 121. 24

T

taceō, 114. 15
 taedet, 145. 1
 tangō, 116. 15
 tegō, 118. 42
 temnō, 118. 43
 tendō, 116. 16
 teneō, 114. 16
 tergeō, 112. 14
 terō, 119. 9
 terreō, 114. 17

texō, 120. 18
 timeō, 114. 32
 tingō, 118. 44
 tollō, 116. 22
 tondeō, 110. 4
 tonō, 109. 12
 torqueō, 112. 15
 torreo, 114. 18
 trahō, 118. 45
 tremō, 120. 19
 tribuō, 121. 25
 trūdō, 118. 46
 tundō, 116. 17

U

ulciscor, 136. 22
 ung(u)ō, 118. 47
 urgeō, 112. 16
 ūrō, 118. 48
 ūtor, 136. 9

V

vādō, 118. 49
 valeō, 114. 19
 vehō, 118. 50
 -vellō, 121. 26
 vēndō, 116. 18
 veniō, 129
 vergō, 127. 2
 -verrō, 121. 27
 vertō, 121. 28
 vescor, 136. 23
 vetō, 109. 13
 videō, 111. 7
 vigeō, 114. 33
 vinciō, 130. 8
 vincō, 117. 10
 vīsō, 121. 29
 vivō, 118. 51
 volō, 141
 volvō, 121. 30
 vomō, 120. 20
 voveō, 111. 8

INDEX OF GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES

Allen and Greenough	Mooney	Allen and Greenough	Mooney	Allen and Greenough	Mooney	Allen and Greenough	Mooney
1	2: 3	86, <i>a, b</i>	33, n. 1	62	29	87, <i>a</i>	66, Exc.
2	4	86, <i>c</i>	29	63, <i>a</i>	52, 2		2 and 3
2, 1-3	8	86, <i>d</i>	33, n. 3	63, <i>c</i>	52, 1	87, <i>b</i>	65, 4
8	8	86, <i>e</i>	33, n. 2	63, <i>f</i>	52, 2	87, <i>c</i> and <i>d</i>	66
4	2	87	34	63, <i>g</i>	52, 4	87, <i>f</i>	66,
5	16	87, <i>a</i>	34, n.	63, <i>h</i>	52, 3		Exc. 5
7	9, 4: 35,	87, <i>b</i>	34	63, <i>i</i>	52, 4	88, <i>a</i>	412, 5
	n. 1	88	35	64	52, 5-7	88, <i>c</i>	66, 6
10, <i>a</i>	9, 1 and 2	89	35	65, <i>a</i>	50, 1	88, <i>d</i>	149, 1
10, <i>b</i>	10, 1	89, <i>b</i>	37	65, <i>b</i>	50, 2		and 2
10, <i>c</i>	10, 3	40, <i>a</i>	29	65, <i>c</i>	50, 3	89	68: 69
10, <i>d</i>	10, 2	40, <i>b</i>	36, 1	68	53	89, <i>a</i>	69, 1
11, <i>a</i>	11, 3		and 2	69, <i>a</i>	54, 3		and 2
11, <i>b</i>	11, 4 and	40, <i>c</i>	36, 3	69, <i>b</i>	53	89, <i>b</i>	69, 3
	5	40, <i>e</i>	36, 6	70, <i>a</i>	54, 4	89, <i>c</i>	69, 4
11, <i>a, 1</i> and	6, 7: 11,	40, <i>f</i>	36, 4	70, <i>d</i>	54, 1	89, <i>d</i>	70, 1
2	1-4: 12	41	35, 3	70, <i>f</i>	54, 2	90	69, 6
14	14	41, <i>b</i>	35	72	55	91, <i>a</i>	71, 1
14, <i>a</i>	14, 1	41, <i>c</i>	35, 2	78	55, 1	91, <i>b</i>	71, 1
14, <i>b</i>	14, 2		and 3	74, <i>a</i>	55, 4		and 4
14, <i>c</i>	14, 3	42	35, 2	74, <i>b</i>	55, 2	91, <i>c</i>	71, 3
16	5: 6: 7	43	38	74, <i>d</i>	55, 2	91, <i>d, 1</i>	71, 1
18, <i>a</i>	16	43, <i>a</i>	52, 3	75	56, 1	91, <i>d, 2</i>	71, 2
18, <i>c</i>	17, 4	43, <i>b</i>	36, 5:	76, 1	56, 2	91, <i>d, 3</i>	71, 3
18, <i>d</i>	17, 5:		38	76, 2 and 3	56, 3	92	152:
	16, 4	44	41, 2	77	61		152, 2
18, <i>e</i>	17, 3	45	41, 3	78	58: 59	93, <i>a</i>	426:
18, <i>f</i>	16, 2	46	42: 43	79, <i>a</i>	57		428
19	15	47	42: 43	80, <i>a-c</i>	507	93, <i>b</i>	427:
21	30	48	44: 45	80, <i>d</i>	508		428
22	156	49	44: 45	81	63, 1-3	93, <i>c</i>	460, 4
25-27	24	50	49, 6	81, <i>a</i>	63, 6	94	72
28	26	51	47	82	63, 4	94, <i>a</i>	74
29, <i>a, b,</i>	27, 1	51, <i>a</i>	47, 1	82, <i>n.</i>	63, 5	94, <i>b</i>	73
29, <i>c</i>	28, 3	52	47	88	64, 1-5	94, <i>c</i>	73: 74, 3
30	27, 2	54	47, 2	83, <i>a</i>	64, 1	94, <i>d</i>	73
31	29	55, <i>a</i>	49, 6	84	65: 65,	94, <i>e</i>	74, 2
32	31	55, <i>b</i>	49, 5		3	94, <i>f</i>	73
32, <i>a</i>	30	56	49, 1-3	84, <i>a</i>	65, 1		72
33	32	57	49, 4	84, <i>b</i>	66	96	72
34	35: 39:	60, <i>a</i>	47	85, <i>a</i> and <i>b</i>	65, 4	97, <i>d, n.</i>	529
	53	60, <i>b</i>	47	86	65, 6	98, 1 and <i>a</i>	77
35	33	61	47	86, <i>b</i>	65, n.	98, <i>b</i>	432, 2

A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.
98, 2, <i>a</i>	79	111, <i>c</i>	89, 1	181	95: 96:	154, <i>b</i> , 1, 2	470, 4
and <i>b</i>		112, <i>a</i>	318, 1-3	182	95: 96	154, <i>b</i> , 3	470, 5
98, 3	78: 78,	112, <i>b</i>	321 ff.	184	146	154, <i>b</i> , 4	470, 6
	<i>n.</i> 2	112, <i>c</i>	319	185	97	154, <i>b</i> , 5	470, 3
98, 3, <i>n.</i>	78, n. 1	112, <i>d</i>	261	185, <i>b</i>	89, 2	154, <i>b</i> , 6	470, 2
99, <i>a</i>	433, 3	113, <i>a</i>	282	186	89, 1	155	465: 470
99, <i>b</i>	77, 1	113, <i>b</i>	283	187, <i>a</i>	93	156, <i>a</i>	465, 1 and
99, <i>c</i>	216, 5	113, <i>b</i> , <i>n.</i>	98, 1	187, <i>b</i>	138		465, n. 2
99, <i>d</i>	439: 440	113, <i>b</i> , 2	98	188	141	156, <i>b</i>	465, 5
99, <i>e</i>	77, 4: 79,	113, <i>c</i> , 1	282	189	140	156, <i>c</i>	465, 3 and
	<i>n.</i>	113, <i>c</i> , <i>n.</i>	280	140	139		4
99, <i>f</i>	77, 2 and	113, <i>d</i>	295, 1	141	142	156, <i>d</i>	465, 7
	<i>3: 78, 3</i>	113, <i>d</i> , <i>n.</i>	98, 2	141, <i>a</i>	142, n. 1	156, <i>e</i>	465, 8
100	80	114, <i>a</i>	288	141, <i>b</i>	142, n. 2	156, <i>f</i>	470, 1
101	80: 81	114, <i>a</i> , <i>n.</i>	288	142	143	156, <i>h</i>	465, 3 and
101, <i>n.</i>	80, n.	114, <i>b</i>	301: 302	142, <i>a</i>	100, 6		4
102, <i>a</i>	80: 422,	115	303: 304	142, <i>b</i>	123, 2	156, <i>i</i>	378, 5 and
	<i>1-3</i>	115, <i>a</i>	305, 6:	143, <i>a, b, c</i>	144, 6		n.
102, <i>b</i>	80: 443,		306, 4	143, <i>c, n.</i>	307, n.	156, <i>k</i>	465, 5 and
	<i>1</i>	115, <i>b</i>	306, 1	144, <i>a</i>	144, 1		7
102, <i>c</i>	80: 444	115, <i>c</i>	307, 1 and	144, <i>b</i>	144, 2	p. 104	155
102, <i>d</i>	80: 445,		2	144, <i>c</i>	144, 4	162, <i>a</i>	161, 2
	<i>1-3</i>	115, <i>d</i>	314	144, <i>d</i>	144, 3	163, <i>a</i>	161, 1
102, <i>e</i>	447	116	91	144, <i>e</i>	144, 4	163, <i>b</i>	161, 4 and
103	82	119	93	144, <i>f</i>	144, 5		n.
104	83	120	93	144, <i>g</i>	142, 3	163, <i>c</i>	161, 5
104, <i>a</i>	83: 84	121	90	145	145	163, <i>d</i>	161, 5:
104, <i>a</i> , <i>n.</i>	83, 2	121, <i>a</i>	90, 1	146, <i>a</i>	145, 2		161, 3
104, <i>c</i>	82, 1: 83,	121, <i>b</i>	90, 2	146, <i>b</i>	145, 1	163, <i>e</i>	160
	<i>1</i>	121, <i>c</i>	90, 3	146, <i>c</i>	145, 3	163, <i>f</i>	159, 3
104, <i>d</i>	82, 1	122, <i>a</i>	92, 1	146, <i>d</i>	205, n.	164, <i>a</i>	159, 1
104, <i>e</i>	258, 3 and	122, <i>a</i>	92, 1	147	98	164, <i>b</i>	159, 4
	<i>n.</i>	122, <i>b</i>	92, 3	148, <i>a</i>	148, 1	164, <i>c</i>	163, 2 and
105, <i>a</i>	82, 2	123	102: 103	148, <i>b</i>	148, 2		5: 164,
105, <i>b</i>	82, 3	124, <i>a</i>	104, 3	148, <i>c</i>	148, 2 and		1 and 5
105, <i>c</i>	84, 3-6.	124, <i>b</i>	104, 2		n.	164, <i>d</i>	163, 2
105, <i>d</i>	84, 1 and	124, <i>c</i>	104, 4	148, <i>d</i>	149, 1	164, <i>e</i>	163, 6:
	<i>2</i>	124, <i>c</i> , <i>n.</i>	104, n. 1	149	151		163, 1
105, <i>h</i>	84, 4	124, <i>d</i>	104, 1	151, <i>a</i>	465, 6	164, <i>f</i>	163, 4
105, <i>i</i>	83, 3	125	105	151, <i>b</i>	465, 2	164, <i>g</i>	163, 1 and
106	85: 151	127	94	151, <i>e</i>	465, 5		2
108	88	128, <i>a</i>	100, 1	152, <i>a</i>	258, 1	164, <i>h</i>	163, 2
108, <i>a</i> and <i>b</i>	88, 1	128, <i>b</i>	101, 4	152, <i>b</i>	258, 3	164, <i>i</i> , 3	159, 2
		128, <i>c</i>	100, 6	152, <i>c</i>	258, 4	164, <i>i</i> , 6	159, 2
108, <i>c</i>	88, 2	128, <i>e</i> , 1	101, 2	154, <i>a</i>	464, 1	164, <i>i</i> , 8	159, 2
108, <i>d</i>	88, 3	128, <i>e</i> , 2	101, 1	154, <i>a</i> , 1	465, 1 and	164, <i>k</i>	163, 3
109	88, 1	128, <i>e</i> , 3	101, 3		8	164, <i>l</i>	162, 2 and
110, <i>c</i>	320	128, <i>e</i> , 4	101, 5	154, <i>a</i> , 2	465, 5		4
111	87, 1	128, <i>p</i> , 72	95	154, <i>a</i> , 3	465, 7	164, <i>m</i>	162, 3
111, <i>a</i>	188	129	98: 96	154, <i>a</i> , 4	465, 8	164, <i>p</i>	162, 1
111, <i>b</i>	89	180	95: 96	154, <i>b</i> ,	464, 2	166, <i>a</i>	158, 1

A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.
166, <i>b</i>	158, 1	194, <i>a</i>	432, 1	205	175, 1	216, <i>c</i>	225, N. 2
166, <i>d</i>	158, 2	194, <i>b</i>	432, 3:	205, <i>a</i>	176	216, <i>d</i>	225, N. 4
167, <i>a</i>	147		216, 5	205, <i>b</i>	175, 4	216, <i>e</i>	225, N. 3
167, <i>b</i>	157, 1	195	182	205, <i>c</i>	174, 6	217	216, 1
167, <i>d</i>	157, 4	195, <i>a</i>	445, 3	206, <i>a</i>	432, 1	217, <i>a</i>	421
167, <i>e</i>	157, 3	195, <i>b</i>	445, N.	206, <i>b</i>	172, 3	217, <i>c</i>	216, 2
168, <i>b</i>	167	195, <i>c</i>	445, 5	206, <i>c</i>	485, 1	218	226, 1
168, <i>c</i>	169, 1	195, <i>d</i>	445, 6	207, <i>b</i>	258, 2 and 3	218, <i>a</i>	226, 1
168, <i>d</i>	170, 1 and 2	195, <i>e</i>	446, 3	207, <i>d</i> , N.	258, 2 and 3	218, <i>b</i>	226, 2
169, <i>b</i>	168, 3	195, <i>f, g,</i> <i>h, i, k, l</i>	447	208	465, 1 and 3	218, <i>d</i> , N. 1	226, 2
170, <i>a</i>	168, 3	196	434	208, <i>b</i>	483: 468	219	227, 1
170, <i>a</i> , N.	168, N. 1	196, <i>a</i> , 1	437	208, <i>c</i>	425	219, <i>a</i>	227, 2
170, <i>b</i>	153, 2	196, <i>a</i> , 2	436	208, <i>d</i>	465, 2 and 4	219, <i>b</i>	227, 3
170, <i>c</i>	170, 3	196, <i>c</i>	435, N.	209, <i>c</i>	474	219, <i>c</i>	227, 4
170, <i>d</i>	168, 3	196, <i>e</i>	438	209, <i>d</i>	386, N.	219, <i>c</i> , N.	227, 4
173, 1	171	196, <i>f</i>	439	209, <i>e</i>	361, N.	220	228
173, 2	266	196, <i>h</i>	435	210, <i>a</i>	385, 1	220, <i>b</i> , 1	251
174	171	196, <i>i</i>	435, N.	210, <i>c</i>	385, 3	220, <i>b</i> , 2	228, N.
175, <i>a</i> and <i>b</i>	87, 2	197	78	210, <i>e</i>	384, 1	221	229
176, <i>a</i>	173, 1 and 3	197, <i>a</i>	433, 3	210, <i>f</i>	83, 3	221, <i>a</i>	229
176, <i>b</i>	174, 2	197, <i>e</i>	433, 2	210, <i>d</i>	385, 2	221, <i>b</i>	229
183	179	198	182, 1	210, <i>e</i>	384, 1	221, <i>c</i>	229, N. 2
184	179	198, <i>a</i>	182, 3	211	385, 5	222	230, 1
184, <i>a</i>	180, 1	199	182, 4	211, Rem.	390, 3	222, <i>a</i>	230, 2
184, <i>b</i>	179	199, <i>a</i>	454, 1	211, <i>b</i>	385, 5	223 and N.	231
184, <i>c</i>	242, 3	199, <i>b</i>	451	212	386, 1 and 2	223, <i>a</i>	231
184, <i>d</i>	433, 2	199, <i>d</i> , N.	451	212, <i>a</i> , 1	386, 1	223, <i>e</i>	218, 1 and 2: 258, 2 and 3
185, <i>a</i>	174, 2	200 and <i>a</i>	450	212, <i>a</i> , 2	386, 2	224	201
185, <i>b</i>	175, 1	200, <i>c</i>	452	212, <i>b</i> ,	Rem.	225	201
186	178	200, <i>e</i>	445, 4	212, <i>b</i> ,	385, 5	225, <i>b</i> , 3	213
186, <i>d</i>	178, 2	201, <i>a</i>	448	212, <i>b</i> ,	385, 5	225, <i>d</i>	203
187, <i>a</i>	178, 2	201, <i>b</i>	411, 3	212, <i>b</i> ,	Rem.	226	205
187, <i>b</i>	177, 3	201, <i>c</i>	453, 1	213	215: 216, 1	227	205
187, <i>b</i> , N.	177, 4	201, <i>d</i>	453, 2	214, <i>a</i> , 1	217, 1	227, <i>a</i>	202, 3
187, <i>c</i>	177, 2	201, <i>e</i>	455	214, <i>a</i> , 2	217, N. 1	227, <i>c</i>	204
187, <i>d</i>	418	202, <i>a</i>	84, 1: 456-7	214, <i>c</i>	217, 2	228	202
188	412, 1 and 2	202, <i>b</i>	84, 2: 458: 459	214, <i>d</i>	217, N. 2	228, <i>a</i>	202, 3
188, Rem.	412, 3	202, <i>c</i>	84, 4 and 5	214, <i>e</i>	221	229	211
188, <i>a</i>	412, 5	202, <i>d</i>	460, 4	214, <i>f</i>	219	230	205, N.
188, <i>b</i>	412, N.	202, <i>e</i>	460	215 and <i>a</i>	222	231	212
189, <i>b</i>	412, 2	202, <i>f</i>	462	215, <i>b</i>	223	232	207
189, <i>c</i>	416	203	440	216	225	232, N.	207, N. 1
189, <i>d</i>	414	203, <i>a</i>	463	216, <i>a</i> , 1	225, 1	232, <i>a</i>	207, N. 2
190	421	203, <i>b</i>	440	216, <i>a</i> , 2	225, 3, 4	233	206
191	413	203, <i>c</i>	440	216, <i>a</i> , 3	225, 2	233, <i>a</i>	206
192	426	204	174, 1	216, <i>a</i> ,	Rem.	234	214
198	423	204, <i>b</i>	174, 4	216, <i>a</i> , 4	225, 5	234, <i>a</i>	214
						234, <i>b</i>	214, N. 4

A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.
284, <i>c</i>	214, N. 3	248, <i>b</i>	236, 3 and notes	257, <i>a</i>	223	267, <i>b</i>	325
284, <i>d</i>	226, 3	248, <i>c</i>	233	257, <i>b</i>	196: 248	267, <i>c</i>	325, N.
284, <i>d</i> , 1	214, N. 2	248, <i>d</i>	237, 2	258, <i>a</i>	233: 258, 1 and 4	268	324
284, <i>d</i> , 2	226, 3	248, <i>e</i>	252, 1	258, N. 1	213	269 and N.	319
284, <i>e</i>	258, 2	248, <i>e</i>	252, 1	258, <i>a</i>	233, 2	269, <i>a</i>	322, 4
285	208	248, <i>e</i> , Rem.	252, 2	258, <i>a</i> , N.	1	269, <i>d</i>	320
285, <i>b</i>	210 and N.	248, <i>f</i>	231	258, <i>a</i> , N.	233, 3	270	262
285, <i>e</i>	200, N. 2	244	234: 235	258, <i>a</i> , N.	2	270, N. 2	263
286	209	244, 1	234, 1	258, <i>a</i> , N.	236, 1	270, <i>b</i>	262
287	184: 184, 1 and 2	244, 2	235	258, <i>a</i> , N.	8	271	264
287, N.	184, N. 2	244, <i>a</i>	234, 1	258, <i>b</i>	199, 1 and 2	271, <i>a</i>	269
287, <i>a</i>	184, N. 1	245	254	258, <i>b</i>	2	271, <i>a</i> , N.	1
287, <i>b</i>	187	245, <i>a</i>	238, 2	258, <i>b</i> , N.	199, N. 1	1	268
287, <i>c</i>	190, 2	245, <i>b</i>	254, N. 1	258, <i>b</i> , N.	2	271, <i>b</i>	269, N.
287, <i>d</i>	185, 1 and 2	245, <i>c</i>	218, 1	258, <i>b</i> , N.	199, N. 2	271, <i>c</i>	265
287, <i>e</i>	186	246	247, 2	258, <i>b</i> , N.	3	272	268
288, <i>a-c</i>	190, 1	246, <i>b</i>	247, 3	258, <i>b</i> , N.	199, N. 4	272, Rem.	267
289	191	247	239, 1	258, <i>c</i> , N.	4	272, <i>a</i> , 2	263, N.
289, <i>a</i>	191, 1-3	247, <i>c</i>	239, 3	258, <i>c</i> , 1	240, 1	273, <i>b</i>	277, 1
289, <i>a</i> , N.	191, 2 and 1 N.	248	245	258, <i>c</i> , 2	242, 1	273, <i>d</i>	277, 2
289, <i>b</i>	194	248, <i>a</i>	244	258, <i>d</i>	242, 2	273, <i>e</i>	277, 3
289, <i>b</i> , N.	2	248, <i>c</i> , 1	241, 1	258, <i>f</i> , 1	241, 3	274	275
289, <i>c</i>	192, 1 and 2	248, <i>c</i> , 2	250	258, <i>f</i> , 2	241, 2	275	276
289, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	249	253	259, <i>c</i>	501	276, <i>a</i>	305, 6
289, <i>c</i> , N.	2	249, <i>a</i>	231	259, <i>d</i>	249	276, <i>b</i>	305, 3
289, <i>c</i>	193	250	248	259, <i>e</i>	501	276, <i>c</i>	305, 7
289, <i>c</i> , Rem.	193	250, Rem.	248	259, <i>h</i>	199, N. 4	276, <i>d</i>	305, 4
289, <i>d</i>	192, 1	251	246	260, <i>b</i>	236, N. 2	276, <i>e</i>	352
240, <i>a</i>	195	251, <i>a</i>	246, N.	260, <i>e</i>	258, 3	276, <i>e</i> , N.	353
240, <i>b</i>	195, N.	252	251	261, <i>a</i>	258, 2	277 and N.	306, 1
240, <i>c</i>	198	252, <i>a</i>	224	261, <i>a</i> , N.	258, 2	277, <i>a</i>	306, 1
240, <i>c</i> , N.	188	252, <i>d</i>	251	261, <i>b</i>	258, 3	277, <i>b</i>	306, 4
240, <i>d</i>	200	253	238	261, <i>c</i>	258, 2	277, <i>c</i>	306, 2 and 5
240, <i>e</i>	196: 197	253, <i>a</i>	302, 1	261, <i>d</i>	258	277, <i>g</i>	307, 3
240, <i>f</i>	266	254	240, 1	262	350, N.	278	310
240, <i>g</i>	180, 2	255	255	263	247, 2	278, <i>b</i>	311
240, <i>h</i>	233: 258, 2	255, <i>a</i>	255	264	318, 1	279	307, 1 and 2
241	257	255, <i>d</i> , 1	255, 1	264, <i>b</i>	318, 2 and 3	279, <i>c</i>	308, 2
241, <i>c</i>	200, N. 3	255, <i>d</i> , 2	255, 2	266	321	279, <i>d</i>	307, 3
242	232	255, <i>d</i> , 3	255, 4	266, Rem.	321	279, <i>e</i>	307, N.
243	236	255, <i>d</i> , 4	255, 3	266, <i>a</i>	172, 5	280	309
243, <i>a</i>	237	255, <i>d</i> , 5	255, 5	266, <i>b</i>	321, 4	281	311
		256	197: 243	266, <i>c</i>	323	281, Rem.	311
		256, <i>a</i>	197	266, <i>d</i>	376	282	313
		256, <i>b</i>	243, N.	267	325	283	314
		257	196	267, Rem.	325	285	315
						285, 1-2	304
						286	315

A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.
286, <i>a</i>	314	308, Rem.	302, 1	319, 3	341	381, <i>i</i>	267, N.
286, <i>b</i>	314	304	360	319, 3, N.	338	382	341
287, <i>a</i>	316, 4	304, <i>a</i>	361	319, <i>a</i>	337	382, <i>a</i>	341, 1
287, <i>c</i>	316, 2	305, <i>a</i>	363, 1	319, <i>c, d</i>	341, 3	382, <i>b</i>	339
287, <i>e</i>	316, 1	305, <i>b</i>	363, 1, and 364	320	382: 383	382, <i>c</i>	332
287, <i>f</i>	404, N. 1			320, <i>a</i>	383, 2	382, <i>d</i>	340
287, <i>g</i>	404, N. 2	305, <i>c</i>	366	320, <i>b</i>	383, 1	382, <i>g</i>	341, 3
287, <i>i</i>	316, 3	306	363, 1	320, <i>c</i>	383, 3	382, <i>g, N.</i>	2
288	260	306, <i>a</i>	363, 3	320, <i>d</i>	383, 5	<i>g</i>	341, N.
288, <i>a</i>	260, 1 and N.	307, 1	363, 1	320, <i>e</i>	382, 1 and 2	382, <i>h</i>	269
288, <i>d</i>	260, 1 and N.	307, 2	364	320, <i>e, N.</i>	382, 2 and N.	383	359
288, <i>f</i>	260, 4	307, <i>c,</i> Rem.	363, 4	320, <i>f</i>	383, 1	383, <i>b</i>	273, 4
289	278	307, <i>d</i>	365	321	357	384	388
290	279, 1-3	308	366	321, Rem.	358	384, <i>a</i>	397, 3
290, <i>b</i>	281, 5	308, <i>a</i>	367	321, <i>a</i>	392	384, <i>e</i>	390, 5
290, <i>c</i>	280	308, <i>c</i>	368	321, <i>b</i>	382, 2	384, <i>f</i>	390, 2
290, <i>d</i>	281	308, <i>d</i>	369	321, <i>c</i>	355	385	391
290, <i>d, N.</i>	289, 2	308, <i>e</i>	365	322	342	386, 1	392
291	282	310, <i>a</i>	372	324	343, 1	386, 2, N. 1	144, 2
292	282	311, <i>a</i>	327	324, <i>a</i>	343, 3 and 4	386, <i>a</i>	399, 4
292, <i>a</i>	286	311, <i>b</i>	325, N.	325	347: 348	386, <i>b</i>	392, N. 3
292, <i>c</i>	284	311, <i>c</i>	318, 2	325, <i>a</i>	346, 1 and 2	386, <i>c</i>	392, N. 2
292, <i>d</i>	285, 1	312	375	325, <i>b</i>	346, 1 and 2	386, A	260, 1-3
292, <i>e</i>	285, 2	313	378, 1	325, <i>c</i>	345	386, B	315
293	283	313, <i>a, b</i>	378, 2	326	355: 378, 6	386, B, N.	2
293, <i>a</i>	283	313, <i>c</i>	378, 3	327	350	387	316, 6
293, <i>b</i>	283	313, <i>d</i>	378, 6	327, <i>a</i>	349	387, <i>a</i>	403
293, <i>c</i>	369	313, <i>e</i>	378, 5	328	354	387, <i>b</i>	404
294, <i>a</i>	295, 1	313, <i>f</i>	378, 5 and N.	328, <i>a</i>	352	388	394: 395
294, <i>b</i>	295, 1	313, <i>g</i>	378, 2	329	333	389	393
294, <i>c</i>	295, N.	313, <i>h</i>	382, 1	330, A	262	389, Rem.	393
294, <i>d</i>	295, 2	313, <i>i</i>	323	330, B, 1	268	340-1	400
295	287	314	376	330, B, 2	273, 2	342	405
295, Rem.	288	314, <i>a</i>	376	330, B, 3	273, 1	343	471
296	296	315, <i>a</i>	361: 361, 1 and 2	330, <i>b, 1</i>	274, 1	344	471
296, Rem.	296	315, <i>b</i>	361, 2	330, <i>b, 2</i>	274, 1	345	471
297	289 ff.	315, <i>c</i>	465, 4	330, <i>e</i>	268	346	471
298	289, 1 and 2	317	328	330, <i>f</i>	272	347, <i>a</i>	16, 2
298, <i>a</i>	289, N.	317, 1	328	331	333	347, <i>b</i>	17, 4
298, <i>c</i>	289, 3	317, 2	382, 3	331, <i>a</i>	273, 2	347, <i>c</i>	17, 4
299	290	317, 3	333	331, <i>b</i>	273, 1	347, <i>d</i>	17, 5
299, <i>a</i>	290	317, 3, N.	382, 4, N.	331, <i>b, N.</i>	273, 1	347, <i>d, N. 1</i>	16, 3
299, <i>b</i>	300	317, <i>c</i>	332	331, <i>c</i>	273, 3	348, 1	18, 1 and Exc.
300	291	319	337	331, <i>e, 2</i>	335	348, 4	19: 19, 1
300, N.	291, N. 1	319, 1	337	331, <i>f</i>	336	348, 5	19
301	292					348, 5, 1-4	19, 2
302	301					348, 6	19: 19, 3
303	302, 1 and 2					348, 7	19: 19, 4

A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.
848, 8	19	856	512	859, <i>f</i>	516	876	498: 506
848, 9	20	858	511	859, <i>g</i>	523	877	527
848, 10	20	858, <i>a</i>	511	860	513	878	527
849	21: 22	858, <i>b</i>	521	862	523	879	528, n. 1
850	21	859, <i>b</i>	524	862, <i>a</i>	523	881	530
851	22	859, <i>c</i>	514	862, <i>b</i>	521	882	527
855, <i>a</i>	510	859, <i>d</i>	514	862, <i>c</i>	524	883	531
855, <i>b</i> ,	510	859, <i>e</i>	515	863	526	884	532

Harkness	Mooney	Harkness	Mooney	Harkness	Mooney	Harkness	Mooney
2	1	86, 5	11, 5	53, 2	37, 1	108, 1-4	50, 2, Exc.
3, II	8	88	24	54	38		4
4	3	89, 1-2	25, 1	55-56	39	109	50, 2
5	5	89, 2, 1)	25, 3	57	42	110, 1-4	50, 2, Exc.
6	6	89, 2, 2)	25, 2	58	42		5
7	7	41	26	59	43	111	50, 3
8	14	42, I	27, 1: 28,	60	44: 45	112-115	50, 3, Exc.
16, I, 1	17, 4		1	61	46	116	53
16, I, 2	17, 5	42, II	27, 1: 28,	62	47	117	54, 1
16, II	17, 2		2	62, II	49, 1, 4	118	54, 3
16, III	17, 3	42, II, n.	28, 3	62, III	49, 2-4	119, 1	54, 2
16, III, n.		43, 1	26	62, IV	49, 4	119, 3	54, 4
1	16, 1	43, 2	27, 2	62, IV, n.		120, and	
16, III, n.		44	29, 1	1	49, n.	1-2	55
2	16, 4	45	29, 2	63	47	121, 1	55, 4
17	15, 1	45, 1-2	29, n.	64	47	122, and 1	55, 2
18	15, 2	46	30	64, 2	49, 6	123	55, 1
18, 1, 2)	15, 4	46, 2	32	66	47: 48	124	26: 28
18, 2, 1)	15, 3	47	31	67	39	180, 1-3	56, 1
22	9	48	33	68	52	181	56, 2 and
23, 1-2	10, 1	48, 4	29, 2	68, 3	52, 4		3
24-25	9	49, 1-2	33, n. 1	68, 4	52, 7	182	57
27	10, 2 and	49, 3	33, n. 3	69-98	51	183, 1	61, 4
	8	49, 4	33, n. 2	99	50, 1	183, 2	61, 7
28-29	2	50	34	100, 1-3	50, 1, Exc.	183, 3	61, 4
30	11, 7	51	35	1	1	183, 5	61, 5
31	11, 8	51, 2, 4)	35, n. 2	101, 1-2	50, 1, Exc.	184	60: 61, 1
33, 1	11, 1 and	51, 4, 1)-		2	2		and 2
	2	8)	35, n. 3	102, 1-2	50, 1, Exc.	186, 1-2	58, 1
33, 2	12, 6	51, 5	36, 2 and	3	3	187, 1	58, 3
33, 3	12, 3		3	103, 1-2	50, 1, Exc.	187, 2	58, 6
33, 4	11, 6	51, 6	36, 4	4	4	188	58, 2
34, 1	11, 4	51, 7 and		104, 1-2	50, 1, Exc.	141-143	59
34, 2	12, 2, 5,	n.	37, 1	5	5	146-147	62
	and 7	51, 8	29, 2	105	50, 2	148	63, 3
34, 3	12, 8	52, 1	35, n. 1	106, 1-2	50, 2, Exc.	149	63, 4
35, 3, 2)	11, 4	52, 3	36, 6	1	1	150	63, 5
36, 2	11, 4	53	35	107, 1-3	50, 2, Exc.	151	64, 1, 2,
36, 3, 2)	106, 2	53, 1	37, 2	2	2		and 5

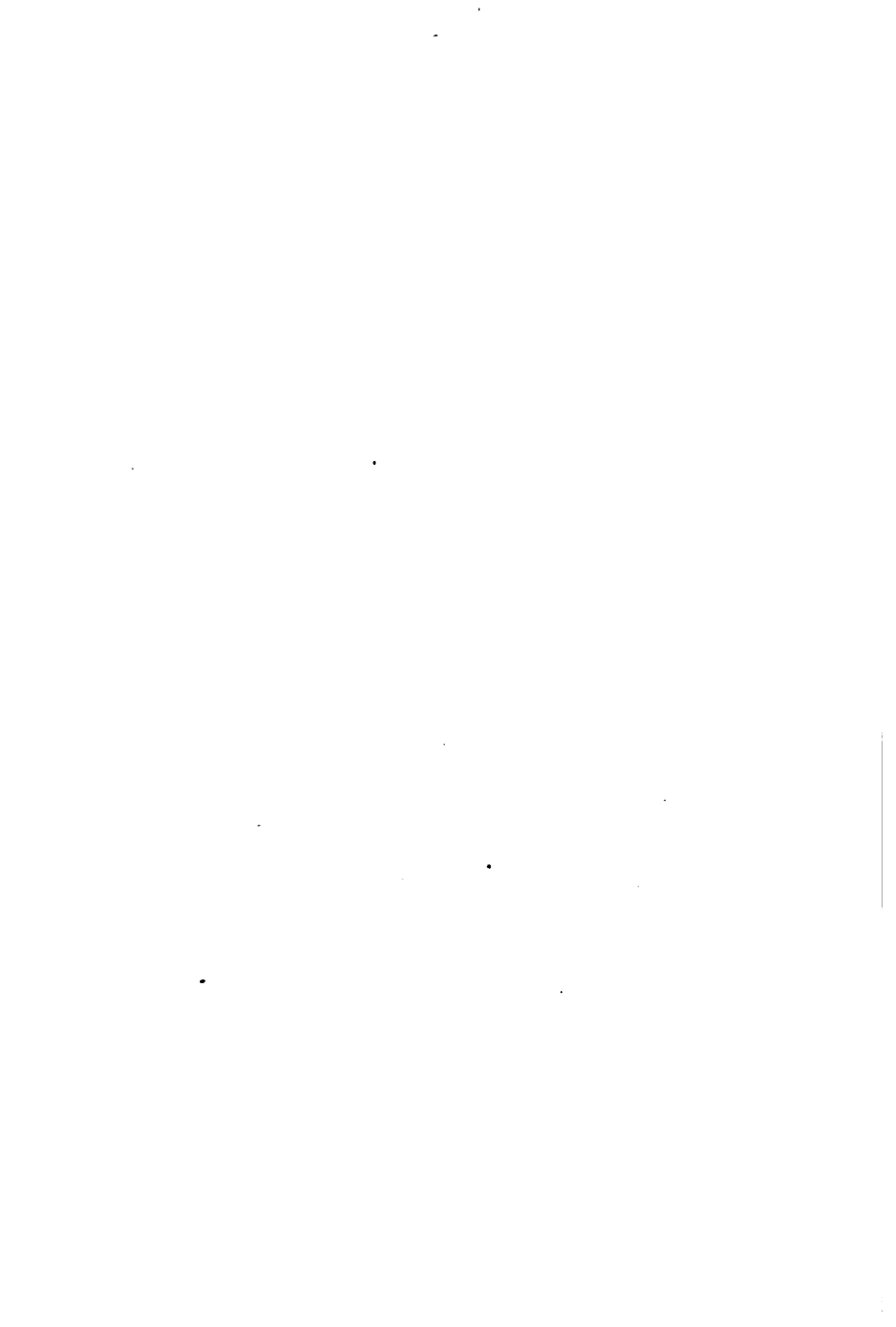
II.	M.	II.	M.	II.	M.	II.	M.
151, n. 2	86, 2	186, I	80	212	96	262, n. 1	114, 20-33
152, I-III	65	186, II-		218	95	262, n. 2	115
153	65, 1	III	80	214	96	263	114
154	65, 2 and 6	186, IV	80	215	95	264	112
155-156	65, 3	186, V	81	216	96	265	112
157	65, 5	186, VI	80	217	99	266	111
158	65, 4	186, 1	80, n.	218	99	267, 1	110
158, 1	66, Exc. 4	186, 4	85	219	99	267, 2-3	111
158, 2	66	187	82	222, I	90, 1	268, 1	135
158, 2, 2)	66, Exc. 2	187, 1	82, 1	222, II	90, 2	268, 2	135, 1 and 2
159, 1	66, Exc. 5	187, 3	82, 2-3	222, III	90, 3		
160	67	187, 4	85	223-230	94	268, 3	89, 1
162	68 : 69	188, and		231-232	97	269	118
163, 1	69, 1	I	83	233	98, 1	270	118
163, 1, n.	69, 2	188, II, 1	83	234	98, 2	271, 1	116
163, 2	69, 3	188, II, 2	83, 1	235	100, 1	271, 2	117
163, 3	71, 1	188, II, 4	85	235, 3	101, 4	272, 1	116
164	69, 4 and n.	189	84	236	100, 3	272, 2	117
165	69, 6	190, 1	84, 1	237	100, 4	272, 3	121
165, n. 1	65, 7	190, 2,		238	100, 6	272, 3, n. 2	127
165, n. 2	69, 5	1)-2)	84, 2-7	239	101, 6	273	120
166	71, 1	191	85	240, 1	101, 2	274	120
167	71, 2	191, n.	390, 5	240, 3	101, 1	275	118
168	71, 3	193, I-II	87, 2	240, 4	101, 3	276-278	119
169, 1	70, 3	195, I-II	87, 1	240, 6	101, 5	279	121
169, 2	70, 1	195, II, 1	205, n.	247	91	280	147
169, 3	70, 2	195, II, 2	89	249	90	281	147, 1
169, 4	70, 3	196, I-III	88, 1	250	102, 1	282	147, 2
170	70, 3	197, I-II	88, 2	251	103	283	136
170, 2	428	197, II,		251, 2	103, 3	284	131
171-172	72	n. 1	307	251, 3	103, 1	285	132
174	72	197, n. 2	88, 2	251, 4	103, 2	286	130
175	73	198, I-II	304	251, 5	102, 2	287	130
175, n. 1	74, 1	199	88, 3	251, 6	103, 4	288	137
176-177	73	200	88, 1	252	104, 3	288, 2	137, 1-5
178	74, 2	200, I	261	253	104, 3 and n.	289	138
179	73	200, II	287 : 288	254	104, 2	290, I	93
180	72	200, III	301 : 302	255, I, 1-2	104, 4	290, II-	
180, 3	72, n. 1	200, IV	278	255, I, 3	104, n. 1	III	138
181	72	201	92, 1	255, I, 4	104, n. 2	291	139
182	75	202	92, 3	255, II	104, 1	292	140
183	76	202, n. 1-		256	105	293	141
184	77	n. 2	90	256, 1	106, 3	294	143
184, 2	79	204	93	257	109, 1	295	142
184, 3	77, 2	205	95	258	109	296	142, n. 3
184, 4	79	206	96	259, 1	107	297, I	144, 6
184, 6	77, 4	207	95	259, 2	108	297, II, 1	144, 1
185	78	208	96	260	134	297, II, 2	144, 2
185, n. 1	78, n. 2	209	95	261	113	297, II, 3	144, 4
185, n. 2	78, n. 3	210	96	262	114	297, III, 1	144, 5
		211	95			298	145

H.	M.	H.	M.	H.	M.	H.	M.
299	145, 1	333	162, 1-4	374	192	390	206
300	145, 2	333, 1	162, 1	374, 1	193	391, I	214
301	145, 3	333, 2	162, 2	374, 2	192, 1 and 2	391, II, 1	214, 3
304	148	333, 3	162, 3			391, II, 2	258, 2
304, I, 2	150, 1	333, 4	162, 4	374, n. 1-	192, 1 and 2 n.	391, II, 4	214, 2: 226, 3
304, I, 3, 1)	149, 1	334	166, 1 and 2	374, n. 4	192, 2 and n.	393-5	215
304, II, 1	149, 8	335	158			396, I	217, 1
304, II, 2	149, 2 and 3	336	157, 1	376	194	396, II	216, 1
		337	157, 2	377	188	396, II, n.	216, 3
304, IV	148, 2	338	157, 3	378, and 1	198	396, III, 1	216, 1
305	151	339	157, 4	378, and 2	195	396, III, n. 1	216, 2
306	152, 1	340	156	379	196: 197	396, III, n. 2	216, 4
306, 2	152, 2	341	169	379, 1	197, n.:		
306, 3	152, 3	342	170		243, n.	396, IV	225
306, 4	152, 2-5	344	168	379, 2	233, 3	396, V	222: 224
307, n. 1	153, 1	344, 1-5	12	380	199	396, V, n.	222
308	153, 2	344, 6	153, 2	380, II	199, 1	396, VI	219
309	154	351, 1	384	380, II, 1	199, n. 1	397	225
309, 1	464, 1	351, 1, n.		380, II, 2, 1)	199, 2	397, 1	225, 1
309, 2	464, 2	1	385, 1	380, II, 2)	199, 1	397, 2	225, 4
310, 1	465, 1	351, 1, n.		380, II, 3	199, n. 3	397, 3	225, 2 and 3
310, 2	465, 3	2	385, 3	380, II, 4	213	397, 3, n.	
310, 3	465, 5	351, 1, n.		381	200	2	225, n. 4
310, 4	465, 8	3	385, 4	381, n. 3, 1)	200, n. 1	3	225, n. 2
310, 5	465, 7	352	386	381, n. 3, 2)	200, n. 3	397, 4	225, 5
311, 1	470, 6	353	385, 5	381, n. 3, 3)	200, n. 2	398, 3	433, 2
311, 3	470, 4	353, n. 3	385, n.	382	201	398, 4	218, 2
311, 4	470, 5	358	171	382	205	398, 5	258, 2
311, 5	470, 2	360	173, 1	384, I-II	205	399, I	226, 1
311, 6	470, 3	360, n. 2	173, 2	384, II, 1, 2)	208	399, II	226, 2
311, 7	470, 1	362	174, 3			400	214
312	155	362, 2, 2)	173, 3	384, II, 1, 3)	206	401	217, 2
318	156	363	179	384, II, 2	203	401, n. 2	217, n. 2
314	156	363, 1	179	384, II, 5	205, n.	401, n. 3	217, n. 1
321	159, 1	363, 4, 1)	433, 2	384, I-II	205	402-3	217, 2
322	159, 4	363, 4, 2)	242, 3	385, I-II	205	404-5	224
323	159, 2	363, 5	180, 2	385, II, 1	204	406, I	229
324, 2-3	159, 3	364	180, 1	386	202	406, II	227, 1
324, 5	159, 5	367	232	387	212	406, III	230
325	160	368	256	387, n. 1-		406, III, n.	227, 5
326	161, 1 and 4	369	257	2	212, n. 2	407	227, 2-4
		370	183	388, n.	207, n. 1	408, I, 1	230, 1
327	161, 1-5	371	184	388, 1	207, n. 2	408, I, 2	230, 2
328	163, 3	371, I, 1	184, 1	388, 1, n.	284	408, II	230, 4
329	163, 1 and 2	371, I, 2	184, 2	388, 2	247, 2	408, III	230, 3
		371, II	190, 1	389	209	408, IV	230, 4
380	163, 2 and 6	371, III	190, 2				
		372	185, 1 and 2				
381	164, 1-6		191				
382	165	373	191				

H.	M.	H.	M.	II.	M.	H.	M.
409, I	227, 4	429	243	447	433, 1	467, III, 2	305, 6
409, II	228	429, 1	243, 2	448	434	467, III, 4	352
409, III	229	430	249	448, n.	439	467, III, 5	305, 7
410, I, 1	227, 6	430, n. 3	249, Rem.	449	437	467, III, 6	305, 8
410, I, 2	227, 4		2	449, 1	437	468	306, 1
410, II, 3	228, n.	431	255	449, 2	435, n.	469, I	306, 1
410, III	228	432	258	449, 5	438	469, II	306, 3
410, IV, n.		433	258, 1	450	441	469, II, 1	306, 2
2	229, n. 1	434	258, 3	450, 1	442, 1	469, II, 2	306, 4
410, V	231	435	258, 4	450, 2	442, 1	470	310
411	232	436	258	450, 3	442, 2	471, I	307, 1
412, I	233, 1	437	258, 2	450, 4	443, 1	471, II	307, 2
412, II, 1	233, 2	438	174, 2:	451	445, 1	471, II, 1,	
412, II, 2	233, n. 2		173	451, 2	445, 5	1)	308, 1
412, II, 3	233, 3	438, 4	416	451, 3	446, 1	471, II, 3	307, n.
418	234:236:	438, 5	412, 4	452	447	471, II, 4	343, 1-3
	254	438, 6	174, 6	453	455	471, II, 5	308, 2
414, I-III	236: 237	439, 1	178, 2	454	83	471, II, 6	306, 1
414, IV	252	439, 2	177, 3	454, 2	387, 1	472	309
415	234	439, n.	177, 4	454, 3	390, 6	472, 1	313
415, I	247, 2	439, 3	177, 2	455	84, 1-3	472, 2	343, 3
415, II	234, 1	439, 4	415	455, 1	84, 1 and 2	473	311
415, III	235	440, n.	425	455, 2	390, 5	474	318, 1
416, 1, 1)	254	440, 2	491	456	457, 1	475, I	318, 1
416, 1, 2)	254, n. 1	440, n. 1-		457	458: 459	475, II, 1	380
417	239, 1	2	423	457, 1	462	475, II, 2	363:368:
417, 1	239, 1	440, n. 4	412, n.	458	84, 5 and 7		369
417, n. 1	239, 2	441	412	458, 1-2	460	475, II, 3	378, 4 and
417, n. 2	239, 3	441, 1	412, 1 and	459	440	5	
417, 2	248		2	459, 4	461	475, II, 4	356: 357
418	247, 1	441, 2	412, 2-5	460	174, 1	475, II, 5	342
419, I	244	442	424	460, 1	174, 2	476, 1	369
419, II	246	443	413	460, n. 2	172	476, 3	381
419, III	245	444	426	461	174, 6	476, 4	318, 2
420	247, 1	444, 1	426	461, 1-2	174, 6	476, 5	318, 3
421, I	253	444, 2	429	461, 4	174, 5	477, 1	321: 325
421, II	250	444, 3	428	462	181, n. 2	477, II	327
421, III	238, 2	445	182, 1 and	463, II	175, 1	480	325: 327
422	251		5	463, II, 1	176	482	325
423	248	445, 3	182, 3	463, II, 3	175, 2	483	321: 325
423, n. 2	249	445, n. 1	182, 3	463, II, 4	175, 4	483, 1-3	325
424	238, 1	445, 4	182, 4	464	184, n. 1	483, 6	376
425, I	240, 1	445, 6	451: 452	465	188	484, I	325
425, II	242, 1	445, 7	182, 2:	465, 1	205, n.	484, II	321
425, II, 1,	240, 2:		445, 4	465, 2	89	484, III	323
1)	241, 1	445, 8	450:454,	465, n. 2	89, 1	484, IV	321
425, II, 2	241, 3		1	466	305, 1	484, V	324
425, II, n.		445, 9	454, 2	467, I	305, 1	485	327
2	241, 2	446	432, 1	467, II	305, 5	485, n. 3	327, n.
426, 1	242, 1	446, n. 2	432, 2	467, III	305, 4	486	327
426, 2	242, 2	446, n. 3	216, 5	467, III, 1	305, 4	487	319

H.	M.	H.	M.	H.	M.	H.	M.
487, 1-2	320	507, III	366	526	399, 1 and 2	541	287
488	319	507, III, 1	371 : 372			542, I	289
489	321, 4	508	363	527, I	402	542, II	290
490-1	315	508, 1	361	527, II	403	542, III	291
492	314	508, 8	361, 1 and 2	527, III	404	542, IV	292
493	314			528	392-4	548	295, 1
495, I	316, 4	509	364	529, I	388	548, n.-	
495, II	316, 1	509, n. 3	403	529, II	405	544, 1	296
495, IV	316, 6	510	366-9	529, II, n.		544, 1, n.	298
495, VI	316, 2	510, n. 1	366	1, 1)	405	544, 2	297
496, I	317, 1	510, n. 2	367	529, II, 1	390	544, n. 1	297
496, II	317, 2	511	365	529, II, 1,		544, n. 3	300
496, II, n.		511, 1, n.		n. 1	390, 2	545	259
2	317, 3	8	368	529, II, 1,		546	301
497	328	511, 2	369	n. 3	390, 1	547	302, 1
497, I	382, 8	512	370	529, II, 8,	390,	547, n. 1	302, 1
497, II	328	518, I	376	1)-2)	3 and 4	547, n. 2	302, 2
497, II, 1	328	518, II	375	529, II, 8,		548	278
497, II, 1,		515, I	378, 5	n. 2	390, 4	549, 1-3	282
n.	330	515, II	378, 4	529, II, 5	389	549, 5	281, 4
497, II, 2	331 : 335	515, III	378, 2 and 6 : 382,	530	391 : 392 :	549, n. 2	286
498, I	333	1			395	550	279
498, II	334	515, III,		530, n. 4	399, 4	550, n. 3	284
498, III,	336	n. 2	378, 5, n.	531	401	550, n. 4	281
499, 1	329	515, III,		532	261	550, n. 5	280
499, 2	273, 1	n. 3	378, 2	533, I, 1-		552, 2	467
499, 8	333	516, I	357	2	264	552, 8	361, n.
500	337	516, II	358	533, II	277, 1-3	554	464, 1
500, I-II	382, 4	517	355 : 382,	534	266	554, I	465, 1
501, I, 1	341, 2	2		534, 1	274	554, II	465, 3
501, I, 2	341, 1	518	343	535, 1, 1-		554, III	465, 5
501, II, 1	341, 1	518, n. 1	343, 1	8	268	554, IV	465, 8
501, II, 2	341, 8	518, n. 2	343, 3	535, I, 4	285, 2	554, V	465, 7
502, 1	267, n.	519, I	349	535, II	273, 1-3	555	464, 2
502, 2	339	519, II	354	535, III	273, 4	555, I	470, 6
502, 8	340	520, I, 1	350	536	266	555, III	470, 4
503, I	383, 2	520, I, 2	351	536, 1	276	555, IV	470, 5
503, I, n.		520, I, 2	351	536, 2	265	555, V	470, 2
1	383, 5	520, II	351, 1	537	260, 1-8	555, VI	470, 8
503, II,		521	344-8	537, 1	260, 1 and n.	555, VII	470, 1
1-2	383, 1	522	391			556-7	155
503, II, 3	383, 8	523, I	392	537, 8	260, 4	559-61	471
504	341, 8	523, II	394	537, n. 2	260, 4 and n.	562	473
504, 1-4	335 : 341,	523, II, 2	395			565-73	471
3		523, III	393	538	262 : 267	575	17, 1
505, I, 1-3	341, 3	524	392	538, III	275	576, I	17, 4
505, I, 4	341, n.	524, 1	392, n. 2	540, I	388	576, II	17, 5
505, II, 1	341, 3	524, 2	392, n. 3	540, II	267 : 268	577	17, 2
506	360	525	396-8	540, III	333 : 341	578	17, 3
507, I	363	525, 2	398, 4	540, IV	359	579	18
507, II	364					579, I, 1	18, 1, Exc.

H.	M.	H.	M.	H.	M.	H.	M.
579, I, 2	18, 2	585, III	21, Exc. 3	608, VI	517	636, V, 2	490
579, I, 3	18, 2, Exc.	585, IV	21, Exc. 4	610	523	636, V, 3	492
580, I	19	585, V	21, Exc. 5	610, 3	523	637, V	475
580, II-		586	22, 1	611 and 1	521	637, VII	476
III	20	586, I-II	22, 1 and 2	611, 2	522	637, VIII	474
581, I	19, 3	596	509	611, 4	521	637, XI, 1	495
581, II	19, 4	596, 1	510	614-5	526	637, XI, 3	477
581, III	19, 1	597	512	635, 2	479	637, XI, 5	496
581, IV	19, 2	598	510	655, 3	480	637, XI, 6	494
581, VI	20, 1	599	511	636, I	485	641-5	498-506
581, VII	20, 3	600	511	636, I, 1	483	646	527: 529
581, VIII	20, 2	602	521: 522	636, II, 1	486	647	528
581, IX	20, 4	607	524	636, III	487	648	530: 531
582	21	608, I	514	636, III, 1	484	649	507: 508
582	22, 1	608, II	515	636, III, 2	488	650	532
585	21	608, III	519	636, III, 3	472	651, I	16, 4
585, I	21, Exc. 1	608, IV	522	636, IV, 2	497	651, II	17, 4
585, II	21, Exc. 2	608, V	516	636, IV, 3	491	651, VII	16, 2



INDEX

The references are to sections

A

- a*, 2; quan. of final, 19. 1; quan. in increm. of nouns, 21; quan. in increm. of verbs, 22.
- ā*, sound, 5; characteristic of 1st dec., 31; stem-vowel of 1st conj., 92. 1; *ā*-stems, 33.
- ǎ*, sound, 5; in nom. pl. neut. 3d dec., 39; gen. of nouns in, 50. 3; ending of acc. sing., 52. 2; changed, 9.
- ā-* (*ab-*, *abs-*, *as-*, *au-*), 12. 1.
- ā*, prep., use, 258. 3; with abl. of agt., 247. 2; with abl. of separation, 236. notes; with abl. of place from which, 233.
- Abbreviations, 532.
- Ablative case, 29. 2.
in *-ābus*, 33. note 2; in *-ī* in 3d dec., 49. 4; in *-is* for *-ibus*, 52. 8; in *-ubus*, 4th dec., 54. 1; of adjs. 3d dec., 66; of Greek nouns, 3d dec., 52. 5; in *-ō*, *-ā*, *-e*, *-is*, as advbs., 149. 2 and 3.
- Syntax, 232-255.
absolute, 255.
agent, 247. 2.
accompaniment, 244.
attendant circumstance, 255. 6.
cause, 254; with *prae*, 254. note 2.
comparison, 239.
manner, 245.
material, 235.
means, 247. 1.
measure, 248.
place from which, 233.
place where, 240, 241.
price, 251.
- Ablative, Syntax:
quality, 246.
separation, 236, 237.
source, 234.
specification, 238.
time before or after, 249.
time how long, 249. 2.
time when, 243.
time within which, 243.
with *opus est*, 252.
with verbs of filling, 250.
with verbs, 253.
with prepositions, 258.
in apposition with locative, 242. 3.
denoting selection, 225. 5, note 2.
- Abstract nouns, 25. 2.
endings, 160, 161. 4.
for concrete, 407.
pl. for sing., 408.
sing. only, 56. 1.
- Abundant verbs, 146.
- ābus*, 33. note 2.
- āc*, 465. 1.
- āc si*, with subj., 375.
- Accent, rules of, 15.
gen. of prop. names in *-ius*, 36. 1.
- accipiter*, 49. 6.
- Accusative, 29. 2.
as adv., 149. 1.
in *-im*, 49. 1-3.
Syntax, 183-200.
adverbial, 195.
cognate, 190.
direct obj., 184-194.
exclamations, 200.
extent in space, 196; in time, 197.
general uses, 183.
instead of dat., 214. note 3.

Accusative, Syntax :

- instead of obj. gen., 216. 2.
 - limit of motion, 199.
 - person and thing, 192-194.
 - result produced, 189-194.
 - retained, 193; with compounds, 194.
 - specification, 198.
 - two accs., obj. and pred., 189-191.
 - with compounds, 185. 2.
 - with impersonals, 186.
 - with passives, 188.
 - with prepositions, 258.
 - with verbs of affections or emotions, 187.
 - with verbs of asking, begging, etc., 192. 2.
 - with verbs of considering, 191. 3.
 - with verbs of holding, giving, taking, 191. 4.
 - with verbs of making, appointing, choosing, 191. 2.
 - with verbs of naming, 191. 1.
 - with verbs of teaching and hiding, 192. 1.
 - with verbs meaning to understand, distinguish, inscribe, 191. 6.
- ācer*, 65. 1.
- Active Voice, 87. 1; conjug., 88.
- acus*, gen., 54. 3.
- ad-* (*ac-*, *ag-*, *a-*, *al-*, *ap-*, *ar-*, *as-*, *at-*), 12. 2.
- ad*, prep. with acc., 258. 1; with acc. of town, 199. 2, note 1.
- adēs*, 159. 4.
- Adjectives, 62 ff.
- comparison, 67 ff.
 - comparative, formation, 68.
 - change of stem, 69. 6.
 - defective, 71.
 - of adjs. in *-dicus*, *-ficus*, *-volus*, 69. 4.
 - of adjs. in *-er*, 69. 1.
 - superlative, formation, 69.
 - superlative, in *-limus*, 69. 3.
- without terminational comparison, 70.
- composition, 170.

Adjectives :

- connective expressed, 425.
 - 1st and 2d decs., 63 ff.; endings, 63. 2; irregular, 64; with *-e* in abl., 49. 4, note.
 - 3d dec, 65 ff.; comparatives, 66; neuter wanting, 66. exc. 4; pres. act. part., 65. 5.
 - derivation, 162-166; from names of countries, 164. 6.
 - numerals, 72.
 - possessives, 78.
 - quantity, 23. 1 and 2.
- Syntax :
- agreement of attributive, 178, 415.
 - agreement of predicate, 171, 174, 175, 177, 414, 416, 417.
 - agreeing with sense, 418.
 - as nouns, 412.
 - comparative, 426 and 429.
 - comparative equivalents for, 419.
 - comparative intensified, 428.
 - denoting race, 422.
 - equal to gen., 421.
 - equal to rel. clause, 424.
 - equal to prepositional phrase, 411.
 - superlative, 427.
 - superlative intensified, 428.
 - with proper name, 420.
 - with translation of adverbs, 413.
- admoneō*, constr., 227. 4.
- Admonishing, verbs of, constr. with, 333.
- adolēscō*, 89. 2.
- ador*, gen., 50. 1, exc. 2.
- adulter*, 35. 3.
- Adverbs, 24, 148-152.
- comparison, 152.
 - formation by case-forms, 149.
 - formation by composition, 150.
 - formation by endings, 148.
 - formation from pronouns, 151.
 - in letters, 313.
 - numeral, 72.
 - position, 471.
 - with part. gen., 225. 5.

- adversarius*, 412. 5.
 Adversative conjunctions, 465. 5.
 clauses, 377-379.
adversus, constr., 214. note 3.
adversum, 258. 1.
 Advising, verbs of, constr. with, 333.
ae, 3.
 sound, 6.
 changed, 9. 1.
acēdēs, 57.
acēdītis, 49. 4, note.
Aenēās, 34.
aequor, 44; *gend.*, 50. 1, exc. 2.
-aeus, 164. 4, note.
 Agent, 207, 247. 2.
ager, *dec.*, 35.
-āi, *gend.*, 1st *dec.*, 33. note 1.
āiō, 144. 1.
alacer, 71. 3.
alicubi, 151.
alicunde, 151.
aliquis, 84. 2, 456.
aliter, 148. 2, note.
alius, 64. 5; reciprocal use, 440.
Allia, 28. note.
alvus, *gend.*, 37. 2.
amb- (*am-*), *insep. prep.*, 153. 2.
aliquā, 151.
aliquandō, 151.
aliquantus, 85.
aliquis, 84. 2.
aliquō, 151.
aliquot, 85.
aliquotiēns, 151.
-ālis, 163. 2.
 Alliteration, 495.
 Alphabet, 1.
alter, 64. 4; reciprocal use, 440.
alter uter, 86. 2.
altior, 65. 6.
ambāgēs, 49. 6.
ambō, 73, 461.
amicus, as a noun, 412. 5.
amnis, 49. 4.
amō, conjugation, 95.
amussis, 49. 1.
an, 385. 5, 390. 4.
an nōn, 385. note, 390. 3.
 Anacoluthon, 489.
 Anapaest, 512.
 Anaphora, 472.
 Ancient verb forms, 101.
angustiae, 56. 3.
animal, 47.
-āns, participial adjs. in, 66. exc. 3.
 Answers to questions, 386.
ante, 258. 1.
 in dates, 501. 4.
 in expressions of time, 249.
 Antecedent of *rel.*, 449-454.
 attracted into case of *rel.*, 454. 2.
 attracted into *rel. clause*, 453.
 implied in a possessive, 451.
 omitted, 452.
 repeated in *rel. clause*, 450.
 Antepenult, 15. 2.
antequam, 470. 6; with *ind.*, 350; with
 subj., 351.
-ānus, 163. 5, 164. 1 and 4.
 Aorist, 307. 2.
 Apocope, 480.
 Apodosis, 360.
 Aposiopesis, 477.
 Apposition, 179-181.
 acc. with cl., 180. 2.
 partitive, 180. 1.
 position, 471.
 predicate, 181.
 with *locative*, 242. 2.
aptus, *constr.*, 214. note 4.
apud, 258. 1.
aqua, 57.
aquā et igni interdicere, 49. 4.
-ar, *nom. in. gend.*, 50. 3.
ardor, *gend.*, 50. 1, exc. 2.
-āris, 163. 2.
-ārium, 159. 2.
-ārius, 163. 2.
arma, 56. 3.
 Arsis, 511.
artus, 54. 1.
-ās, *final*, 20.
 gen. ending, 33. note 1.
 in 1st *dec.*, 34; *adj. ending*, 164. 4.
 in 3d *dec. gend.*, 50. 2.
ās, *gend.*, 50. 2, exc. 1, 527.
-ās in *acc. pl.*, 52. 9.
 Asking, verbs of, *constr. with*, 333.
asper, 63. 5.
aspergere, *constr. with*, 203.

Aspirates, 8.
 Asseverations, 326.
 -*assim* = -*āverim*, 101. 3.
 Assimilation of Consonants, 11. 1.
 -*assō* = -*āverō*, 101. 3.
 Asyndeton, 483.
at, 465. 5.
 -*ātim*, 148. 3.
atque, 465. 1.
atqui, 465. 5.
 Attributive, see Adjectives.
 -*ātus*, 159. 5, 163. 4.
au, 3; sound, 6; changed, 9. 1.
audeō, 89. 1.
audiō, 95; with pres. part., 285. 2.
auditū, 302. 2.
 -*aus*, nouns in, gen., 50. 2.
aut, 465. 3, 385. 5.
aut . . . aut, 465. 4.
autem, 465. 5.
auxilium, 57.
āvē, 144. 5.
avis, 49. 4.
 -*āz*, 162. 4.
axis, gen., 50. 2, exc. 2.

B

b changed to *p*, 11. 2.
balneum, 57, 58. 1, 59.
belli, 242. 2.
bellum, 35.
bene, 19. 2; compared, 152. 2.
bigae, 56. 3.
biugum, 16. 3.
 -*bilis*, 162. 3.
bipennis, 49. 3.
bonus, 63. 3; compared, 69. 6.
bonum, 57.
bōs, 18. 2, exc.; dec., 47.
brācae, 56. 3.
 Bringing about, verbs of, constr. with,
 334.
bs, sound, 7.
bt, sound, 7.
 Bucolic Diaeresis, 522.
 -*bulum*, 161. 5.
 -*bundus*, 162. 1.
būris, 49. 1.

C

c, sound, 7.
 nom. in, gen., 50. 3.
cadāver, gen., 50. 1, exc. 4.
 Caesura, 521.
 Calendar, Roman, 498 ff.
calix, gen., 50. 2, exc. 3.
canālis, gen., 50. 2, exc. 2.
canis, 49. 6.
 Capacity, table of, 531.
 Capitals, use of, 13.
carbasus, gen., 37. 2, 59.
 Cardinals, 72.
carcer, 57.
cardō, gen., 50. 1, exc. 1.
carō, dec., 48; gen., 50. 1, exc. 1.
 Caring for, verbs of, constr. with,
 334.
 Case, 29. 2.
 endings, 1st dec., 31; 2d dec., 35;
 3d dec., 39; 4th dec., 53; 5th
 dec., 55.
 Cases alike, 32.
cassēs, 56. 3.
castrum, 57.
caulis, gen., 50. 2, exc. 2.
causā, with gen., 218. 1.
 Causal clauses, 355-358.
 position of, 471.
 replaced by Abl. Abs., 255.
 Causal Conjunctions, 465. 7, 470. 1.
cavēre, constr. with, 204.
cavē nē, with subj., 321. 4.
 -*ce*, 15. 4, 18. exc., 80. note.
cedo, 144. 5.
cēlare, 192. 1, and note.
cēnō, 89. 2.
cēnsēō, constr. with, 270.
cernō, with part., 271.
cēteri, 463.
cēterum, 465. 5.
ch, sound, 7.
 Characteristic clauses, 383.
 Chiasmus, 473.
circum } , 258. 1.
circā }
circiter, 258. 1.
circumdare, constr. with, 203.
cis, 258. 1.
citerior, 71. 1.

- civis*, 49. 4.
clāvis, 49. 3.
coepi, 144. 6, and note.
cōgnitū, 302. 2.
cōgnōmen, 507.
collis, *gend.*, 50. 2, exc. 2.
colōnia, use, 199. 2, note 2.
 Collective nouns, 25. 3.
colus, 37. 2.
com- (*con-*, *col-*, *cor-*, *co-*), 12. 3.
comitium, 57.
 Command expressed by *imp.*, 319; by *subj.*, 321.
 Commanding, verbs of, 333.
 Common nouns, 25. 2.
commoneō, *constr.*, 227. 4.
commonefaciō, *constr.*, 227. 4.
 Comparison of *adjs.*, 67 ff.
 of *advs.*, 152.
 Compelling, verbs of, 341. 2.
compēs, *gend.*, 50. 1, exc. 5.
 Complementary Final Clauses, 333.
 Infinitive, 261.
 Result Clauses, 341.
complēre, 231.
compos, 65. 4.
 Composition, 167 ff.
 of *adjectives*, 170.
 of *nouns*, 169.
 of *verbs*, 168.
 Conative *pres.*, 305. 3; *impf.*, 306. 2.
 Concessive Clauses, 377-379.
 Concession *exp.* by *Subj.*, 323; by *fut.*, 379.
concessū, 61. 1.
 Concrete nouns, 25. 2.
 for *Abstracts*, 406.
 Condemning, verbs of, 228.
 Conditional sentences, 360-376.
 classes, 362.
 exp. in a word or phrase, 372.
 Ideal, 364; in *indir. disc.*, 403.
 Incomplete, 371.
 Logical, 363; in *indir. disc.*, 402.
 Mixed, 370.
 Unreal, 366-369; in *indir. disc.*, 404.
 Conditional Clauses of comparison, 375.
 Conditional particles, 361, 373.
- Conjugation, 88.
 distinguished, 92. 1.
 periphrastic, 98.
 regular, 95.
 synopsis, 94.
 Conjunctions, classified, 154.
 syntax, 464 ff.
 coördinating, 464, 469.
 subordinating, 464, 470.
 position, 471.
 Consonants, 4.
 classification, 8.
 final, omitted, 11. 5.
 pronunciation, 7.
 Consonant changes, 11 ff.
 -stems, 39, 40; with *nom.* in *-is*, 47. 1.
cōnsuēvi, 307. 1, note.
cōnsul, 44.
cōnsulere, *constr.* with, 204.
contrā, 258. 1.
 Contraction of vowels, 10. 1.
 Coördinate conjunctions, 464.
cōpia, 57.
 Copula, 173. 1 and 3.
 Copulative conjunctions, 465. 1.
cor, *gend.*, 50. 1, exc. 2.
cōram, 258. 3.
cornū, 53.
corpus, 46.
 Correlative conjunctions, 465. 2 and 4.
 expressions, 466.
 pronouns, 85.
cōs, *gend.*, 50. 1, exc. 3.
 Countries, names of, *gend.*, 28. 2.
crātis, 49. 3.
-crum, 161. 3.
cucumis, *gend.*, 50. 2, exc. 2.
cui, 19. 3.
-culum, 161. 5.
-culus, *-a*, *-um*, 159. 1, 165.
cum, *prep.*, 258. 3.
 enclitic, 77. 4, 258. 3, note.
 conjunction, 470. 1 and 5.
 causal, 355.
 concessive, 378. 6.
 temporal, 344 ff.
 temporal, with *ind.*, 345, 346.
 temporal, with *subj.*, 347, 348.
cum primū, 470. 6.

cum . . . tum, 465. 2.

-cundus, 162. 1.

cupiō, with inf. and acc., 273. 1.

cūr, 18. 2, exc.

-cus, dissyllables in, 54. 1.

cutis, 49. 3.

D

Dactyl, 512.

Dactylic hexameter, 523 ff.

verse, 513.

pentameter, 526.

dapis, 61. 4.

Dates, 498 ff.

in letters, 502.

Roman into English, 503-505.

Dative, 29. 2.

and abl. in *-ābus*, 33. note 2.

like abl. in pl., 32.

in *-is* for *-ibus*, 52. 8.

in *-ubus*, 4th dec., 54. 1.

of irregular adjs., 64. 4, 5.

5th dec., 55. 3, 4.

Syntax of, 201-214.

agent, 207, 207. 2.

ethical, 209.

object, 201-205.

place, 213.

point of view, 210.

possession, 212.

purpose, 206.

reference, 208, 211.

separation, 211.

with adjs., 214.

with comp. verbs, 202.

with intr. verbs, 205.

with *licet*, 263. note.

with verbs, *aspergere*, *circumdare*, and *dōnāre*, 203.

with other verbs, 204.

dē, 258. 3.

dea, 33. note 2.

dēbuit, with pres. inf., 260. 1, note.

Declarative sentences in indir. disc., 392.

Declensions, 31 ff.

1st dec., 33 ff.

2d dec., 35 ff.

3d dec., 39 ff.

Declensions:

4th dec., 53 ff.

5th dec., 55 ff.

Defective adjectives, comparison, 71.

Defective nouns, 56 ff.

Defective verbs, 144.

passive supplied, 431.

Delaying, verbs of, constr. with, 341. 3.

Deliberative subjunctive, 324.

dēliciae, 56. 3.

dēlicium, 58. 1, 59.

Dēlos, 38.

Demanding, verbs of, constr. with, 333.

Demonstrative adverbs, 151.

pronouns, 80.

Syntax, 182, 441-447.

dēns, gen., 50. 2, exc. 5.

Dentals, 8.

Dental stems, 42.

Dependent clauses, 328 ff.

tenses of subj. in, 314-317.

depending on a dep. clause, 316. 3.

depending on an inf., 316. 5.

Deponent verbs, 89, 97.

Derivation, of words, 156-166.

adjectives, 162-166.

nouns, 159-161.

verbs, 157, 158.

Desideratives, 157. 3.

dēsινere, 100. 2.

deus, 36. 4.

dēterior, 71. 1.

dēterius, 152. 3.

dexter, 63. 5.

Diaeresis, 522.

Diastole, 516.

dic, 18. 2, exc., 100. 6.

dictū, 302. 2.

-dicus, 69. 4.

Didō, 52. 3.

diēs, 55.

difficilis, comp., 69. 3; with supine, 302. 1.

Diminutive verbs, 157. 4.

nouns, 159. 1.

Diphthongs, 3; sound of, 6.

stems in, 47.

dis-, *di-*, inseparable prep., 153. 2.

Disjunctive conjunctions, 465. 3.

dissimilis, comp., 69. 3.
 Distributives, 72.
diū, comp., 152. 2.
dives, 65. 4.
divitiae, 56. 3.
 -*dō*, nouns in gen., 50. 1, exc. 1.
dō, with gerundive, 295. 2.
docēre, constr., 192. 1, note.
domī, locative, 242. 2.
domō, 233. 2.
domōs, 199. 2.
domus, dec., 54. 2.
 gend., 54. 3.
dōnec, in temp. clauses, 354, 470. 6.
dōnō, constr., 203.
dōnom = *dōnum*, 9. 4.
dōs, gend., 50. 1, exc. 3.
 Double consonants, 4.
dt, changed to *s* or *ss*, 11. 4.
 Doubting, verbs of, constr. with, 341. 3.
dubitō, with inf., 341. 3, note.
dūc, 18. 2, exc., 100. 6.
ducenti, 73. 1.
dum, 352-354, 470. 6.
 in proviso, 376.
dummodo, in proviso, 376.
duo, 19. 4, 73.

E

e, 2.
 sound, 5.
 quantity, final, 19. 2; in increments of nouns, 21; verbs, 22.
ē, adverbs in, 148. 1.
 in gen. and dat. 4th dec., 55. 4.
 in stem of 5th dec., 31, 55.
 nouns in, gen., 50. 3.
 prep., 258. 3.
ē, changed, 9. 2.
eā, 151.
eādem, 151.
ecce, 155.
 with nom., 200. note 3.
ēdic, 100. 6.
 Editorial "we," 432. 2.
edō, 139.
ēdūc, 100. 6.
 Effecting, verbs of, 341.
egēre, 231.
ego, 19. 4, 77.

ei, 3; sound, 6.
 -*eis*, 159. 4.
 -*ēla*, 161. 1.
 Elegiac, Distich, 526.
 Elision, 514.
 Ellipsis, 485.
 -*ellus*, -*a*, -*um*, 159. 1, 165.
 Emphasis, devices to secure, 472-477.
 Emphatic position, 471.
ēn, 18. 2, exc., 155, 200. note 3.
 Enclitics, 15. 3, 77. 2-4.
 accent of, 15. 3.
 quantity, 18. exc.
 Encouraging, verbs of, constr. with, 333.
 Endings:
 1st dec., 33.
 2d dec., 35.
 3d dec., 39.
 4th dec., 53.
 5th dec., 55.
 derivative, 157-166.
 personal, in verbs, 91.
enim, 465. 7.
 -*ēns*, participial adjs. in, 66. exc. 3.
 -*ēnsimus*, 72. note 2.
 -*ēnsis*, 163. 2, 164. 4.
ēnsis, gend., 50. 2, exc. 2.
 Enumerations, 468.
eō, verb, 142.
eō, adv., 151.
eōdem, 151.
 Epistolary tenses, 313.
epitomē, 34.
epulae, 56. 3.
epulum, 58. 1, 59.
 -*er*, nouns 2d dec., 35. 2.
 3d dec., gend., 50. 1.
ergā, 258. 1.
ergō, 465. 8.
 -*ernus* (-*urnus*), 166. 1.
 -*es*, quantity of final, 20. exc. 1.
 -*ēs*, nouns in 1st dec., 34.
 -*ēs*, in nom. pl., 52. 6.
 -*essim* = -*uerim*, 101. 3.
 -*esso* = -*uerō*, 101. 3.
et, 465. 1-2 and 6, 469.
et ea, 445. 5.
etenim, 465. 7.
etiam, 465. 6.

etiam si, const., 378. 3.
etsi, const., 378. 4.
-ētum, 159. 2.
 Etymology, figures of, 478-481.
eu, 3; sound, 6.
-ēus, 164. 3.
-eus, 163. 1.
ex- (*ē-*, *ef-*, *ec*), 12. 4.
ex, prep., 258. 3.
-ex, gen. of nouns in, 50. 2, exc. 4.
exercitus, 53.
exsequiae, 56. 3.
exterior, 71. 1.
extrā, 258. 1.
extrēmus, 423.

F

fac, 100. 6.
facile cōgnitū, 302. 2, note.
facilis, 65. 2.
 comp., 69. 3.
 with supine in *-ū*, 302. 1.
faciō, with pres. part., 285. 1.
factū, 302. 2.
fulvus, 71. 2.
famēs, 58. 6.
fārī, 144. 4.
fās, 60, 302. 1.
fascis, gen., 50. 2, exc. 2.
fasti, 56. 3.
faucēs, 56. 3.
 Fearing, verbs of, 336.
 Feet, principal, 512.
fēlix, 65. 3.
fer, 100. 6.
-fer, 35. 3, 63. 5.
ferō, 140.
ferrō ignīque, 49. 4.
-ficus, 69. 4.
fidō, 89. 1.
fidus, comp., 71. 2.
 Fifth declension, 55.
 Figures of Etymology, 478-481.
 Prosody, 514-522.
 Rhetoric, 493-497.
 Syntax, 482-492.
filia, dat. and abl. pl., 33. note 2.
filius, 36. 2 and 3.
 Final clauses, 328 ff.
 Final consonant, omitted, 11. 5.

finis, 57.
fiō, 143.
 First conjugation, 95, 96.
 dec., 33 ff.
flūmen, 45.
 Folk names, 49. 6.
 Following, verbs of, constr. with,
 341. 2.
fōns, gen., 50. 2, exc. 5.
fore ut, 404.
 Formation of words, 156 ff.
fornix, gen., 50. 2, exc. 4.
fōrs, 61. 2.
fortūna, 57.
 Fourth conjugation, 95, 96.
 dec., 53 ff.
frāter, 49. 6.
frēnum, 59.
 Frequentatives, 157. 1.
frētus, 247. note 1.
 Fricatives, 40.
 stems, 46.
frūgī, 66. exc. 5.
 compared, 69. 5.
frūgis, 61. 4.
fruor, with abl., 253.
fungor, with abl., 253.
 conj., 97.
fūr, 18. 2, exc.
fūstis, gen., 50. 2, exc. 2.
 Future on pres. stem, 90. 1.
 concessive, 379.
 subj., 317.
 syntax, 310.
 Future Perfect, 90. 2.
 in conclusion, 363. 4.
 subj., 317.
 syntax, 311.
futūrum esse ut, with subj., 404.

G

g, sound, 7.
 changed to *c*, 11. 2.
gaudeō, 89. 1.
 Gender, 26-28.
 different forms for masc. and
 fem., 27. 3.
 names of living beings, 27.
 names of things, 28.

Gender:

- 1st dec., 33.
- 2d dec., 35, 37. exc.
- 3d dec., 50.
- 4th dec., 53, 54. 3.
- 5th dec., 55. 1.
- Syntax, agreement in, 174. 2-4, 177.

with several subjects, 177. 4.

Genitive, 29. 2.

- endings, 31.
- in *-āi*, 33. note 1.
- in *-ās*, 33. note 1.
- in *-i* for *-ii*, 2d dec., 36. 1 and 2.
- in *-ium*, in plur., 3 dec., 49. 6.
- in *-ūm* for *-ārum*, 33. note 3.
- in *-ūm* for *-ōrum*, 36. 6.
- 5th dec., 55. 3-5.
- pl. lacking, 61. 5.
- of Greek nouns, 3d dec., 52. 3, 52. 7.

typical endings, 51.

Syntax of, 215 ff.

- appositive, 219.
- material, 221.
- measure, 223.
- objective, 216.
- origin, 220.
- partitive, 225. 1-5.
- possession, 217.
- in appos. with poss., 433. 2.
- price, 224.
- quality, 222.
- subjective, 216.
- for dative, 226. 3.
- for prep. phrase, 411.
- with adjs., 226. 1.
- with parts., 226. 2.
- with *interest* and *rēfert*, 230.
- with verbs of emotion, 229.
- with verbs of judicial action, 228.
- with verbs of remembering, reminding, and forgetting, 227.
- with verbs that usually take abl., 231.

genus, 46.

-ger, 35. 3, 63. 5.

Gerund, 88, 90, 259.

Gerund, Syntax, 287 ff.

case uses:

Nom., 293.

Gen., 289.

Dat., 290.

Acc., 291.

Abl., 292.

declined, 288.

defined, 287.

object of, 294.

Gerundive, 88, 90, 259.

of deponents, 97.

2d periphrastic conj., 98. 2.

-undus for *-endus*, 101. 6.

Syntax, 295 ff.

defined, 287.

uses, 295. 1.

of intr. used impers., 295. 1, note.

with *dō*, etc., 295. 2.

Gerundive construction, 296 ff.

defined, 296.

when used, 296, 297.

in formulas, 300.

with *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, etc., 299.

with neuter adjs., 298.

-gō, gen. of nouns in, 50. 1, exc. 1.

gracilis, compared, 69. 3.

grātia, 57.

grātia with gen. of Gerund, 289. 3.

Greek nouns:

1st dec., 34.

2d dec., 38.

3d dec., 52 ff.

grex, gen., 50. 2, exc. 4.

-guis, gen. of nouns in, 50. 2, exc. 2.

Gutturals, 8.

stems, 41 and 43.

with *s = x*, 11. 7.

H

habeō with pf. pass. part., 284

Happening, verbs of, 341. 2.

sequence in, 316. 2.

Hardening, 518.

haud sciō, with *an*, 390. 4.

hei, 155. 1.

Hellēspontus, 28. 2, note.

hem, 155. 2.

Hendiadys, 488.

hercle, 155. 3, note.
 Heroic hexameter, 523.
 Heteroclitics, 58.
 Heterogeneous nouns, 59.
heu, 155. 1.
heus, 155. 3.
 Hexameter, 523.
hic, quan., 18. 2, exc.; dec., 80.
 Syntax of, 441, 442.
 Hindering verbs of, 335, 341. 3.
 Historical tenses, 304 ff.
 present, 305. 4, 316. 1.
 perfect, 307. 2 and 3.
 sequence, 314, 315.
 Hopping verbs of, 272.
 Hortatory subj., 321.
hortor, 97.
hortus, 57.
hostis, 47.
huc, 18. 2, exc.
humi, 242. 2.
humilis, comp., 69. 3.
humus, gen., 37. 2.
 Hypallage, 497.
 Hyperbole, 476.
 Hypothetical reason, 358.
 Hysteron proteron, 490.

I (vowel)

i, 2; sound, 5; consonant use, 2.
 quan., final, 19. 3.
 quan. in increms. of nouns, 21.
 quan. in increms. of verbs, 22.
i = *ii*, 36. 1.
 in gen. 4th dec., 54. 4.
 in voc., 36. 3.
 in abl., 49. 4.
 in abl. of adjs., 66.
 -i-stems, 47. 2.
i, changed, 9. 3.
 -i-stems, 39, 47.
 -*ia*, nom. pl., 49. 5; of adjs., 66.
 -*ia*, suffix, 160.
 -*iādēs*, 159. 4.
 Iambic verse, 513.
 Iambus, 512.
 -*iānus*, 164. 1.
 -*ias*, 159. 4.
 -*ibam* = -*iēbam*, 101. 2.

ibi, 19. 3, 151.
ibidem, 151.
 -*ictus*, 163. 2.
 Ictus, 511.
 -*icus*, 163. 2, 164. 3 and 5.
id quod, 445. 4.
id temporis, 195. note.
 Ideal cond., 364; in indir. disc., 403.
idem, 80; syntax, 446.
 Ides, 498. 3.
 -*idēs*, -*iādēs*, 159. 4.
 -*idō*, 161. 4, note.
idōneus, 214. 4.
Idūs, gen., 54. 3; pl. only, 56. 3.
 -*idus*, 162. 2.
 -*iēns* = *iēs*, 72. note.
 -*ier* = *i* in inf., 101. 5.
igitur, 465. 8.
ignis, 49. 4.
 -*ile*, 159. 2.
 -*ilis*, 162. 3.
 quantity of penult in adjs., 23. 1.
 Illative conjunctions, 465. 8.
ille, dec., 80; syntax, 441, 443.
 -*illō*, 157. 4.
 -*illus*, -*a*, -*um*, 159. 1.
 -*im* = -*am*, or -*em* in subj., 101. 1.
 -*im* in acc. sing., 49. 1-3.
imber, 49. 4.
immō, 386. note.
 Imparisyllabic stems, 39.
 in -*ēs*, -*ēs*, gen., 50. 1.
impedimentum, 57.
 Imperative, 319 ff.; tenses of, 320.
 constra., 322.
 in concl. of cond., 363. 3.
 Imperative clauses in indir. disc., 393.
 Imperfect Tense, 88. 2.
 drops *e* in 4th conj., 101. 2.
 formed on pres. stem, 90.
 Syntax, 306 ff.
 beginning of an action, 306. 5.
 Conative, 306. 2.
 Epistolary, 313.
 Historical, 348. note.
 with *iam diū*, etc., 306. 4.
 of overlapping action, 343. 4.
 for fut. time, 317.
 in Potential Subj., 327.
 in Result clauses, subj., 316. 2.

- Imperfect Tense :**
 in Wishes, 325.
 in Unreal cond., 367.
 in Temp. Clause, 351. 1.
- Impersonal Verbs, 145.**
 imper. of, 145. note 1.
 pass. of intr. used as impers.,
 205. note.
 with acc., 186.
 with gen., 229.
 with Inf., as subj., 262.
 with Inf. and subj. acc., 267.
 with Subj., Res. clauses, 341. 2.
- impetus*, 61. 5.
implēre, 231.
in- (*il-*, *im-*, *ir-*, *i-*), 12. 5.
in, prep., 258. 4.
-ina, 159. 3.
 Inceptives (Inchoatives), 147. 2, 157.
 Increments:
 of nouns, 21.
 of verbs, 22.
inde, 151; *indidem*, 151.
 Indeclinable nouns, 60.
 gen. of, 60.
 Indefinite prons., 84; syntax of, 456 ff.
 Indeterminate subj., 172, 321. 3,
 363. 2.
 Indicative, uses, 318.
 in concl. of Unreal cond., 368-9.
 instead of Delib. Subj., 324. note.
indigeō, constr., 231, 237. 2, note.
 Indirect Discourse, 391-404.
 defined, 391.
 moods, in decl. sentences, 392.
 moods, in impr. clauses, 393.
 moods, in interr. clauses, 394.
 moods, in rhetorical quests., 395.
 tenses, in indir. quest., 397.
 tenses in subord. clauses, 398.
 Indirect changed to direct, 399, 401.
 Indirect conditions, 402-404.
indūtia, 56. 3.
inesse, 212. note 1.
infirmus, denoting a part, 423.
 Informal Indir. Disc., 400.
 Infinitive, 260 ff.
 complementary, 261.
 as object, 264.
 with pred. noun, 265.
- Infinitive :**
 as subject, 262.
 with pred. noun, 263.
 as substantive, 261.
 exclamatory, 275.
 historical, 276.
 in rel. clause in indir. disc., 392.
 note 2.
 instead of acc., 273. 5.
 instead of Gerund, 291. note 2.
 poetical uses, 277.
 with *iubeō* and *vetō*, 273. 2.
 with *nōlō*, *mālō*, *volō*, *cupiō*, 273.
 with passives, 274.
 with subj. acc., 266 ff.
 with *sinō*, *patior*, 273. 3.
 with verbs of emotion, 273. 4.
 with verbs of hoping, promising,
 swearing, 272.
 Tenses of, 260. 1-4.
inferus, 71. 4.
 Inflection, 24 ff.
infra, 258. 1.
ingēns, 71. 3.
inops, 66. exc. 2.
inquam, 144. 2.
 Inseparable preps., 153. 2.
insidiae, 56. 3.
instar, 60; with gen., 218. 2.
 Intensive prons., 81.
 verbs, 157. 1.
inter, 258. 1.
inter nōs, reciprocal use, 439.
interest, 230.
interior, 71. 1.
 Interjections, 155, 200. notes 1-3.
 Interrogative prons., 83.
 particles, 385.
 particles, in part. clause, 390. 4,
 note.
 two or more interrogatives in
 same sentence, 390. 6.
 Interrogative clauses in indir. disc.,
 394.
intrā, 258. 1.
 Intransitive verbs, 87. 2.
-inus, 163. 5, 164. 1 and 4.
 quantity of penult of adjs., 23. 2.
inūtilis, 214. note 4.
inventū, 302. 2.

invitus = pres. part. of *nōlo*, 141.
 note 1.
-iō, 161. 4.
 abstrs. and colls. in *-iō*, gen.,
 50. 1, exc. 1.
-iō, verbs in 3d conj., 99.
-ior, *-ius*, compar. suffixes, 68.
ipse, dec., 81.
 syntax, 447.
-ir, nouns in 2d dec., 35. 2.
ire, *v* dropped in perf. of compds.,
 100. 2.
 Irony, 475.
 Irregular, adjs., 64.
 nouns, 48.
 verbs, 138 ff.
is, dec., 80; syntax, 445. 1-6.
-is, dropped in pf. 3d conj., 100. 4.
-is, 159. 4; quantity of final, 20.
 nom. in, gen., 50. 2.
-is, in acc. pl. of 3d dec., 39.
 of adjs., 66.
 for *-ibus*, 52. 8.
iste, dec., 80; syntax, 441, 444.
istūc, 15. 4.
itaque, 15. 3, 465. 8.
-itās, 160.
iter, gen., 50. 1, exc. 4.
-iter, adverbial ending, 148. 2.
-itia, 160.
-itim, adverbial ending, 148. 3.
-itūdō, 160.
-itus, 163. 4.
-itus, 148. 4.
-ium, in gen. pl., 49. 6.
 of adjs., 66.
-ium, 159. 3, 161. 1 and 4.
-ius, 163. 2, 164. 2 and 5.
-ivus, 163. 2.

I (consonant)

i, 2; sound, 7.
 quantity of prec. vowel, 16. 3.
iam diū, *iam dūdum*, *iam pridem*,
 with pres., 305. 6; with impf.,
 306. 4.
iocus, 59.
iubeō, 273. 2.
iūgerum, 58.

Iuppiter, 47.
iūrō, 89. 2.
iūssū, 61. 1.
iūvenis, 49. 4, note, 49. 6, 71. 3.
iūxtā, 258. 1.

K

k, 4.

L

-l, gen. of nouns in, 50. 3.
 gen. of stems in, 50. 3, exc.
 Labials, 8.
 Labial-stems, 41-42.
lāc, 18. 2, exc.
lacer, 63. 5.
laus, 42.
 Leap year, 504.
 Length, table of, 530.
-lentus, 163. 3.
leō, 45.
lepus, gen., 50. 3, exc.
Lēthē, 28. 1, note.
 Letters, dates in, 502.
 tenses in, 313.
liber, 63. 4.
licet, with subj., 378.
ligō, gen., 50. 1, exc. 1.
-limus, superlative suffix, 69. 3.
 Liquids, 8.
 Liquid-stems, 44.
 Litotes, 474.
littera, 57.
 Locative, 29. 2, 242.
 nouns in ap. with, 242. 3.
locō with gerundive, 295. 2.
locus, 59.
 Logical conditions, 363.
 in indir. disc., 402.
 Long syllables, 17. 1 and 17. 4-5.
 vowels, 16. 1 and 16. 3-4.
longinquus, 71. 3.
longum est, 318. 3.
lūxuria, 58. 2.
lynx, 49. 6.

M

m, sound of final, 7.
 becomes *n*, 11. 6.
 inserted in pres. stem, 103. 2.

magis, in comparison, 70. 3.
māgnī, 224.
māgnopere, comp., 152. 2.
māgnus, comp., 69. 6.
māior nātū, 238. 1.
māiōrēs, 56. 3.
 Making, verbs of, with two accs., 191. 2.
male, quant. of final vowel, 19. 2, exc., 148. 1, note.
 comp., 152. 2.
mālim and *māllem* with opt. subj., 325. note.
mālō, 141; with inf. and acc., 273. 1.
malus, comp., 69. 6.
māne, 60.
mānēs, 56. 3.
manus, gend., 54. 3.
marmor, gend., 50. 1, exc. 2.
māter, 49. 6.
māteria, 58. 2.
Matrona, 28. 1, note.
mātūrus, comp., 69. 2.
māximam partem, 195. note.
māximē, in comparison, 70. 3.
māximi, 224.
māzumus = māximus, 9. 5.
meam vicem, 195. note.
 Measures, 527-531.
medius fidius, 156. 3, note.
memini, 144. 6; with gen., 227. 1.
 with acc., 227. 2.
 like pres., 307. 1, note.
memor, 66. exc. 2.
memorātū, 302. 2.
-men, -mentum, 161. 5.
mēnsa, 33.
mēnsis, gend., 50. 2, exc. 2.
mercēs, gend., 50. 1, exc. 5.
merges, gend., 50. 1, exc. 5.
meridiēs, gend., 55. 1.
meritō, comp., 152. 4.
messis, 49. 3.
-met, 77. 2.
 Metre, see Versification.
metuō, 204.
meus, dec., 36. 3; voc. *mī*, 78. 2.
 Middle voice, 188.
mihī, 19. 3.
miles, 42.

militiae, loc., 242. 2.
milia, 73.
mille, 74. 2.
minae, 56. 3.
minimi, 224.
minor nātū, 238. 1.
minōris, 224.
minus for *nōn*, 361. 1, note
miser, 63. 5.
misereor, with gen., 229.
miseret, 229.
modo in proviso, 376.
moenia, 56. 3.
monēns, dec., 65. 5.
moneō, 95.
 Money, Roman, 527-529.
 Monosyllables, quant., 18.
mōns, gend., 50. 2, exc. 5.
 Moods, 88. 1; syntax, 318 ff.
 Indic., 318.
 Subj., 321 ff.
 Imv., 319, 320.
 Inf., 260 ff.
 In dep. clauses, 328 ff.
mōs, 18. 2, exc.; dec., 46.
 Motion to, expressed by acc., 199.
multum, comp., 152. 2.
multus, comp., 69. 6.
mūnicipium, 199. 2, note.
 Mute-stems, 41.

N

n, sound, 7; gend. of nouns in, 50. 3.
-nam, intensive suffix, 83. 3.
nam, conj., 465. 7.
 Names of living beings, 27.
 of things, 28.
namque, 485. note.
nārēs, 56. 3.
 Nasals, 8.
 Nasal-stems, 45.
nātū, 61. 1.
nāvis, 49. 3.
-ne, 15. 3-4, 18. 1, exc., 385. 2.
nē, with imv., 319.
 with subj., 321, 325, 328, 341.
nē nōn, 336.
nē . . . quidem, 465. 5.
nec . . . nec, 465. 2.

necessarius, constr., 214. note 4.
necesse est, constr., 267. note.
necne, 390. 3.
nec nōn, 465. 6.
nefās, 60; with supine in *-ū*, 302. 1.
nēmō, 61. 3, 462.
neptis, 49. 3.
nēquam, 66. exc. 5.
 comp., 69. 5.
neque, 465. 1.
neque . . . neque, 465. 2.
nequeō, 142. note 3.
nēve (*neu*), 465. 3, 330.
nēsciō quis, use, 390. 5.
neuter, 64. 3.
nihil, 60.
nihilī, 224.
-nis, gen. of nouns in, 50. 2, exc. 2.
nisi, 19. 3, 361. 2.
nītor, constr., 247. 3, note 1.
nīz, 49. 6.
 "No," 386. 2.
nōli, with inf., 321. 4.
nōlō, 141; with inf. and acc., 273. 1;
 with subj., 273. 1.
nōmen, constr., 212. note 2.
 Nominative, 29. 2.
 like acc. and voc., 32.
 plural in *-ia*, 49. 5.
 lacking, 61. 4.
 of 3d dec., 51.
 Syntax, 256.
 of pers. pron. omitted, 432. 1.
nōn, 18. 2, exc.; with subj., 327.
nōn modo nōn, *nōn solum nōn*, 467.
nōn queō = *nequeō*, 142. note 3.
Nōnae, 56. 3.
 Nones, 498. 2.
nōnne, 385. 3.
nostrātium, 49. 6.
nostrī, 216. 5.
nostrum, 77. 1, 216. 5.
 with *omnium*, 432. 3.
 Nouns, 25 ff.; classes, 25. 1.
 abstract, 25. 2.
 collective, 25. 3.
 concrete, 25. 2.
 cases, 29. 2.
 composition, 169.
 declension, 31.

Nouns:

defective, 61.
 derivation, 159-161.
 from adjectives, 160.
 from nouns, 159.
 from verbs, 161.
 gender, 20-28.
 heteroclitics, 58.
 heterogeneous, 59.
 indeclinable, 60.
 number, 29. 1.
 Syntax:
 Nom., 256.
 Gen., 215-231.
 Dat., 201-214.
 Acc., 183-200.
 Voc., 257.
 Abl., 232-255.
 abstract for concrete, 407.
 concrete for abstract, 406.
 use of plural, 408, 409, 410.
-ns, polysyllables in, 49. 6.
nōvi as pres., 307. 1, note.
novus, 71. 2.
nūbēs, dec., 47.
nūllus, 64. 2.
num, 385. 4, 390. 1.
 Number, 29. 1.
 agreement in, 175. 1.
 of verbs, 88. 3.
 Numerals, 72 ff.
 declension of, 73.
nūper, 152. 4.
-nus, 163. 2.
 O
 o, sound, 5; quan. of final, 19 and
 19. 4; quan. in increms. of nouns,
 21; quan. in increms. of verbs, 22.
 ō, changed, 9. 4.
 ō, nom. in, 52; gen. of nouns in,
 50. 1.
 ō, interj., with voc., 200. note 1.
ob- (*oc-*, *of-*, *og-*, *op-*), 12. 6.
ob, prep., 258. 1.
 Oblique cases, 29. 2, note.
 Obtaining, verbs of, constr. with,
 334.
ōcius, comp., 152. 3.

ōdī, 144. 6; as pres., 307. 1. note.
oe, 3; sound, 6.
-olus, -a, -um, 159. 1, 165.
-on, nouns in, 38.
-ōn, in gen. plural, 3d dec., 52. 7.
 Onomatopoeia, 496.
opera, 57.
opis, 61. 4.
oportet, constr., 267 and 267. note.
oportuit, with pres. inf., 260. 1, note.
oppidum, with name of town, 199. 2,
 note 2.
ops, 49. 6, 57.
 Optative subj., 325.
optimātium, 49. 6.
opus est, with supine in -ū, 302. 1.
-or, gen. of nouns in, 50. 1; meaning
 of suffix, 161. 2.
orbis, gen., 50. 2, exc. 2.
Ōrātiō obliqua, see Indirect Dis-
 course: changed into *Ōrātiō Rēcta*,
 401.
 Order of words, 471.
 Ordinals, 72, 73.
 Origin, abl. of, 234; gen., 220.
os, 48, 49. 6.
ōs, gen., 50. 1, exc. 3.
-os, quan. of final, 20; nom. ending,
 35. note 1.
-ōs, -os, nouns in, 38.
-ōs, gen. of nouns in, 50. 1.
-ōs (-or), 161. 1.
-ōsus, 163. 3.
 Oxymoron, 494.

P

p-mutes, 8.
paenitet, gerund of, 145. 3, note 2.
palam, with abl., 258. 3.
Panthūs, dec., 38.
pār, 18. 2, exc.
 Parasitic vowels, 10. 2.
parātus, constr., 214. note 4.
 Parisyllables, 39; in -er, -ēs, -is, 49. 6;
 gen. of nouns in -es, 50. 2; with
 acc. in -im, 52. 2; with gen. in -i,
 52. 3; with abl. in -i, 52. 5.
pars, 57.
 Partial obliquity, 400.
 Parts of speech, 24.

particeps, dec., 65. 4.
 Participial stem, formation, 105;
 euphonic changes in, 106.
 Participles, 259, 278; uses, 282; tenses,
 279; with *cernō* and *videō*, 271.
 Future participle:
 with subj. of *esse*, 98. 1, note;
 irregularities in formation,
 100. 5; syntax of, 259, 279. 3,
 283.
 Perfect passive participle:
 like act., 89. 2; time, 279. 2; with
habeō and *teneō*, 284; abstract
 use, 286; substitutes for perf.
 act., 281.
 Present participle:
 declined, 65. 5; time, 279. 1;
 with *faciō*, etc., 285. 1; with
videō and *audiō*, 285. 2; sub-
 stitutes for present passive,
 280.
partior, 97.
partus, 54. 1.
parum, comp., 152. 2.
parvi, 224.
parvus, comp., 69. 6.
pater, 49. 6.
pator, with inf., 273.
 Passive voice, 87. 1; conjugation, 88;
 reflexive force, 430; of deponents
 and defective verbs, 431.
 Patronymics, 159. 4.
pauper, 65. 4.
 Peculiarities of case forms, 3d dec.,
 49.
 of sequence, 316.
pecten, gen., 50. 3, exc.
pelagus, gen., 37. 1.
pelvis, 49. 2.
penātium, 49. 6.
penes, 258. 1.
 Pentameter, Dactylic, 526.
 Penult, 15.
per- (*pel-*), 12. 7.
per, prep., 258. 1.
 Perfect stem, formation of, 104;
 tenses formed on, 90. 2.
 Perfect tense, in -āvī and -ēvī, 100. 1;
 drops *v*, 100. 2; in -ēre for -ērunt,
 100. 3; drops *is*, 101. 4.

Perfect tense:

- Syntax**, 307 ff.
 present perfect, 307. 1.
 like pres., 307. 1, note; takes
 historical sequence, 316. 4;
 of a single act, 343. 1; with
 force of pluperfect, 343. 2.
 historical perfect, 307. 2; with
 neg., 307. 3.
 of instantaneous action, 308.
 1; gnomic perfect, 308. 2.
 perf. inf., sequence after, 316. 6.
- Periphrastic conjugation**, 98; first,
 98. 1; second, 98. 2; in unreal con-
 ditions, 369.
- permāgni*, 224.
- Permitting, verbs of, constr. with**, 333.
- Person**, 88. 3; **syntax of**, 176.
- Personal endings of verb**, 91.
 pronouns, 77; **syntax of**, 432.
- pēs*, 18. 2, exc., 49. 6.
- petere*, constr., 192. 2, note.
- ph*, sound, 7.
- piscis*, gend., 50. 2, exc. 2.
- plēbī*, 55. 5.
- plēbs*, dec., 58. 4.
- Pleonasm**, 487.
- Pluperfect tense**, 88. 2; **syntax of**, 309;
 of repeated acts, 343. 3.
- Plural**, 29. 1; nouns in plural only,
 56. 2 and 3; with meaning diff. from
 sing., 57; for sing., 408; exact use,
 409; generic, 410.
- plūris*, 224.
- plūrimi*, 224.
- plūs*, 18. 2, exc., 65. 7; as a noun, 65.
 7, note.
- Polysyndeton**, 484.
- pōns*, gend., 50. 2, exc. 5.
- pontus*, 28. 2, note.
- por-*, inseparable prep., 153. 2.
- porticus*, gend., 54. 3.
- portus*, 54. 1.
- Positive degree**, 67. 1; **lacking**, 71. 1.
- Possessive pronouns**, 78; = subj. gen.,
 216. 3; = obj. gen., 216. 4; when
 used, 433. 1; = gen. of per. pron.,
 433. 3; with gen. as appositive,
 433. 2.
- possum*, 138.
- post*, with acc., 258. 1; in expressions
 of time, 249.
- posteri*, 56. 3.
- posterior*, 71. 1.
- postis*, 50. 2, exc. 2.
- postquam*, 470. 6; in temporal clauses,
 343.
- postridiē*, with gen. and acc., 258. 2.
- postulāre*, constr., 192. 2, note.
- Potential subj.**, 327.
- potior*, constr., 231, 253.
- potius*, 152. 3.
- prae*, 254. note 2, 258. 3.
- praecordia*, 56. 3.
- Praenōmina*, 507; **abbreviations**, 508.
- praesēpis*, 49. 3.
- praeter*, 258. 1.
- prandēō*, 89. 2.
- precāri*, constr., 192. 2, note.
- precī*, dec., 61. 7.
- Predicate**, 173 ff.; **agreement**, 174;
 agreement with two or more sub-
 jects, 175 ff.; adj., 174. 2; apposi-
 tive, 181; attributive, 181; noun,
 174. 3; position, 471.
- Prepositions, derivation**, 153. 1; in-
 separable, 153. 2; with acc., 258. 1;
 with abl., 258. 3; with acc. and abl.,
 258. 4; with case = part. gen., 225-
 5, note 2; with case = obj. gen.,
 216. 2; in composition, 153. 2;
 changes in, 12.
- Prepositional phrases, substitutes for**,
 410.
- Present stem, formation of**, 102, 103.
 tenses formed on, 90. 1.
- Present tense**, 88. 2; inf. in *-er*, 101. 5;
 subj. in *-im*, 101. 1.
- Syntax**: conative, 305. 3; con-
 tinuous, 305. 2; gnomic, 305. 5;
 historical, 305. 4; like fut., 305.
 7; sequence of historical, 316.
 1; single act, 343. 1; with *iam*
diū, 305. 6.
- Preventing, verbs of, constr. with**, 335.
- pridiē*, with gen. and acc., 258. 2.
- Prepositional parts**, 92. 3.
 tenses, 304.
 sequence, 314, 315.
- princeps*, 42.

prior, 71. 1.
prius, 152. 3.
priusquam, 470. 6; with *ind.*, 350;
 with *subj.*, 351.
prō, 258. 3.
procul, 258. 3.
 Prohibition, 321. 4.
 Prolepsis, 491.
 Pronominal adjectives, 86.
 Pronouns, 75 ff.; classes, 76.
 correlative, 85.
 demonstrative, 80; syntax, 182,
 441-446.
 indefinite, 84; syntax, 456-463.
 intensive, 81; syntax, 447.
 interrogative, 83.
 personal, 77; syntax, 432.
 reciprocal, 439, 440.
 reflexive, 79; syntax, 434-438.
 relative, 82; syntax, 182, 448-455.
 Pronunciation, 5-7.
prope, 152. 2, 258. 1.
propior, 258. 2, 71. 1.
propius, 258. 2.
 Proper names, in *-eus*, 36. 5; in *-ius*,
 36. 1; fems. in *-ō*, 52. 3; parisylla-
 bles in *-ēs*, 52. 3; in *sing.* only, 56.
 1; *voc.* of Greek nouns, 52. 4; with
voc. in *-i*, 36. 3.
propinquus, 71. 3.
propter, with *acc.*, 254. note 1, 258. 1.
 Prosody, see *Versification*.
Prōsper, 63. 5.
prōspicere, with *acc.* and *dat.*, 204.
 Protasis, 360.
prōvidēre, with *acc.* and *dat.*, 204.
prōvidus, *comp.*, 69. 4, note.
Proviso, 376.
proximē, 258. 2.
proximus, 258. 2.
-pse, 18. 1, exc.
-pte, 18. 1, exc.
puđet, *gerundive* of, 145. 3, note 2.
pulvis, *gend.*, 50. 2, exc. 2.
puppis, 49. 2.
 Purpose clauses, 328 ff.
 of mention of action, 332.
 substantive, 333-336.
 ut nē, 329; *quō*, 331; *nēve* (*neu*),
 330.

Purpose, expressed by final clause,
 328.
 expressed by *rel. clause*, 382. 3.
 expressed by *fut. act. part.*, 283.
 expressed by *supine* in *-um*, 301.
 expressed by *ad* with *acc.* of
gerundive, 297.
 expressed by *ad* with *acc.* of
gerund, 291.
 expressed by *causā* with *gen.* of
gerund, 289. 3.
 expressed by *dat.*, 206.

Q

quā, 151.
quadrigae, 56. 3.
quaesō, 144. 3.
quālis, 85.
quālisicumque, 85.
quam, 151.
quamquam, 470. 5; with *ind.*, 378. 5;
 with *corrective force*, 378. 5, note.
quamvis, 470. 5; with *adj.* or *adv.*,
 378. 2, note; with *subj.*, 378. 2.
quandō, 470. 6; in *temp. clause*, 356.
quandōcumque, 343.
quanti, 224.
 Quantity, 16 ff.
 of final syllables, 19, 20.
 of *increms.* of nouns, 21; of verbs,
 22.
 of monosyllables, 18.
 penults, in *-ilis*, 23. 1; in *-inus*,
 23. 2.
 of stem-vowels of verbs, 23. 3.
quantus, 85.
quantuscumque, 85.
quasi, 19. 3.
-que, 15. 3, 18. 1, exc.
quemadmodum, 151.
queō, 142. note 3.
 Questions, 384-390.
 direct, 384-387.
 indirect, 388-390.
 rhetorical, 384. 3; in *indir. disc.*,
 395.
 sentence, 384. 1.
 word, 384. 2.
qui, *dec.*, 82; *abl.*, 82. 1, 83. 1.

quia, 470. 1; in causal clause, 357.
quicumque, 82. 2.
quid, 387. 1; *quid enim*, 387. 2.
quidam, 84. 6, 457.
quies, *gend.*, 50. 3, *exc.* 5.
quin, 18. 2, *exc.*
quin clauses, 337, 341. 3.
quis, *indef. after si*, 84. 1.
quis, *int. pro.*, 83; *adj.*, *use*, 83. 2.
quis = quibus, 82. 1.
quisnam, 83. 3.
quispiam, 84. 3.
quisquam, 84. 4; *syntax*, 458.
quisque, 84. 7, 435. *note*, 460.
quisquis, 82. 3.
quivis, 84. 5.
quō, 151, 331.
quoad, in *temp. clause*, 354.
quod, 465. 5, 470. 1; in *causal clause*,
 357; in *substantive clause*, 359.
quod sciam, 383. 5.
quom = cum, 9. 4.
quōmodo, 151.
quō minus, 335.
quoniam, in *causal clause*, 357; *conj.*,
 470. 1.
quoque, 465. 6.
quot, 85; *quotquot*, 85.
quotannis, 150. 2.
quotiens, 151.
quotus, 85.

R

r, *sound*, 7.
rāstrum, 59.
-re = -ris, 100. 4.
re-, *insep. prep.*, 153. 2.
Reciprocal pronouns, 439, 440.
recordāri, *constr.*, 227. 3.
rēfert, *constr. with*, 230.
Reflexive pronouns, 79.
Syntax, 434-438.
 in *simple sentences*, 434.
 in *complex sentences*, 437.
 with *acc. and inf.*, 436.
 referring to *indef. subj.*, 438.
Refusing, verbs of, constr. with, 341.
 3.
Relative clauses, 380-383.
 with *ind.*, 380, 381.

Relative clauses:

with *subj.*, 382, 383; *cause*, 383. 2;
 characteristic, 382. 5 and 383;
 concession, 382. 1; *purpose*,
 382. 3; *result*, 382. 4.

Relative pronoun, 82.

agreement, 182.
 attracted into *case of anteced.*,
 454.
 = *demonstrative with connective*, 455.
 expressed when *obj.*, 448.
 = *ut* with *demonstrative*, 382. 4,
note.

reliquiae, 56. 3.Repeated action, *tenses of*, 312.

Repudiated statement, 357.

requies, *dec.*, 58. 3.*rēs*, *dec.*, 55.*restis*, 49. 2.

Result clauses, 337-341.

after *comp. with quam*, 339.
 after *correl. dem.*, 338.
 after *impersonals*, 340.
substantive, 341; *use*, 337.

rēx, *dec.*, 43.Rhetorical-questions, 384. 3; in *indir. disc.*, 395.*rhododendron*, *dec.*, 38.

Rhotacism, 11. 8.

Roman, *calendar*, 498-506.

measures, 527-531.

pronunciation, 5-7.

Root, 156.

rūdēns, *gend.*, 50. 2, *exc.* 5.

S

s, *sound*, 7; *gend. of nouns in s* preceded by *cons.*, 50. 2; *stems in*, 46.

sacer, 71. 2.*saepe*, 19. 2; *comp.*, 152. 2.*sāl*, 18. 2, *exc.*, 50. 3, *exc.*, 57.*salvē*, 144. 5.*salūtāris*, 71. 3.*satis*, *comp.*, 152. 5.Saying and Thinking, *verbs of*, 268.*scālae*, 56. 3.

Scanning, 524.

se-, inseparable prep., 153. 2.
secundum, 258. 1.
secūris, 49. 2.
secus, 60.
secus, adv., comp., 152. 5.
sed, 465. 5.
seges, gender, 50. 1, exc. 5.
sēmentis, 49. 3.
 Semi-Deponents, 89. 1.
 Semi-vowels, 8.
senex, 48, 49. 6, 71. 3.
 Sentence-questions, 384. 1.
sentis, gender, 50. 2, exc. 2.
 Sequence of tenses, 315.
 peculiarities of, 316.
servus, 35.
sēstertium, 528. notes.
sēstertius, 527.
seu . . . seu, 465. 4.
si, 361, 390. 2, 470. 4; *si nōn*, 361. 1.
sibi, 19. 3.
sic, 18. 2, exc., 151.
similis, comp., 69. 3.
simul, 258. 3.
simul atque, 470. 6; in temp. clause,
 343.
sin, 18. 2, exc., 361. 3.
sine, 258. 3.
sinō, with *inf.*, 273. 3.
 Singular number, 29. 1; in singular
 only, 56. 1.
sis = si vis, 141. note 2.
sitis, 49. 1.
sive . . . sive, 465. 4.
socer, 35. note 3.
sōl, 18. 2, exc.; gender, 50. 3, exc.
soleō, 89. 1.
sōlus, 64. 1 and 2.
sōspes, 65. 4.
 Spirants, 8; stems, 46.
 Spondaic verse, 523.
 Spondee, 512.
spontis, *sponte*, 61. 2.
 Stem of nouns, 30; in *ā*, 33; in *ō*,
 35.
 Stem of verbs:
 present, 102 ff.
 perfect, 104.
 participial, 105.
 Striving-verbs of, constr. with, 334.

Styz, 28. 1, note.
sub- (*suc-*, *suf-*, *sug-*, *sum-*, *sup-*, *sur-*),
 12. 8.
sub, with acc. and abl., 258. 4.
 Subject, 171 ff.
 defined, 171; case, 171.
 indeterminate, 172; omitted, 171.
 note.
 position, 471; several subjects,
 175.
 Subjunctive mood:
 asseverations, 326.
 attraction, 405.
 concessive, 323.
 conditions, 360 ff.
 deliberative, 324.
 future, 317.
 hortatory, 321.
 indir. disc., 391 ff.
 optative, 325; with *velim*, 325.
 note.
 potential, 327.
 periphrastic, 317. 3.
 pres. or impf. with *mox*, 317. 3,
 note.
 In dependent clauses:
 causal, 355 ff.
 concessive, 377 ff.
 purpose, 328 ff.
 relative, 382. 3.
 result, 337 ff.
 temporal, 342 ff.
 Subordinate conjunctions, 154, 470.
 Substantive clauses of purpose, 333.
 as subject, 333. 1; as object, 333.
 2; as apposition, 333. 3.
 with verbs of fearing, 336.
 with verbs of hindering, 335.
 with verbs of wishing, 334.
 Substantive clauses of result, 341.
 use, 341; negative, 341.
 with verbs of causation, 341. 1.
 with verbs of compelling, 341. 2.
 with verbs of hindering, 341. 3.
 with *quod*, 359.
sui, dec., 79; syntax, 434-438.
sum, 93; compounds of, 93; inde-
 pendent use, 173. 2; omitted, 173.
 4; with adv., 173. 2.
super, 258. 1.

Superlative, with *māximē*, 70.

in *-entissimus*, 69. 4; in *-limus*, 69. 3; in *-rimus*, 69. 1.

superstes, 65. 4.

superus, 71. 4.

Supine, 259; formation, 90. 3; former, in *-um*, 301; latter, in *-ū*, 302.

-sūra, 161. 4, note.

sūs, 47; *gend.*, 50. 2, exc. 3.

suus, 434-438.

Syllables, common, 17. 3; long by nature, 17. 4; long by position, 17. 5.

quan. of final, 19 ff.

Synapheia, 520.

Syncope, 10. 3, 479.

Synzesis (Synaeresis), 519.

Syntax, 171 ff.

Systole, 517.

T

t, sound, 7; changed to *s*, 11. 3.

tt, changed to *s* or *ss*, 11. 4.

t-mutes, 8; dropped before *s*, 11. 4, 41. 2.

tabula, 57.

tālis, 85.

tam, 151.

tamen, 465. 5.

tantī, 224.

tantidem, 224.

tantus, 85.

Tartarus, 59.

-te, 18, exc., 77. 3.

teges, *gend.*, 50. 1, exc. 5.

Temporal clauses, 342 ff.

general law for moods, 342.

antequam clauses, 349-351.

cum clauses, 344-348.

dum clauses, 352-354.

postquam clauses, 343.

tenebrae, 56. 3.

teneō, with part., 284.

tener, 63. 5.

Tenses, 88. 2.

formed on pres. stem, 90. 1.

perf. stem, 90. 2.

participial stem, 90. 3.

Syntax of, 303 ff.

principal and historical, 304.

Tenses:

present, 305; imperfect, 306; perfect, 307, 308; pluperfect, 309; future, 310; future perfect, 311; of repeated action, 312; epistolary, 313; of subj., 314-317.

sequence, 315, 316.

forms used for fut., 317.

in indir. disc., 396 ff.

in indir. ques., 397.

in subordinate clauses, 398.

of inf., 260.

of imv., 320.

tenus, 258. 3.

-ter (-tris), 163. 6.

Thesis, 511.

Third declension, 39 ff.

Thūrium, 59.

-tim, adverbs in, 148. 3.

timeō, 204.

-tinus (-tinus), 166. 1.

Tmesis, 492.

torris, *gend.*, 50. 2, exc. 2.

tōtus, 64. 1 and 2.

totus, 85.

tot, 85.

trabs, dec., 42.

trāns, 258. 1; *trān-*, *trā-*, 12. 9.

Transitive verbs, 87. 2.

trēs, dec., 73.

tribus, 54. 1; *gend.*, 54. 3.

Trochee, 512.

-trum, 161. 3.

tū, dec., 77.

tūber, *gend.*, 50. 1, exc. 4.

tum, 151.

tunc, 151.

-tura, 161. 4, note.

turris, 49. 2.

turtur, *gend.*, 50. 3, exc.

tussis, 49. 1.

Tydidēs, dec., 34.

Typical nominatives and genitives, 3d dec., 51.

U

u, 2; sound, 5; changed, 9. 5; quan.

of final, 19; quan. in increms. of

nouns, 21; quan. in increms. of

verbs, 22; parasitic, 10. 2; stems, 47.

über, *gend.*, 50. 1, exc. 4.
ubi, 19. 3, 151, 470. 6.
-ubus in *dat.* and *abl.*, 4th *dec.*, 54. 1.
ui, 3; *sound*, 6.
ūllus, 64. 1 and 2, 84. 4, 459.
ūltior, 71. 1.
-ulum, 161. 5.
-ulus, *-a*, *-um*, 159. 1.
-ulus, 162. 4, 165.
ūltor, as *adj.*, 66. exc. 6.
ūltrā, 258. 1.
-um for *-ārum*, 33. note 3.
 for *-ōrum*, 36. 6.
-um, *nouns* in, 38.
umquam, 151.
unde, 151.
Unreal conditions, 366-369; in *indir. disc.*, 404.
ūnus, *dec.*, 73; in *plural*, 74. 1.
-ur, *gend.* of *nouns* in, 50. 3.
Urging, verbs of, constr. with, 333.
us, *quan.* of *final*, 20.
-ūs, *-us*, *nouns* in, 38.
-us, 161. 1; *gend.* of *nouns* in, 50. 2.
-ūs (*gen.*, *-eris*, *-oris*, *-uris*), *gend.* of *nouns* in, 50. 3; (*gen.*, *-ūtis*, *-ūdis*), *gend.* of *nouns* in, 50. 3; *gend.* of *monosyllables*, 50. 2, exc. 3.
usque, 258. 1, note.
ut, 470. 2-3 and 6; in *questions*, 387. 3; in *purpose clauses*, 328; with *verbs of fearing*, 336.
ut nē, 329.
-ut, *gend.* of *nouns* in, 50. 3.
uter, 64. 3.
uterque, 461, 225. 5, note 4.
ūtilis, *constr.*, 214. note 4.
ūtor, with *abl.*, 253.
utrum, 385. 5.
-ūtus, 163. 4.

V

v, *sound*, 7.
valvae, 56. 3.
vannus, *gend.*, 37. 2.
vās, *gend.*, 50. 2, exc. 1, 58. 1.
vas, *gend.*, 50. 2, exc. 1.
vē-, *insep. prep.*, 153. 2.
-ve, 15. 3 and 4; 18. exc.
vectis, *gend.*, 50. 2, exc. 2.

vel, *-ve*, 465. 3.
vel . . . vel, 465. 4.
vēnum, 61. 6.
vēr, 18. 2, exc.; *gend.*, 50. 1, exc. 4.
verber, *gend.*, 50. 1, exc. 4.
Verbs, quan. of *increments*, 22; *voices*, 87; *transitive and intransitive*, 87. 2; *conjugation*, 88; *moods*, 88. 1; *tense*, 88. 2; *person and number*, 88. 3; *deponents*, 89; *semi-deponents*, 89. 1; *verb-stems*, 90; *formation of stems*, 102-106; *personal endings*, 91; *the four conjugations distinguished*, 92. 1; *principal parts*, 92. 3; *regular conjugations*, 95-96; *periphrastic conjugations*, 98; *peculiar forms*, 100; *ancient and poetical forms*, 101; *list of verbs*, 107-137; *irregular*, 138-143; *defective*, 144; *impersonal*, 145; *abundant*, 146; *inceptive*, 147; *frequentatives*, 157. 1; *desideratives*, 157. 3; *diminutives*, 157. 4; *derivation*, 157, 158; *composition*, 168.

Syntax:

agreement, 173; *cases with, see acc., gen., dat., abl., nom.; noun and adj. forms*, 259; *for moods and tenses, see the names of the different moods and tenses.*

vereor, 97.
Versification, 509-526.
versus, with *acc.*, 258. 1.
verū, 54. 1.
vērūm, 465. 5.
vescor, with *abl.*, 253.
vesper, *dec.*, 58. 5.
vestrātium, 49. 6.
vestri, *objective gen.*, 216. 5.
vestrum, *partitive*, 77. 1; with *omnium*, 432. 3.
vetus, 65. 4; *comp.*, 69. 2, 71. 2.
vicis, 61. 8.
victor, *dec.*, 44; as *adj.*, 66. exc. 6.
vidēn, 15. 4.
videō, with *part.*, 271, 285. 2.
violenter, 148. 2.
vir, *dec.*, 35.

virgō, dec., 45.
virus, gen., 37. 1.
vis, 47, 49. 1, 57.
viscera, 56. 3.
visū, 302. 2.
vivont for *vivunt*, 9. 4.
 Vocative, defined, 29. 2; syntax, 257;
 like nom., 32; in *-ī*, 2d dec., 36. 3;
 -ē in adjs., 63. 6.
 Voice, 87.
volō, 141; with inf. and acc., 273. 1;
 with subj., 273. 1.
 Vowels, 2; pronunciation, 5; change,
 9 ff.; contraction, 10. 1; parasitic,
 10. 2; quantity, 16. 1; rules for
 quantity, 16. 2-4; stems, 3d dec.,
 47; syncope of, 10. 3.
vulgus, gen., 37. 1.
vultur, gen., 50. 3, exc.

W

"We," editorial, 432. 2.
 Wishes, 325.
 Wishing, verbs of, constr. with, 334.
 Word-questions, 384. 2.

X

x, a double cons., 4; sound, 7.

Y

y, 2; sound, 5; only in foreign words,
 4. note.
ys, quan. of final, 20.
 "Yes," 386. 1.

Z

z, double cons., 4; use, 4. note.
 Zeugma, 486.

Coy's Latin Lessons

FOR BEGINNERS

BY

E. W. COY, P. H. D.

Principal of Hughes High School, Cincinnati

Cloth, 12mo, 330 pages. Price, \$1.00

This new book for beginners in Latin has been prepared to meet the demand for introductory lessons combining an early development of the reading power with thorough drill in the essentials of the grammar. It is intended to prepare the student to read different Latin writers in the course, and is therefore based upon selections from several authors and not from one alone. The following are some of the leading distinctive features of the work:

1. The marking of the accent of paradigms, insuring a correct pronunciation from the beginning.
2. The use of heavier type to show the tense signs of verbs and the endings of nouns and adjectives.
3. The logical and clear treatment of verb-formation, similar forms being grouped together, and their resemblances pointed out.
4. The frequent and thorough reviews.
5. The systematic study of English derivatives and allied and synonymous Latin words and phrases.
6. The exercises in sight reading and in composition based upon the text already read.
7. The appendix of tabulated rules and paradigms.
8. The early introduction of connected Latin reading adapted to the capacity of the beginner and interesting in subject-matter.
9. The liberal training in the reading of good Latin selected from Viri Romæ, Cæsar, and Nepos, and the consequent thorough preparation for the second year's work.

Copies of Coy's Latin Lessons will be sent, prepaid, to any address, on receipt of the price, by the Publishers:

American Book Company

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago

First Latin Readings

An Equivalent for Cæsar

By R. ARROWSMITH, PH.D.

Professor of Latin and Greek, Teachers College, New York City

AND

G. M. WHICHER, M.A.

Instructor in Classics, Packer Collegiate Institute, Brooklyn, N. Y.

Cloth, 12mo, 344 pages. Price, \$1.25

This work has been prepared in response to a growing demand for a new first reading book in Latin, offering more simple and interesting material for the second-year work than is now provided by Cæsar's Commentaries, the first connected reading pupils meet in the Latin course.

It is the aim of the present volume to offer for the student's first reading in Latin, material in which the least, rather than the more, difficult Latin comes first; which contains the largest possible general vocabulary, instead of a small special vocabulary; which is drawn from a wide, instead of a narrow, range of literature; and which may be associated with other departments of teaching with greater success and productiveness than Cæsar's Commentaries.

The selections in First Latin Readings have, therefore, been chosen with reference to their difficulty, their interest as literature, and, as far as possible, their relation to Roman life and custom, and not with reference to their exclusive use as drilling material on formal classical construction.

Exercises in Latin prose composition, based on the text of each author represented, have been prepared, and are included in the book.

Copies of First Latin Readings will be sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price by the Publishers:

American Book Company

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago

(61)

for
ng
it's
in

ret
e.
al
m
pe
ad

in
i
th
ad

b

